Owner's Manual
English 02.2026
8B1012720AG

8B1012720AG

www.audi.com

A5 Owner's Manual

Owner's Manual

A5

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

ownersmanual.audi.com

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany

© 2025 AUDI AG

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi.

Your new Audi is a combination of superb craftsmanship and state-of-the-art technology. Audi recommends that you read this Owner's Manual carefully so that you quickly become familiar with your vehicle and can take full advantage of all its functions in everyday use.

In addition to information on how to use the controls and equipment, this Manual also contains important information on looking after your vehicle. This is relevant for your safety and will help preserve your car's value. The Manual also offers useful driving tips and advice, together with some suggestions on how to drive your car with minimum impact on the environment.

Audi wishes you safe and enjoyable motoring with your vehicle.

WARNING

Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 82*.

8B1012720AG

Quick reference 6
Getting started 6
About the Owner's Manual 6
Using the digital Owner's Manual 7
Front cabin 9
Overview of warning and indicator lamps . 10

Displays and controls 18
Instrument cluster 18
Overview and controls 18
Description of displays 19

Touch displays 22
Gestures and input 22
Overview of displays on Multi Media Interface 23
Using and customising the MMI 26
Opening the Car menu 28

Head-up display 29
Using the head-up display 29
Changing the head-up display settings . . . 29

Audi assistant 30
Functions and operation 30
External voice control function 31

Valet mode 33
Introduction 33
Opening the valet mode settings menu . . 33
Using valet mode 33

Setting off 34
Personal settings 34
Users 34
Key user 35

Opening and closing 36
Central locking system 36
Occupant detection 41
Locking/unlocking the doors manually . . . 44
Keys 46
Unlocking/locking 49
Boot lid 51
Electric windows 55
Garage door opener 56

Lights and vision 59
Exterior lights 59
Interior lights 63
Clear vision 64
Windscreen wipers 66

Sitting correctly and safely 69
Ensuring the correct seating position 69
Front seats 69
Seat functions 71
Steering wheel 72
Head restraints 73
Seat belts 74
Airbag system 78
Child restraint systems 82

Storage and convenience 88
Storage compartments 88
Information on the ashtray 88
Information on the cigarette lighter 88
Information on power sources 89
Information on cup holders 89
Luggage compartment 90
Roof carrier 95

Heating and cooling 96
Air conditioner 96
Auxiliary heating/ventilation 100
Auxiliary air conditioner 101
Information on fluids in the air conditioner 102

Driving 104
Starting systems 104
Engine 105
Transmission positions and driving programs 109
Driving the vehicle 111
Start/stop system 114
Brakes 115
Parking brake 117
Special driving situations 119

Handling dynamics 121
Audi drive select 121
Suspension 122
Steering 122

Four-wheel drive (quattro) 123
Electronic stabilisation control 124

High-voltage system 127
Safely handling the high-voltage system . 127
Charging the high-voltage battery 131
Charging settings 136
Charging equipment 138

Towing a trailer 149
Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan 149
Swivelling towing bracket 151
Trailer assist 155

Driver assist systems 159
General information on assist systems 159
Overview of assist systems 159
Safety precautions and system limits of assist systems 161
Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings 162
Driver assist menu 164
General driver messages on driver assist systems 165
Information on the driver availability camera 165
Calling up the parking aid menu 166

Warning systems 167
Speed warning 167
Distance warning 167
Side assist 168
Exit warning system 170
Fatigue warning 171
Distraction warning 172

Lane assist systems 174
Lane departure warning 174
Lane guidance 176
Assisted lane change 179

Speed assist systems 181
Speed regulation systems 181
Adaptive cruise control 184
Predictive cruise control 191

Combined assist systems 194
Adaptive cruise assist 194

Systems for braking and taking evasive action 195
Emergency assist 195
Active front assist 196
Rear turn assist 200

Further assist systems 202
Predictive efficiency messages 202
Camera-based traffic sign recognition . . . 203
Hazard alerts 205
Proactive occupant protection 206
Traffic light information 208
Lap timer 209
Electronic toll collection system 210

Parking systems 212
Parking aids with distance display 212
Reversing camera/surround view cameras . 214
Rear emergency brake assist 219
Rear cross-traffic assist 220
Kerb warning 222
Manoeuvre assist 223

Assisted parking systems 226
Assistance driving into a parking space . . 226
Assistance driving out of a parking space . 227
System limits of the assisted parking systems 227
Finding a parking space for which you can use the assisted parking systems 227
Completing a parking manoeuvre into a measured space with the assisted parking system 229
Driving into and out of parking spaces with the park assist plus 230
Remote-controlled parking 233
Reversing assist 237
Trained parking 239

Infotainment 243
Telephone 243
Introduction 243
Calling up the telephone 243
Connecting a mobile phone 243
Overview of telephone symbols 244

8B1012720AG

Calling up the telephone settings menu . . 244
Calling up the messages menu 244
Using the telephone functions 244
Using text message functions 246
Using the phone compartment 246
Troubleshooting for phones 247

Audi connect 249
Information on Audi connect 249
Using the internet in the vehicle 250
Audi connect services 250
Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle hotspot 251
Store 252

Emergency call 253
Emergency call systems 253
Online roadside assistance 255
Information on data processing for the European Union 255

Navigation 257
Introduction 257
Navigation system limits 257
Calling up the navigation menu 257
Overview of navigation symbols 257
Calling up the navigation settings menu . 258
Calling up the map content menu 258
Entering a destination 258
Using functions while route guidance is active 259
Using predictive route guidance 260
Operating the map 261
Using map functions 261
Using traffic information 262
Performing an online map update 262
Troubleshooting for the navigation 264

Radio 265
Introduction 265
Operating the radio 265
Overview of radio symbols 265
Calling up the radio settings menu 265
Using radio functions 265
Troubleshooting for the radio 267

Media 269
Introduction 269
Information on the use of mobile devices and media 269
Connecting mobile devices and media . . . 269
Operating media 270
Calling up the media settings menu 270
Using media functions 270
Information on supported media and file formats 270
Troubleshooting for media 271

Dashcam 273
Introduction 273
Setting up the dashcam 273
Calling up the dashcam settings menu . . . 273
Operating the dashcam 273
Using dashcam functions 274

Interior entertainment 275
Introduction 275
Using the themes function 275
Using the experiences function 275
Using a game controller 276

Smartphone interface 278
Introduction 278
Connecting a smartphone 278
Troubleshooting for the smartphone interface 279

Further settings 280
Opening the settings menu 280
System settings 280
Connection manager 280
Software update 281
Legal information 282

Service and care 284
Checking and topping up fluids . 284
Fuel 284
Filling the tank 286
Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF) 289
Emission control system 293
Particulate filter 293
Engine compartment 295
Engine oil 298

Cooling system 302
Brake fluid 305
Electrical system 306
Battery 307
Windscreen washer system 311
Service interval display 312
Smart service 313
Online Car Care 313

Wheels 315
Tyres and rims 315
Tyre pressure loss indicator 319
Tyre pressure monitoring system 320
Information on run-flat tyres 323

Care of vehicle and cleaning 324
Introduction 324
Washing the vehicle 324
Information on cleaning and care 325
Taking the vehicle out of service 329

Self-help 331
Mobility 331
Introduction 331
Equipment 331
Tyre repair kit 332
Changing a wheel 334
Jump-starting 337
Towing away 339

Fuses and bulbs 343
Changing fuses 343
Changing a bulb 346

Customer information 347
Data protection 347
Information on data protection 347
Image recording 347
Memory 347
Privacy settings 349
Information on data collection 351

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle 352
Maintenance, repairs and modifications to the vehicle 352
Accessories and replacement parts 353
Position for a toll device on the windscreen 353

Technical data 355
Identification data 355
Vehicle data 355

Other information 360
Information on brands and licences 360
Driving school mode 360
Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH 360
Information on Regulation 2023/1542 on batteries 360
Information on waste disposal 360
Radio equipment 361
Additional customer information 364
Additional customer information for Taiwan 365
Information on manufacturing faults for the Republic of Korea 365
Information on the event data recorder for the Republic of Korea 366
Information on emissions and operating noises for the Republic of Korea 366

Index 367

8B1012720AG

Getting started

About the Owner's Manual

Introduction

The Owner's Manual contains important information, safety precautions and tips for operating your vehicle.

MAKE SURE TO READ THE OWNER'S MANUAL AND KEEP IT IN A SAFE PLACE

Read the Owner's Manual carefully before using your vehicle. Please ensure that the Owner's Manual and all associated documents are always kept in the vehicle. This is especially important if you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

Versions of the Owner's Manual

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and the country, the following versions of the Owner's Manual may be available:

Digital Owner's Manual and abridged Owner's Manual

Your vehicle was delivered with a digital Owner's Manual and a printed abridged Owner's Manual. The abridged Owner's Manual contains safety precautions and the most important information on operating your vehicle.

The digital Owner's Manual is the full version which provides additional information on operating your vehicle.

Digital Owner's Manual and printed Owner's Manual

A digital Owner's Manual and a printed Owner's Manual are available for your vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

Only a printed Owner's Manual is available for your vehicle.

Supplements and updates to the Owner's Manual

Please bear in mind that Audi[1)] works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. Audi reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. It is therefore also possible that the Owner's Manual will be updated. This may be done by publishing supplements which may be made available to you as printed documents and in digital form. It may also be done by issuing software updates.

After a software update has been issued or a supplement has been published in digital form only, the information in the printed Owner's Manual may differ from the information in the digital Owner's Manual. In this case, the digital Owner's Manual contains the more up-to-date information.

Additional documents in the vehicle

MAKE SURE TO READ THE PRINTED DOCUMENTS AND KEEP THEM IN A SAFE PLACE

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and the country, additional documents may be included in your vehicle in printed form *only*. The information in these documents is intended to supplement or replace the information in the Owner's Manual. Read these documents carefully before using your vehicle. Please ensure that these documents are always kept in the vehicle. This is especially important if you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

Information on vehicle equipment

Vehicle-specific features

The Owner's Manual is not specific to your vehicle. It includes descriptions of all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is available for the entire model series. Some of the equipment described may therefore not be fitted in your vehicle. Standard and optional equipment is not marked. It is also possible that some ▶

1) "Audi" refers to AUDI AG, the importer for your country and the joint ventures.

equipment and functions will only be introduced at a later date or are only available in specific markets. Illustrations are intended as a general guide and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations and descriptions.

Equipment fitted

You can check whether a particular piece of equipment is fitted in your vehicle based on the following:

– You can identify whether the vehicle body type described is applicable and see whether the controls, buttons, parts and other elements described are fitted.
– You can attempt to operate or change the settings for the functions, parts, and equipment described via the MMI or the instrument cluster.
– You can find the equipment or function in the vehicle details in the myAudi app [1].
– You can find the equipment or function in the equipment list in the sales contract.

If you do not find any evidence of the particular piece of equipment, you can conclude that it is not fitted in your vehicle. You can contact a qualified workshop if you are unsure.

Symbols and description conventions

Please note the following symbols and description conventions that are used in the Owner's Manual.

The symbols and cross-references may look different in the printed and digital Owner's Manuals.

▶ Section continued on next page

⇨ *page 78* Cross-reference to other descriptions or subjects

⇨ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING"

References to **positions** such as "left", "right", "front" or "rear" are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.

Using the digital Owner's Manual

Availability of the digital Owner's Manual

Depending on the country, you may be able to access the digital Owner's Manual via:
– myAudi
– The infotainment system in the vehicle

The information is correct at the time of publication. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

Accessing the Owner's Manual via myAudi

Depending on the country, you may be able to access the Owner's Manual on your mobile device via myAudi. This function is not available for all mobile devices.

Important: You must have a myAudi account. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account. ▶

[1] The availability and functions of the myAudi app vary from country to country. A different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle.

▸ Go online to my.audi.com, or
▸ Start the myAudi app on your mobile device.

Accessing the Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Depending on the country, you may be able to view the Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Audi apps** > **Online manuals**.

Whenever you open the Owner's Manual, it is opened in the language selected as the system language on the MMI.
▸ To change the language of the Owner's Manual, select: ⊞ > **Audi apps** > **Online manuals** > ⚙.

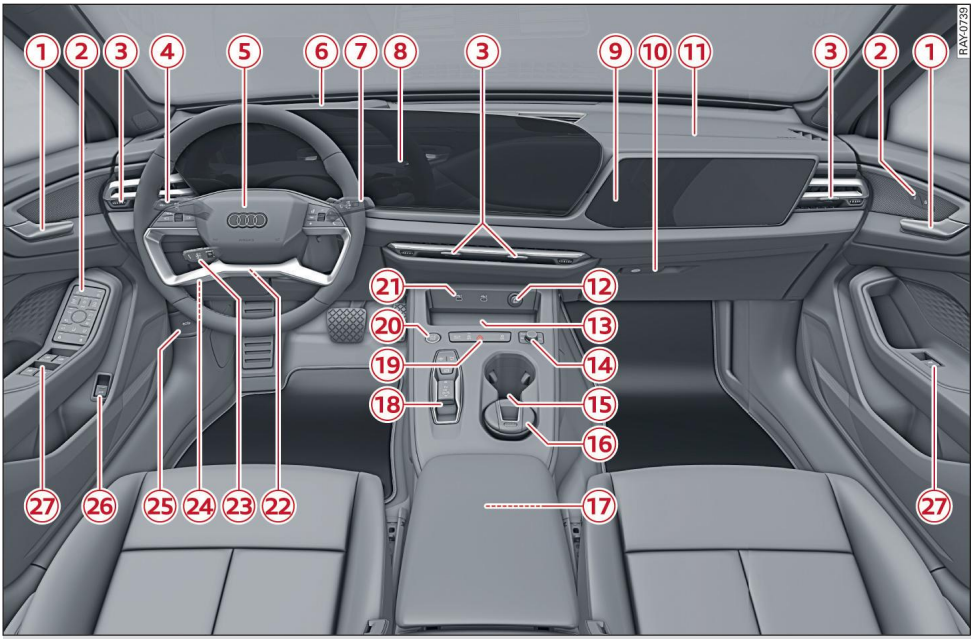
Application options

– Call up Owner's Manual content by chapter
– View supplements (if supplement is available)
– Call up available indicator lamps and their meanings
– Search for a certain key word in the index
– The text search function 🔍 can be used to search the entire contents of the Owner's Manual for your own search terms.

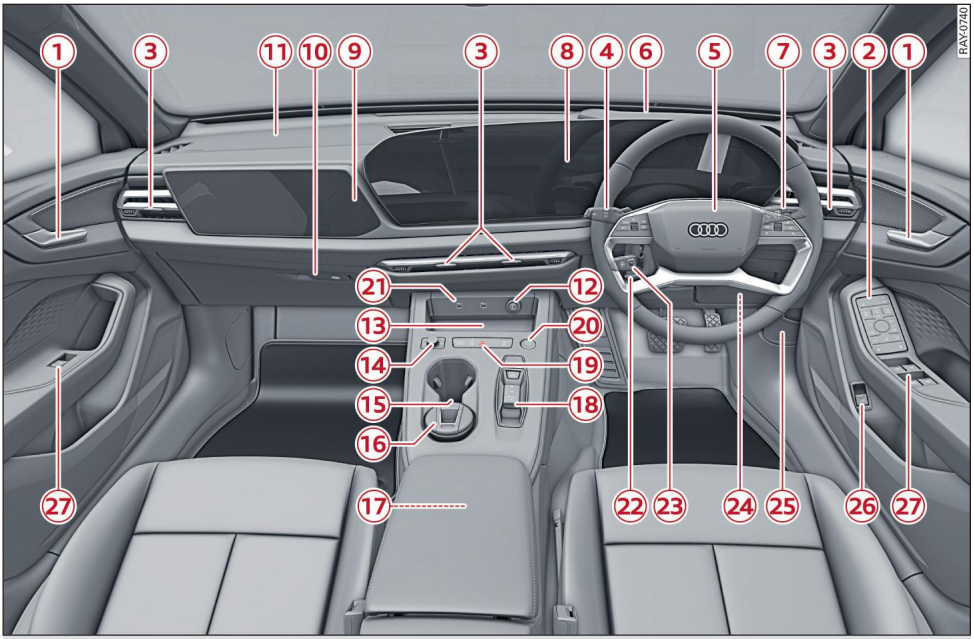
WARNING

You should only use the digital Owner's Manual when the vehicle is safely parked; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident.

Front cabin



Applies to: left-hand drive vehicles
Fig. 1 Front cabin



Applies to: right-hand drive vehicles
Fig. 2 Front cabin

8B1012720AG

Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

1. Interior door handle
2. Depending on equipment, controls for:
   - Central locking system 38
   - Lights 59
   - All-weather lights 59
   - Rear fog light 59
   - Adjuster for exterior mirrors 64
   - Memory function 72
   - Child lock 39
3. Vents
4. Control lever for:
   - Turn signals and main beam headlights 60
   - Main beam assist 60
   - Lane departure warning 174
   - Lane guidance 177
5. Multi-function steering wheel with:
   - Horn
   - Driver's airbag 78
   - Controls 18
   - Paddle levers 112
6. Head-up display 29
7. Control lever for windscreen wipers and washer 66
8. Panoramic display with:
   - Instrument cluster 18
   - Centre display 23
9. Passenger display
10. Lockable glove box 88
11. Front passenger's airbag 78
12. Depending on equipment fitted:
    - Electrical socket 89
    - Cigarette lighter 88
13. Depending on equipment fitted:
    - Storage compartment
    - Phone compartment with inductive charging function 246
14. MMI control dial 26
15. Cup holder 89
16. Ashtray 88
17. Centre armrest with storage compartment and the following optional equipment:
    - Starting the vehicle after a malfunction 104
18. Depending on equipment fitted:
    - Button for driver assist systems . 164
    - Button for parking systems 166
    - Switch for electromechanical parking brake 117
    - Selector lever 109
19. Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:
    - Drive select 121
    - Start/stop system 114
    - Hybrid modes (plug-in hybrid drive) 107
    - Hazard warning lights 62
    - Auxiliary heating / ventilation . . . 100
    - Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) 125
20. START ENGINE STOP button 104
21. USB ports with charging function . 269
22. Steering wheel adjustment 72
23. Control lever for:
    - Speed regulation systems 181
    - Adaptive cruise control 184
24. Connection socket for onboard diagnostic system (OBD) 348
25. Bonnet lock release 297
26. Button for:
    - Boot lid 51
    - Tank flap release (plug-in hybrid drive) 286
27. Window control 55

Overview of warning and indicator lamps

Introduction

The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster or on the centre display. Their purpose is to indicate functions or faults. Certain warning and indicator lamps light up when the vehicle is switched on and should go ▶

back out when the drive system is switched on or once the vehicle is moving.

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message and a warning tone. The warning/indicator lamps and driver messages can be masked by further displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display.

Some of the warning lamps may be displayed in different colours.

⚠ Central warning/indicator lamps

If the warning lamp ⚠ or indicator lamp ⚠ lights up, note the information in the instrument cluster.

Overview of warning and indicator lamps

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following warning/indicator lamps are shown:

Red warning lamps	
	Central warning lamp ⇨ *page 11*, instrument cluster ⇨ *page 18*
	Seat belt ⇨ *page 77*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 109*, high-voltage system ⇨ *page 128*, high-voltage electrical system ⇨ *page 128*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 116*, ⇨ *page 306*, electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 119*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 117*
	Steering ⇨ *page 123*
	Steering ⇨ *page 123*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 167*
	Lane departure warning intervention ⇨ *page 174*
	Take over prompt (lane guidance) ⇨ *page 177*, ⇨ *page 178*
	Take over steering prompt (lane guidance) ⇨ *page 178*
	Assisted lane change ⇨ *page 179*, assisted lane change cancelled ⇨ *page 180*
	Take over braking prompt (adaptive cruise control) ⇨ *page 188*
	Take over braking prompt (adaptive cruise control) ⇨ *page 188*, safe start monitor ⇨ *page 189*
	Safe start monitor ⇨ *page 189*
	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 195*
	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 195*
	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 195*
	Active front assist ⇨ *page 198*
	Swerve support ⇨ *page 198*
	Cross-traffic information ⇨ *page 198*
	Proactive occupant protection ⇨ *page 206*

P OFF	Assisted parking (fault) ⇨ *page 232*, remote-controlled parking (fault) ⇨ *page 237*
OFF R	Reversing assist (fault) ⇨ *page 239*
OFF	Reversing assist (fault) ⇨ *page 239*
P OFF	Trained parking (fault) ⇨ *page 241*
	Software update ⇨ *page 282*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 290*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 290*
	Bonnet ⇨ *page 297*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 301*
MIN	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 301*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 303*, ⇨ *page 305*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 306*

Yellow indicator lamps

	Central indicator lamp ⇨ *page 11*
	Engine speed governing ⇨ *page 19*, drive system ⇨ *page 109*, high-voltage electrical system ⇨ *page 128*, charging system ⇨ *page 135*, cooling system ⇨ *page 302*, ⇨ *page 303*, ⇨ *page 305*

	Central locking system ⇨ *page 39*
	Occupant detection fault ⇨ *page 43*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 47*
	Bulb monitor ⇨ *page 62*
	Adaptive light ⇨ *page 62*
	Headlight range control ⇨ *page 62*
	Light sensor/rain sensor ⇨ *page 62*
	Windscreen wipers ⇨ *page 68*
	Safety systems ⇨ *page 79*
	Vehicle start system ⇨ *page 104*
?	Convenience key ⇨ *page 104*
POWER LIMIT	Drive system ⇨ *page 109*
OFF	Vehicle sound ⇨ *page 109*
	Gearbox ⇨ *page 113*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 116*, brake servo ⇨ *page 116*, electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 119*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 116*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 116*, ⇨ *page 306*
HOLD	Hold function ⇨ *page 119*
	Suspension control ⇨ *page 122*

	Steering ⇨ *page 123*
	Steering ⇨ *page 123*
	Four-wheel drive ⇨ *page 124*, sport differential ⇨ *page 124*
OFF	Electronic stabilisation control ⇨ *page 125*, ⇨ *page 125*
ESC OFF	Electronic stabilisation control ⇨ *page 125*
	Electronic stabilisation control ⇨ *page 126*
ABS	Anti-lock brake system ⇨ *page 126*
	High-voltage battery range ⇨ *page 135*, fuel tank system/high-voltage system ⇨ *page 289*
	Towing bracket ⇨ *page 151*, ⇨ *page 152*, ⇨ *page 154*
	Distance warning (fault) ⇨ *page 168*, active front assist ⇨ *page 199*, rear turn assist ⇨ *page 201*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 169*
	Exit warning system ⇨ *page 171*
	Fatigue warning ⇨ *page 171*, ⇨ *page 172*
	Distraction warning ⇨ *page 172*, ⇨ *page 173*
	Lane departure warning (fault) ⇨ *page 176*

	Take over steering prompt (lane guidance) ⇨ *page 178*
	Lane guidance (fault) ⇨ *page 178*
	Assisted lane change (fault) ⇨ *page 180*
	Adaptive cruise control (fault) ⇨ *page 191*, adaptive cruise assist (fault) ⇨ *page 194*
	Emergency assist (fault) ⇨ *page 196*
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇨ *page 205*
	Proactive occupant protection ⇨ *page 208*
P	Parking aids ⇨ *page 214*, kerb warning ⇨ *page 223*
	Rear cross-traffic assist (fault) ⇨ *page 222*
	Manoeuvre assist ⇨ *page 225*
P OFF	Assisted parking ⇨ *page 232*
P	Assisted parking (fault) ⇨ *page 232*, remote-controlled parking (fault) ⇨ *page 237*
R	Reversing assist (fault) ⇨ *page 239*
OFF	Reversing assist (fault) ⇨ *page 239*
P	Trained parking (fault) ⇨ *page 241*
SOS	Emergency call function ⇨ *page 255*
	Software update ⇨ *page 282*

	Emission control system ⇨ *page 284,* ⇨ *page 286,* ⇨ *page 293*
	Fuel tank system ⇨ *page 289,* ⇨ *page 289,* ⇨ *page 294*
	Fuel tank system ⇨ *page 289*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 290*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 290*
	Particulate filter ⇨ *page 294*
MIN	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 299,* ⇨ *page 301*
MAX	Engine oil level (MAX) ⇨ *page 299,* ⇨ *page 301*
SENSOR	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 299,* ⇨ *page 301*
	Engine warm-up requested ⇨ *page 301*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 305*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 306*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 312*
	Tyre pressure ⇨ *page 320,* ⇨ *page 321*
TPMS	Tyre pressure ⇨ *page 320,* ⇨ *page 321*

Further indicator lamps

	Occupant detection active ⇨ *page 43*

	Dipped headlights ⇨ *page 59*
	Side lights ⇨ *page 59,* dipped headlights ⇨ *page 59*
	Turn signals ⇨ *page 60,* ⇨ *page 62*
	Turn signals ⇨ *page 60,* ⇨ *page 62*
	Rear seat belt ⇨ *page 77*
EV	Plug-in hybrid modes ⇨ *page 108*
A	Start/stop system ⇨ *page 115*
HOLD	Hold function ⇨ *page 118*
1	Trailer turn signals ⇨ *page 150*
	Lane departure warning (ready to give warnings on at least one side) ⇨ *page 174*
	Lane guidance (active) ⇨ *page 177*
	Assisted lane change ⇨ *page 179*
LIM	Speed limiter ⇨ *page 182*
LIM AUTO	Predictive speed limiter ⇨ *page 182*
	Adaptive cruise control (active) ⇨ *page 186*
	Adaptive cruise control (active) ⇨ *page 186*
	Adaptive cruise control (active) ⇨ *page 186*

	Adaptive cruise control (active) ⇨ *page 186*, vehicle ahead (predictive messages) ⇨ *page 202*
	Speed limit (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*, speed limit (predictive messages) ⇨ *page 202*
	Speed limit lifted (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*
	Corner (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*, corner (predictive messages) ⇨ *page 202*
	Slip road (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*
	Exit (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*, exit (predictive messages) ⇨ *page 202*
	Intersection (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*, intersection (predictive messages) ⇨ *page 202*
	Roundabout (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*, roundabout (predictive messages) ⇨ *page 202*
	Bump (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*
	Give way (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*
	Stop sign (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*
	Stop sign without detected stop line (predictive cruise control) ⇨ *page 191*

	Predictive efficiency messages ⇨ *page 202*
	Gradient (predictive messages) ⇨ *page 202*
	Main beam headlights ⇨ *page 60*, ⇨ *page 61*
	Main beam assist ⇨ *page 60*
	Engine ⇨ *page 105*
	Door lock ⇨ *page 39*
	Child lock ⇨ *page 39*
	Occupant detection with warning tone ⇨ *page 43*
	Occupant detection ⇨ *page 43*
	Main beam assist ⇨ *page 60*, ⇨ *page 62*
	Rear seat belt ⇨ *page 77*
	Auxiliary heating / ventilation ⇨ *page 101*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 104*
	Plug-in hybrid modes ⇨ *page 108*
	Plug-in hybrid modes ⇨ *page 108*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 116*
	Brakes ⇨ *page 119*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 122*
	Trailer assist ⇨ *page 158*
	Trailer assist ⇨ *page 158*

8B1012720AG

Km/h	Speed warning function ⇨ *page 167*
	Distance warning (fault) ⇨ *page 168*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 169*
	Exit warning system ⇨ *page 171*
	Fatigue warning ⇨ *page 171*, ⇨ *page 172*
	Distraction warning ⇨ *page 172*, ⇨ *page 173*
	Lane departure warning (switched on, not ready to give warnings) ⇨ *page 174*
Off	Lane departure warning (switched off) ⇨ *page 174*
	Lane departure warning (fault) ⇨ *page 176*
	Lane guidance (switched on but not active) ⇨ *page 177*, ⇨ *page 178*
	Lane guidance (fault) ⇨ *page 178*
	Assisted lane change ⇨ *page 179*, assisted lane change cancelled ⇨ *page 180*, assisted lane change (fault) ⇨ *page 180*
LIM	Speed limiter ⇨ *page 182*, ⇨ *page 184*
LIM AUTO	Predictive speed limiter ⇨ *page 182*
LIM !	Speed limiter ⇨ *page 182*
LIM AUTO !	Predictive speed limiter ⇨ *page 182*

	Adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 186*, adaptive cruise control (fault) ⇨ *page 191*, adaptive cruise assist (fault) ⇨ *page 194*
RES	Driving off automatically (adaptive cruise control) ⇨ *page 189*
	Emergency assist (cancelled) ⇨ *page 196*, emergency assist (fault) ⇨ *page 196*
	Emergency assist (switched off) ⇨ *page 196*
OFF	Active front assist ⇨ *page 199*, ⇨ *page 199*
	Active front assist ⇨ *page 199*
	Rear turn assist ⇨ *page 201*
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇨ *page 205*
	Proactive occupant protection ⇨ *page 208*
P	Parking aids ⇨ *page 214*, kerb warning ⇨ *page 223*
	Rear emergency brake assist ⇨ *page 219*, rear emergency brake assist (fault) ⇨ *page 220*, braking intervention (manoeuvre assist) ⇨ *page 223*, manoeuvre assist ⇨ *page 225*
	Rear cross-traffic assist (fault) ⇨ *page 222*
P OFF	Assisted parking ⇨ *page 232*

	Assisted parking (fault) ⇨ *page 232*, remote-controlled parking (fault) ⇨ *page 237*
	Reversing assist ⇨ *page 239*
	Reversing assist ⇨ *page 239*, reversing assist (fault) ⇨ *page 239*
	Reversing assist ⇨ *page 239*, reversing assist (fault) ⇨ *page 239*
	Reversing assist ⇨ *page 239*
	Trained parking ⇨ *page 241*
	Trained parking ⇨ *page 241*, trained parking (fault) ⇨ *page 241*
	Tank flap ⇨ *page 289*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 290*
	AdBlue ⇨ *page 290*
	Particulate filter ⇨ *page 294*

8B1012720AG

Instrument cluster

Overview and controls

Safety information on the instrument cluster

WARNING

– The display may be deactivated if a serious system fault occurs. The warning lamp ⚠ may also light up. Stop the vehicle safely. Seek professional assistance.
– At temperatures below +5°C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display ❄. Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5°C – risk of accident!

Instrument cluster display areas

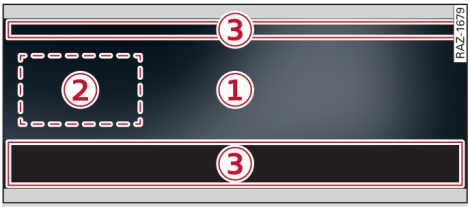


Fig. 3 Instrument cluster display areas

The instrument cluster display is divided into the areas described below. Which display areas are shown and what content is visible depends on the selected view and the Audi drive select mode.

Certain contents of the instrument cluster can also be projected onto the head-up display.

① Central display area

The information shown in the central display area includes information on vehicle operation.

The following content may be displayed:

– Navigation
– Assist systems display with surroundings shown

② Left display area

The left display area shows the on-board computer and infotainment content. The content is divided into several tabs.

The following content may be displayed in the various tabs:

– On-board computer
– Radio/media
– Telephone
– Navigation
– Lap timer

③ Status bar

The following content may be displayed:

– Digital speedometer
– Warning and indicator lamps
– Charge level of the high-voltage battery
– Remaining range
– Selected transmission position
– Outside temperature display

Instrument cluster controls

You can change the brightness of the instrument cluster in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

You can operate the instrument cluster using the controls on the multi-function steering wheel.

Control	Function
▭ / ▭	**Press:** Change between tabs **Press and hold:** Hide tabs
Left thumb-wheel	**Scroll:** Scroll up/down within a tab **Press:** Confirm selection **Press and hold:** Reset value/memory
VIEW	**Press:** Change between views

Changing instrument cluster views

The instrument cluster has several views. Each view focuses on displaying specific content, such as the map or the driver assist systems. It is also possible to switch between the displays specific to the different Audi drive select modes in each view. ▶

You have the following options for changing how the instrument cluster is displayed:

- Press the VIEW button to change the view.
- To switch to the display for a specific Audi drive select mode, change the drive select mode.

You can customise the layout in the Audi drive select mode **balanced** or **individual**.

Description of displays

Overview of vehicle operation displays

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

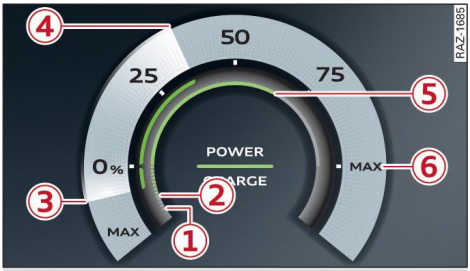


Fig. 4 Displays in power meter

Whether and where the following displays are shown depends on the current Audi drive select mode. The colours and colour borders may vary depending on which driving program is selected and how much electric power is currently available.

Displays in power meter

In the POWER area, the current drive system power ④ is shown as a proportion of the currently available power ⑤. The currently available power may depend on the driving mode being used and may be lower than the maximum power ⑥ for reasons relating to operating conditions, for example if the charge level of the high-voltage battery is low. Power restrictions due to the motor speed are not taken into account in this value.

In the CHARGE area, the current recuperation ③ is shown as a proportion of the currently available recuperation ②. The currently available recuperation may be lower than the maximum recuperation ① for reasons relating to operating conditions.

Other displays

Symbol	Meaning
	Charge level of high-voltage battery (percentage).
ON	Vehicle is switched on. Drive system is switched off.
READY	Vehicle is switched on. Drive system is switched on and vehicle is ready to drive.
BOOST	Boost function is active or available.

Boost function display

The BOOST symbol shows the length of time for which the boost function can be used. In addition to this, the symbol's colour indicates the boost function's status. The position of the boost display in the instrument cluster can vary depending on the selected layout.

Colour	Meaning
grey	Not available
white	Available
green	Active

Information on the rev counter

The rev counter indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute. The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly in all gears after the engine has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or select transmission position D/S (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

If the rev limiter has been activated because of a fault in the engine management system, the indicator lamp will light up. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed in the driver information system, for example when shifting down a gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. ▶

CAUTION

The rev counter needle must only ever briefly go into the red zone on the scale; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage.

Information on the engine oil temperature display

The engine oil temperature display is only shown in certain Audi drive select modes, such as **dynamic** mode. The display is shown in the status bar.

The engine has reached its operating temperature in normal driving conditions when the oil temperature is between 80°C and 120°C. If the engine is running under increased load at high ambient temperatures, the oil temperature may increase significantly. This is no cause for concern, provided that the indicator/warning lamps or are not lit.

Information on the on-board computer

Changing the display in the on-board computer

▸ Scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel until the desired display appears.

Displays in on-board computer

The following content may be displayed:

– Short-term and long-term memories
– Consumption
– Mileage

Resetting values to zero

– To reset the value of a memory to zero, press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel for one second.

Information on mileage

The trip odometer shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. This value can be reset manually.

The overall odometer records the vehicle's total mileage.

Information on consumption

The current consumption can be shown in a bar display. The average consumption from the short-term memory can also be displayed.

Information on the short-term and long-term memories

The short-term memory collects the information on a journey from the time the vehicle is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the vehicle is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not reset automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

Shift light display

The shift light display indicates that the rev limit is about to be reached.

▸ Select **dynamic+** mode.

The shift light display consists of yellow, orange and red areas in the high sections of the rev counter. The shift light display flashes in red at engine speeds near the limit. Remember to shift to the next gear in good time.

Information on the gear shift indicator

To familiarise yourself with the gear shift indicator, drive in the normal way to start with. A gear change will be recommended on the instrument cluster display if the gear you are in is not the most economical choice. If no gear change is recommended, you are already in the most economical gear.

The display is only visible in tiptronic mode.

The symbol after the current gear means **change up a gear**.

The symbol after the current gear means **change up two gears**. ▸

CAUTION

The gear shift indicator is intended to help the driver save fuel. It is not intended to recommend the right gear for all driving situations. In certain situations, only the driver can choose the correct gear (for instance when overtaking or driving up a steep gradient).

Touch displays

Gestures and input

Using touch displays

Selecting a function or button

▸ Press the desired function or button.

Opening a context menu

For certain objects, you can open a context menu which is not immediately visible.

▸ Press and hold an object until the context menu is shown.

Moving objects

Certain objects can be moved, e.g. their position can be changed:

▸ Press and hold the object and move it to the desired position.
▸ You can create folders with several objects in certain areas by pressing and holding an object and dragging it on top of another one.

Switching between pages

▸ To switch between pages, swipe to the right/left with one finger.

Scrolling through pages/lists

▸ To scroll through a page/list, swipe up/down with one finger.

Opening/closing a hidden view

▸ To open a hidden view, swipe from the edge (e.g. from the top edge) of the display towards the centre of the display.
▸ To close a hidden view, swipe from the centre of the display towards the edge.

Using sliders

▸ To change the scale of a slider, press the slider and drag it to the desired value, or
▸ Press on any position on the scale and drag the slider to the desired value.

Changing the view or angle

▸ Spread two fingers to make an object larger.
▸ Pinch two fingers together to make an object smaller.
▸ Use two fingers to turn an object.
▸ Swipe up/down with two fingers to tilt a 3D view.

Entering text on touch displays

You can enter letters, numbers and characters in entry fields, e.g. to find an address in the navigation system. You can enter characters or words using the keyboard, handwriting recognition or speech recognition.

Overview of keyboard symbols

Symbol	Description
	To change the input language
	To switch to handwriting recognition
	To switch to the keyboard
	To minimise the keyboard
	To minimise handwriting input

Entering text

– Applies to on-screen keyboard: You can enter text by pressing the keys on the on-screen keyboard. In certain contexts, you can also swipe your finger over the letters [1].
– Applies to handwriting recognition: Text can be entered by simply writing with your finger in the entry area. You can write individual characters one over the other or one after the other without having to lift your finger from the screen. When you have finished, the system will interpret what you have written.
– Applies to on-screen keyboard with diacritical marks: To enter diacritical marks (e.g. â, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold the appropriate character and select the desired diacritical mark. ▶

[1] May vary in different countries.

– Applies to handwriting recognition: To enter a space, draw a line from left to right[1] in the entry area.
– To select the position where the text is entered, press within the entry field at the desired position. You can adjust the position even more precisely using the slider [2] displayed on the screen.
– To delete a single character, press ⌫, or
– Applies to handwriting recognition: Draw a line from right to left[1] in the entry area.
– To delete more than one character, press and hold ⌫.

Information on path descriptions

The path descriptions in the Owner's Manual show you how to open the app you require along with its settings and functions.

Menus or symbols in the path description that are shown in brackets, e.g. (⚙), are optional menu items which do not need to be selected in all systems.

Example of a path description

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **More** > **Steering wheel button**.

Using a path description

▸ The first part of the path indicates which display is to be used. If the path description does not specify a particular display (e.g. "Select: ..."), it primarily applies to the centre display and may also apply to the passenger display. If the path description specifies a display, it only applies to this display.
▸ Press ⊞ in the direct access panel. The app overview will appear.
▸ Select the specified app in the app overview (**Car** in this example). If the **Car** app is not displayed, swipe up/down with one finger until it appears.
▸ In an app, the next element of the path description may be in a list or in the tab area. In this example, the **More** menu is in the tab area.
▸ Press **More**.
▸ If **Steering wheel button** is not displayed, swipe up/down with one finger until it appears.
▸ Press **Steering wheel button**.

Overview of displays on Multi Media Interface

Introduction

You can display and operate different infotainment and vehicle functions using the touch function of the Multi Media Interface (MMI).

Setup wizard

After switching on the system for the first time, you can use the wizard to set up your vehicle, e.g. to select the desired system language and configure the privacy settings.

Order of lists

Certain lists, such as the radio station list, are arranged alphabetically. Lists with messages or current notifications are arranged by date.

Notes on traffic safety

Certain functions are not available while the vehicle is in motion. In addition, Audi recommends that certain infotainment functions should not be used unless the vehicle is stationary, e.g. entering a destination or connecting a mobile device. Always be prepared to stop operating the infotainment system in the interest of your own safety and that of other road users.

WARNING

– Only operate the infotainment system when the road, traffic, visibility and weather conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle – risk of accident!

[1] If the input language is set to Arabic, make the gestures described in the opposite direction.

[2] May vary in different countries.

– The same applies when operating your mobile device via the MMI. Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident!

Centre display user interface

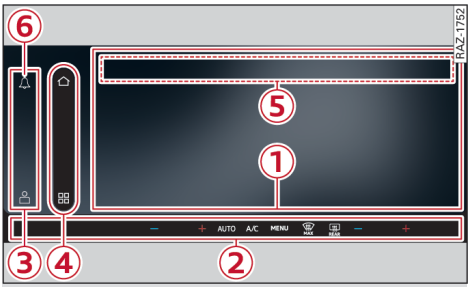


Fig. 5 Centre display: User interface

① Display area

Possible displays in the display area:

– Overview pages
– App overview
– App content

② Air conditioner control bar

The air conditioner control bar is always visible, even if the display is switched off.

③ Status bar

The status bar displays various pieces of information on the vehicle and connected devices, such as the connection status of a mobile phone or whether there is a driver message in the notification centre.

④ Direct access panel

You can add several apps of your choice from the app overview to the direct access panel. The objects ⌂ and ⊞ cannot be moved.

– To add an app to the direct access panel, drag it from the app overview to the direct access panel.

⑤ Tab area in an app

A tab area may be shown at the top of an app. The different objects in the tab area are used to navigate within the app.

⑥ Notification centre with quick access bar

The notification centre displays all system and app notifications. An icon informs you when there is a new notification. The additional quick access bar contains a selection of functions and apps that can be accessed directly.

Using the notification centre with quick access bar

Notification centre

– To open the notification centre, press the button ⑥ or swipe from the top edge of the display towards the centre.
– To delete a notification from the notification centre, drag it to the edge of the screen.
– To close the notification centre, swipe from the bottom edge of the display towards the centre.

Quick access bar

The contents of the quick access bar can be customised.

– To configure the contents of the quick access bar, press and hold an item until a context menu appears.

Information on the goodbye screen

The goodbye screen is shown on the centre display before you leave the vehicle. It displays a range of settings that you can change before you get out of the vehicle.

– To show the goodbye screen, park the vehicle safely and press the START STOP button.

MMI passenger display user interface

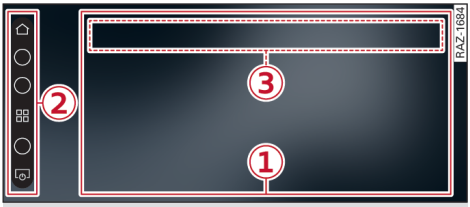


Fig. 6 Passenger display: Overview of user interface

① Display area

Possible displays in the display area:

– Overview page
– App overview
– App content

② Direct access panel

You can add several apps of your choice from the app overview to the direct access panel. The objects ⌂ and ⊞ cannot be moved.

③ Tab area in an app

A tab area may be shown at the top of an app. The different objects in the tab area are used to navigate within the app.

Overview of MMI symbols

The symbols below allow you to control standard functions. These symbols may appear in all apps in the appropriate context.

Symbol	Description
⌂	Call up overview page
⊞	Open app overview
↩	Go back one level
×	Close view
🔍	Search for content
ⓘ	Call up explanations
⚙	Call up settings for selected app
✎/✎/✎	Change settings
☆/★	Store/delete favourite
☐/☑	Switch functions on/off
⊂⊃/⊂⊃	
○/◉	

Symbol	Description
•••	Call up additional functions
>	Call up further information
🗑	Delete object

Overview of symbols and functions in the quick access bar

The following table shows the functions that may be available in the quick access bar:

Symbol	Description
✎	Open configuration mode
	Open head-up display settings
	Switch lane departure warning on/off
	Open **Car** app
	Open **Driver assist** app
	Open interior lighting settings
	Open privacy settings
	Open sound settings
	Switch vehicle's Bluetooth interface on/off
	Switch vehicle hotspot on/off
	Switch Wi-Fi on/off
	Set system language
	Open connection manger
	Operate garage door opener

Overview of status bar symbols

The following table shows the symbols that may be shown in the status bar:

Symbol	Description
	A personalised user symbol is shown when a user is logged in. The symbol appears when the guest user is logged in. **Press**: To open user management
	A mobile phone is connected. The bars indicate the strength of the mobile reception.
	Switch message/sound for traffic sign-based speed warning on/off
ETC	Electronic toll collection system available

Using and customising the MMI

Adjusting the audio and system volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. from the Audi assistant) while it is being played.

Adjusting the volume using the MMI control dial

- To turn the volume up or down, turn the MMI control dial clockwise or anti-clockwise.
- To mute the sound, press the MMI control dial.

Adjusting the volume using the multi-function steering wheel

- To adjust the volume, scroll the right thumb-wheel up/down.
- To mute the sound, press the right thumb-wheel.

WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Changing the track/station

Changing the track/station using the MMI control dial

- To select the previous or next track/station, briefly push the MMI control dial to the left or right.

Changing the track/station using the multi-function steering wheel

- To select the previous or next track/station, press the ⏮ or ⏭ button.

Operating a function via the steering wheel button

The ✳ button on the multi-function steering wheel can be used to operate a specific MMI function. You can select the function it accesses from a pre-defined list.

- To use the function that is currently programmed, press the ✳ button.
- To find out which function is currently programmed or to change the function, press and hold the ✳ button, or
- Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **More** > **Steering wheel button**.
- Select a different function if desired.

Starting up/shutting down or restarting the MMI system

Starting up/shutting down the MMI system

- To shut down the MMI system, press and hold the MMI control dial until all the infotainment functions are shut down.
- To start up the MMI system, press the MMI control dial.

Restarting the MMI system

- Press and hold the MMI control dial for at least ten seconds.

Switching the displays on/off

Switching the centre display on/off

- To switch the centre display off, press and hold the MMI control dial for approximately two seconds.
- Press **Switch off display**.
- Touch the centre display to switch it on.

Switching the MMI passenger display on/off

- To switch the MMI passenger display off, press ⏻ on the MMI passenger display and select **Passenger display off**, or
- Press and hold the MMI control dial for approx. 2 seconds and select the following on the centre display: **Passenger display off** > **Switch off**.
- To switch the MMI passenger display on, touch the MMI passenger display, or
- Press and hold the MMI control dial for approx. 2 seconds and select the following on the centre display: **Passenger display on**.

▶

Switching the standby design for the MMI passenger display on/off

The passenger display has a standby mode. Only a screensaver is displayed in this mode. You can change the screensaver in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

- To switch the standby design on, press ⏻ and select **Standby design on**, or
- Press and hold the MMI control dial for approx. 2 seconds and select the following on the centre display: **Passenger display off** > **Standby design**.
- To switch the standby design off, touch the MMI passenger display.

Customising the MMI system

Certain objects on the MMI can be customised. For example, some objects can be moved and context menus can be opened.

- To move an object, press and hold the object and drag it to the desired position.
- To open the context menu for a particular object, press and hold the object.

Customisation options

Depending on the area/object, you may be able to make the following customisations:

– You can arrange the apps in the app overview and the direct access panel in any order.
– In the app overview, you can delete downloaded apps via the context menu.
– You can create, rename and delete folders with multiple apps in the app overview.
– You can create a certain number of home screens and customise them with widgets.

Configuring home screens

The layout of the home screens can be customised. The existing widgets can be arranged in any order on the home screens. Each widget can only be used once. The home screens can be configured on the centre display and the front passenger display.

– To customise the home screens, press and hold a widget until the context menu opens.
– Keep holding the desired widget and drag it to the desired position.
– Press the **Confirm** button to finalise the layout.

Creating and managing folders

– To create a folder, press and hold an object and drag it onto another object.
– To rename a folder, open the folder and press the name. Enter the desired name.

There is a context menu for each folder and the objects it contains. You can use this menu to remove individual objects from the folder or to delete the entire folder.

Changing the brightness of the MMI

You can change the brightness of the MMI in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

Using accessibility functions on the MMI

The accessibility functions on the MMI can make it easier to use the system. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following accessibility functions may be available:

– Subtitles
– High-contrast text
– Magnification

You can download additional accessibility functions from the digital store.

Changing the accessibility function settings on the MMI

Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Accessibility**.

You can switch certain functions on/off by pressing ⊂⊃ / ⊂⊃ or change their settings by pressing >.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs.

Opening the Car menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the vehicle settings in the **Car** menu. The available settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

- Select: ⊞ > **Car**, or
- Open the quick access bar on the centre display and press 🚗.

You can switch certain functions on/off by pressing ⊂⊃ / ⊂⊃ or change their settings by pressing [>].

Head-up display

Using the head-up display

The head-up display shows certain content in the driver's field of vision, such as the speed. The available content of the head-up display is divided into several tabs.

Switching on/off

- To switch the head-up display on/off, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel, or
- You can switch the head-up display on/off in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

Selecting the head-up display

The head-up display must be selected in order to use the tabs in the display.

- To select the head-up display, press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Changing between tabs in the head-up display

Important: The head-up display must be selected.

- Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until the desired tab is displayed.

Operating the head-up display via the multi-function steering wheel

Control	Function
	Press and hold: Switch head-up display on/off **Press:** Select head-up display **Press multiple times:** Change tab in head-up display
Left thumb-wheel	**Scroll:** Scroll up/down within a tab **Press:** Confirm selection

Information on the head-up display

– If a driver message appears in the instrument cluster, it may not be possible to operate the head-up display.

– The display may be harder to see in unfavourable light conditions or if you are wearing polarised sunglasses.

– A special windscreen is required for the head-up display.

CAUTION

Do not place any objects over the opening for the head-up display to avoid scratching the glass cover.

Changing the head-up display settings

You can change the head-up display settings in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*. For example, you can change the brightness, display height and content.

Adjusting the display height

The height of the display can be adjusted. To be able to see the display as clearly as possible, assume an appropriate seating position and make adjustments to the image of the head-up display.

Setting which information is displayed

You can determine which types of information are displayed on the head-up display. Some of the information and warnings cannot be hidden.

8B1012720AG

Audi assistant

Functions and operation

Introduction

The Audi assistant enables you to use a wide range of vehicle and infotainment functions via voice control. If there is an active internet connection, you can ask for online content such as the current weather or news. In addition, the Audi assistant tries to understand the logged-in user's behaviour in order to offer routines and proactive suggestions that make it easier and more convenient to operate the vehicle.

When you use the Audi assistant, you are interacting with an AI system.

Safety information on the Audi assistant

WARNING

– Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – risk of accident!
– The Audi assistant must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice may change in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!

Tips for using the Audi assistant

- Speak clearly in a normal volume. Speak louder if you are driving fast.
- Speak in a normal tone without long pauses.
- Close the windows to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not talking when you say a command.
- Keep the vents pointed away from the microphones located near the front interior lights in the headliner.

Using routines and proactive suggestions

Important: You must be logged in with a myAudi user ID in the vehicle.

Routines

If a recurring pattern of actions is identified, the Audi assistant can recommend a routine. If a routine is stored, it will be performed automatically when the appropriate conditions are fulfilled. For example, the climate control will be set automatically at a certain outside temperature. Routines cannot be performed in certain situations and may be forgotten.

You can switch automatically generated routines on/off or delete them in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇨ *page 31*. You can cancel a routine that has been performed by switched the function off or saying "*Hey Audi, reverse routine*". It is only possible to cancel a routine via voice command for a short time after the routine is performed.

Proactive suggestions

If you do not use certain functions, the Audi assistant can suggest that you use a particular function in an appropriate situation.

Error messages related to interactions with proactive suggestions are only given orally.

Switching routines and proactive suggestions on/off

You can switch routines and proactive suggestions on/off or delete them in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇨ *page 31*.

System limits

Routines and proactive suggestions may be restricted if the GPS position is not clear.

Using the Audi assistant

Important: The vehicle and the MMI system must be switched on. The system language must be set to one supported by the Audi assistant. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

No navigation cues or traffic announcements are played when a dialogue is active. ▶

Activating via the button on the steering wheel

- Briefly press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- Say the desired command.

Activating via a voice command

Important: You must have activated the activation phrase function in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇨ *page 31*.

- Say the activation phrase "*Hey Audi*" followed by the desired command.

In some countries it is possible to use the voice control function without saying the activation phrase. The following requirements must be met to do this:
- You must be sitting in the driver's seat.
- You must be the only person in the vehicle.
- You must have activated the simply start talking function in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇨ *page 31*.

Activating via the centre display ••••

If the vehicle has an overview page for the Audi assistant, you can activate the system as follows:

- Open the overview page for the Audi assistant by pressing ••••.
- Press •••• on the overview page for the Audi assistant and say the desired command.

The overview page for the Audi assistant shows tips on how to use it, proactive suggestions and routines.

Cancelling voice control

- To cancel voice control, say "*cancel*" or press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Commands and hints

The **Audi assistant** menu provides help on using the system ⇨ *page 31*.

- To receive context-dependent help for the current dialogue, say "*help*".

Calling up the Audi assistant menu

You can change the settings for the system in the **Audi assistant** menu. The available settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

- Select: > **Settings** > **Audi assistant**.

Product improvement of online speech recognition

You can activate online speech recognition for additional functions and even better results when using the speech recognition. A supported system language must be selected. When the system is connected to the internet, spoken commands that are recognised will be evaluated online as well as in the vehicle.

Before you activate online speech recognition, please read the terms of use ⓘ. By activating the function, you agree to the terms of use.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs.

External voice control function

Introduction

You can use the system in the vehicle to call up and operate the voice control function of a connected mobile phone. Audi only enables you to access your mobile phone's speech dialogue system and accepts no responsibility for the content and commands of the external speech dialogue system.

Using the external voice control function

Switching the external voice control function on/off

Important: The vehicle and the MMI system must be switched on. A mobile device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto or connected as a mobile phone ⇨ *page 281*. The connected mobile phone must have a voice control ▶

function that can be controlled externally. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

- To switch the external voice control function on, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- To switch the external voice control function off, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Operating the external voice control function

- Give a spoken command after the tone.
- To resume using the voice control function after pausing it, briefly press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Valet mode

Introduction

Valet mode enables you to lock the centre display and front passenger display for a specified period and restrict certain vehicle functions. Access to your personal data will be restricted when you temporarily hand over the vehicle to third parties, such as during a service appointment at a qualified workshop or when using a valet parking service.

Valet mode restricts functions such as the following:

– Audi assistant
– Navigation on the centre display
– Radio and media playback
– Bluetooth and Wi-Fi

Opening the valet mode settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off and adjust the settings in the **Valet mode** settings menu. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Valet mode** > ⚙.

Using valet mode

Calling up valet mode

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Valet mode**.

Starting valet mode

▸ Enter a PIN.
▸ Press **Activate valet mode**.

Valet mode remains active until the PIN that you set is entered or the timer that you set expires.

You can set the timer in the **Valet mode** settings menu ⇨ *page 33*.

Personal settings

Users

Introduction

Depending on the equipment and country, your vehicle can manage different users in the MMI system. Each user is assigned their most recently used settings.

Before driving off, you can select a user in the MMI system and load their individual infotainment and vehicle settings.

Possible users in the MMI system:

– **myAudi user**: As a myAudi user, you can store individual settings and call them up again later. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, you may also be able to use some of these settings in other vehicles. You have access to Audi connect services and can use them in the vehicle.
– **Local user**: As a local user, you can only store your individual settings in the current vehicle. Your settings cannot be transferred to other vehicles. You do not have access to Audi connect services in the vehicle that require a myAudi user.
– **Guest user**: As a guest user, you can store your settings in the vehicle without changing existing users' settings. Audi recommends only using the guest user temporarily as individual settings can only be stored in the current vehicle and cannot be stored permanently. You do not have access to Audi connect services in the vehicle that require a myAudi user.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the system can recognise the active user before a journey when the driver's door is opened based on the following:

– Vehicle key
– Digital key

Information for users with PIN protection

A PIN is stored for users with the symbol. If you simply drive off or wait without entering the PIN for a recognised user, the guest user will be selected. Some of the settings will be transferred to the guest user.

System limits of personal settings

– Certain infotainment and vehicle settings (e.g. mirror settings, radio station) may be stored, depending on your vehicle's equipment. Further information can be found on the MMI. Select: > **Legal**.
– The stored settings for myAudi users can only be transferred to other vehicles that are suitable. This capability may be restricted in certain countries. The settings can only be transferred and loaded within the area covered by a particular mobile network service provider.

WARNING

It is possible that some or all of the infotainment and vehicle settings may not be loaded. As the driver you are always responsible for the infotainment and vehicle settings – risk of accident!

Managing users

Selecting a user

▸ Press the symbol for the current user in the status bar on the centre display. All users will be shown.
▸ Press on the desired user.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

Adding a user

▸ Press the symbol for the current user in the status bar on the centre display. All users will be shown.
▸ Press **Add user**.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

Editing a user

Important: You must have selected the relevant user and loaded their settings.

▸ Press the symbol for the current user in the status bar on the centre display. All users will be shown.
▸ Press on the user whose settings are loaded.

Depending on the user type, the following options may be available: ▶

Change PIN protection: Users can be protected by a PIN. If a PIN is not applied, anyone in the vehicle can select the user.

Delete user from vehicle: The user is only deleted from the user management in the vehicle.

Change name: You can change the name of users. The guest user cannot be renamed.

Deleting a user

- Press the symbol for the current user in the status bar on the centre display. All users will be shown.
- Press and hold the desired user and press 🗑.

Key user

Introduction

The owner of the vehicle must be set as the key user for certain Audi connect vehicle control services, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

As the key user, you can authorise further users for equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.

Key users automatically have remote access rights. These are required in order to control certain functions (depending on the equipment in your vehicle) such as Audi connect vehicle control services via the myAudi app.

Setting the key user

Important: You must not have set a key user yet.

- You need a myAudi account in order to set a key user for the vehicle. Register in the myAudi app.
- Add your vehicle in the myAudi app.
- Follow the instructions given by the myAudi app.

Removing the key user

Important: A key user must have been set.

If you remove the key user, all other users added by the key user will be deleted along with their permissions. It will no longer be possible to use the equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.

All digital keys (depending on equipment) will be deleted.

The following options can be used to remove the key user:

Removing the key user in the myAudi app

- Open the myAudi app and remove the key user.

Removing the key user on the MMI

- Press the symbol for the current user in the status bar on the centre display. All users will be shown.
- Press **Key user** in the tab area.
- Press **Remove key user**.

Before you sell your vehicle, reset the system to the factory settings.

8B1012720AG

Opening and closing

Central locking system

Safety information on the central locking system

WARNING

– Always switch off the vehicle and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the vehicle or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows – this could lead to injuries.
– Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
– Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with an anti-theft alarm system. Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safe-lock mechanism is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 40, Information on the anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
– Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car when the child lock is activated: the rear doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside – risk of fatal injury!

Introduction

Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.

The central locking system has the following functions/features:

– All doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked simultaneously via the central locking system. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the entire vehicle or the driver's door only, depending on the setting you have selected on the MMI system ⇨ *page 37*.
– The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked. If the turn signals do not flash when you lock the vehicle, check that all the doors and the boot lid are properly closed.
– When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not working properly. You should have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

Depending on the vehicle’s equipment, you have the following options for locking/unlocking your vehicle centrally:

– Vehicle key
– Sensors in the door handles
– Automatic unlocking/locking
– Digital key on your mobile device (e.g. mobile phone)
– Digital key card
– Lock button in the boot lid
– Interior central locking switch

Key/vehicle key

The term “key” may refer to the remote control key or convenience key, a mobile device with the digital key or the activated digital key card.

“Vehicle key” refers to the remote control key or convenience key. The convenience key is a remote control key with special functions.

Automatic locking function

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet within a short time after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake. ▶

Accidental lock-out

If, after you have locked the vehicle, the turn signals flash several times and a warning tone[1] sounds when you close a door or the boot lid, the vehicle key or digital key that was last used is still inside the vehicle ⇨ ⓘ.

It is not possible to detect a digital key with a flat battery or a digital key card in the vehicle ⇨ ⓘ.

To prevent yourself from being locked out, only lock the vehicle when there are no keys in the vehicle and all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

The central locking system prevents you from locking your vehicle key or digital key inside the vehicle in the following situations:

– When the driver's door is open, you cannot lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the vehicle key or touching the locking sensor on one of the doors. The locking sensor is not fitted on all vehicles.
– If the most recently used vehicle key or digital key is detected in the vehicle, it is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside ⇨ ⓘ.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 36*.

CAUTION

The following applies when locking the vehicle:

– If the most recently used vehicle key or digital key is detected in the passenger compartment, it is not possible to lock the vehicle **by sensor** from the outside. Take the vehicle key or digital key with you and lock the vehicle again; otherwise the vehicle will not be secure.
– If the turn signals flash several times and a warning tone sounds[1], this means that after the vehicle was locked with the convenience key or digital key while a door or the boot lid was still open, the door or boot lid was then closed and the most recently used convenience key or digital key was detected in the vehicle. Open the door or the boot lid immediately and take the convenience key or digital key out. Otherwise, the vehicle will be locked automatically with the convenience key or digital key inside (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely).
– Important: Your vehicle must have a digital key or a digital key card. If you lock the vehicle with a digital key (with an empty battery) or your digital key card when a door or the boot lid is still open and then put the digital key / digital key card down inside the vehicle and close the door or boot lid, the digital key / digital key card will not be detected and will therefore be locked inside the vehicle.

Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

You can adjust the settings for the central locking system in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Doors to unlock

– If you select **All**, all doors and the boot lid will be unlocked when you unlock the vehicle.
– If you select **Driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. You can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the button on the vehicle key twice. On vehicles with convenience key, only the driver's door will be unlocked when you take hold of the door handle. Gripping any of the other door handles unlocks the whole vehicle.

The whole vehicle is always locked when you press the button.

Long press to open windows

You can set whether all windows can be opened using the vehicle key ⇨ *page 56, Opening/closing the windows with the convenience open/close function*. ▶

[1] Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

Lock when driving (Auto Lock)

To prevent unauthorised access from the outside (e.g. when stopped at traffic lights), you can set the system to automatically lock the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 km/h.

The vehicle is unlocked again immediately when the button in the central locking switch is pressed.

You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.

After an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

Disable boot lid handle

You can select whether the luggage compartment can be opened via the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *page 52, Fig. 16*. When this function is activated, the boot lid can only be opened using the button on the vehicle key or in the driver's door. On vehicles with convenience key or digital key, the release catch on the boot lid can still be used to open the luggage compartment if an authorised convenience key or digital key is detected ⇨ *page 51*.

Fold mirrors

You can set whether the exterior mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Tone when locking[1)]

You can set the system to give an acoustic signal when you lock the vehicle.

Open with convenience key

You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle via the sensor on the door. It is still possible to lock the vehicle via sensor.

Operate boot lid with foot gesture

You can switch the foot gesture control for the boot lid on/off.

Interior monitor

You can switch the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock on/off ⇨ *page 40*.

Extended convenience access - unlock automatically when approaching

You can set whether the vehicle should be unlocked automatically when you approach it ⇨ *page 50*.

Extended convenience access - lock automatically when leaving

You can set whether the vehicle should be locked automatically when you leave it ⇨ *page 50*.

Information on the central locking switch

The central locking switch (/ buttons) is in the door trim.

▸ To lock/unlock the vehicle, press the / button ⇨ .

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

– The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the outside (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
– The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
– Once a door has been opened from the inside, it can then also be opened from the outside as well. Press the lock button on the central locking switch again in order to prevent the doors from being opened from the outside.
– After an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 36*.

▶

1) This function is not available in all countries.

– The central locking switch also works when the vehicle is switched off.
– The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

Driver messages about the central locking system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Vehicle electronics: fault. Shift to P before leaving vehicle. Please contact workshop

There is a fault in the vehicle electronics. Apply the parking brake to hold the vehicle before getting out. The transmission position will be shifted to P automatically when you do so. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Central locking: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the central locking system. If it is not possible to lock the doors via the central locking system, you can lock them manually ⇨ *page 45*. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Door lock: when the vehicle is moving, door can only be opened via manual release. See owner's manual

The doors cannot be unlocked electrically at speeds above approx. 15 km/h. If you need to open the door in an emergency when the vehicle is travelling at a higher speed, you can manually release the door by pulling the handle out firmly twice. You will feel noticeable resistance when you do so. You may need to press the door handle back into its original position after doing this.

Child lock: fault. Please contact workshop soon

There is a malfunction in the child lock. Press the button again.

If the message continues to be displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified ⇨ *page 36*.

Vehicle key detected in vehicle interior

or

Vehicle key detected in boot

This driver message appears if a vehicle key or digital key is detected in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked and a door or the boot lid is then closed. The vehicle also reacts by flashing the turn signals several times and issuing a warning tone[1]. Remove the vehicle key or digital key without delay. Otherwise, the vehicle will be locked automatically and the vehicle key or digital key will be locked in the vehicle (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely).

WARNING

If there is a malfunction in the child lock, it may be possible to open the rear doors from the inside – risk of accident!

Switching the child lock on/off

The child locks disable the rear window switches and prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

The child lock buttons are located in the driver's door trim.

- To activate/deactivate the child lock (for the electric window controls and interior door handle on each of the rear doors), press the left/right button . The LED in the button will light up or go out.
- Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window controls and door handles are out of action.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 36*.

[1] Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

– If there is a malfunction in the child lock, it may be possible to open the rear doors from the inside – risk of accident!

Information on the anti-theft alarm system

Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with an anti-theft alarm system. If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is activated/deactivated automatically when you lock/unlock your vehicle. When the alarm is deployed, it switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows are closed.

After you have locked the vehicle, the alarm is triggered if you pull one of the interior door handles, even if you have switched off the safelock mechanism.

Switching the alarm off manually

▸ To deactivate the alarm, press the button on the vehicle key or switch the vehicle on.

Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, the following components may be integrated in the alarm system:

Anti-theft alarm

The alarm is triggered if the bonnet, the boot lid or one of the doors is forced open.

Interior monitor and tow-away protection

The alarm is triggered if movements (e.g. of animals) are detected in the interior or if the vehicle's angle of inclination is changed (e.g. during transport).

You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by deactivating the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection.

Safelock[1)]

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. For more information on the safelock mechanism, please refer to ⇨ *page 41, Driver messages about the anti-theft alarm system*.

You must deactivate the safelock mechanism if you leave people behind in the vehicle.

Deactivating the interior monitor and tow-away protection and the safelock mechanism[1)]

There are various ways to deactivate the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism:

▸ Press the button on the vehicle key a second time **within 2 seconds**, or
▸ Touch the sensor ⇨ *page 49, Fig. 14* on the door handle a second time **within 2 seconds**. This only works if the vehicle is fitted with the convenience key function. Or
▸ Select the **Interior monitor** function in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

If you lock the vehicle in this way, the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

When the function has been deactivated, the LED in the door panel will flash briefly and then remain off for approx. half a minute.

WARNING

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

▶

1) This function may be optional in your country and is not available in all countries/equipment versions.

CAUTION

- If you switch off the safelock mechanism, the interior monitor and tow-away protection are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against break-ins and theft.
- Applies to vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services: The safelock mechanism is not switched on if you use Audi connect services to lock the vehicle remotely.

Driver messages about the anti-theft alarm system

The message **Be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual** appears on the instrument cluster display when you switch the vehicle off as a reminder that the safelock mechanism ⇨ *page 40, Safelock* will be activated.

Occupant detection

Introduction

The purpose of the occupant detection system is to warn the driver if there could be other persons, especially children, on the rear seats after the vehicle has been switched off.

The occupant detection system is designed to reduce the risk of accidentally leaving someone behind in the vehicle.

Before locking the vehicle, make sure that there are no persons or animals still in the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the vehicle may be locked automatically when you leave it.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, different occupant detection systems may be used.

Indirect occupant detection without sensor

The system monitors whether the rear doors are opened. If one of the rear doors has been opened, the system assumes that there could be someone on the rear seats ⇨ *page 43, Driver messages about the occupant detection system*.

Direct occupant detection with sensor

A radar sensor in the headliner detects whether there are persons on the rear seats. If this is the case, different warning levels may be triggered ⇨ *page 41, How the direct occupant detection system works*.

WARNING

Never leave persons or animals unsupervised in the vehicle, even if the vehicle is equipped with an occupant detection system.

How the direct occupant detection system works

The warning concept features three escalating warning levels. Important: The system must have detected persons on the rear seats.

The occupant detection system can be deactivated on the MMI ⇨ *page 43, Setting the occupant detection system*.

The occupant detection system operates based on movements detected in the rear cabin.

The warning levels are initiated in the following cases:

- If persons are detected in the rear cabin after the end of the journey.
- If persons are detected in the rear cabin after a door is opened and then closed again while the vehicle is stationary.

Warning level 1

A driver message appears in the instrument cluster and is accompanied by a notification sound. Ensure that no persons (especially children) or animals remain in the vehicle.

Warning level 2

Important (starting from warning level 2): The occupant detection system must be activated on the MMI system. Parts of warning levels[1] 2 - 3 also require the myAudi app to be installed on your smartphone. ▶

[1] May vary in different countries.

If all doors are closed and rear passengers have been detected, the vehicle's turn signals flash and the horn sounds after a short period.

Return to your vehicle and ensure that no persons (especially children) or animals remain in the vehicle.

When using the occupant detection system, make sure that the regulations applicable in your country permit parked vehicles to sound their horn, for example.

Warning level 3

If you have still not reacted to warning level 2 after approx. 2 minutes, the vehicle's turn signals flash and the horn sounds intermittently in order to attract the attention of other persons in the vicinity.

Return to your vehicle and ensure that no persons (especially children) or animals remain in the vehicle.

Deactivating warning levels

The warning levels (2 - 3) can be deactivated on a temporary or permanent basis. If the system is deactivated, you will receive a corresponding message when you switch your vehicle on.

– Temporary: After warning level 1 is triggered, a slider appears on the goodbye screen on the centre display which enables you to deactivate the warning levels until the next journey. If warning levels 2 and 3 are active, you will be able to deactivate them using a function which appears on the centre display. If you deactivate the occupant detection system temporarily, it will be activated again automatically for the next journey.
– Permanent ⇨ *page 43, Setting the occupant detection system*.

CAUTION

– If an emergency rescue operation is required for persons or animals locked in the vehicle, it may result in material damage to your vehicle.
– A rescue operation by the emergency services may incur financial expenses for you.

System limits and function limitations of direct occupant detection

System limits

The vehicle's front row of seats and the luggage compartment are not detected by the sensor.

The occupant detection system is designed to detect persons, especially children, in the rear cabin. Animals may not be detected.

Function limitations

The following factors may affect whether the occupant detection system functions correctly:

– Vehicles passing by may cause the stationary vehicle and therefore any objects in the rear cabin to vibrate; this could trigger a false alarm.
– Objects such as vessels containing liquids left in the rear cabin could cause a false alarm. You should transport such objects safely in the luggage compartment.
– Rear backrests which have not been folded into their end position could cause a false alarm.

Other possible influences:

– Strong radar sources in the area around the vehicle, e.g. radio masts
– myAudi app not installed
– Smartphone without Bluetooth connection
– Smartphone in flight mode
– Low charge level of 12-volt vehicle battery

WARNING

– The driver is always responsible for other persons and animals in the vehicle – danger to life!
– Persons or animals which are covered in heavy blankets may not be detected fully or at all by the sensor.
– Objects such as cardboard boxes in the rear cabin may impair the function of the radar sensor.
– The system does not perform any active interventions which could protect persons or animals left in the vehicle from death due to heat exposure.

Setting the occupant detection system

You can adjust the settings for the occupant detection system in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

The following settings are possible:

Rear notification sound

On vehicles with indirect occupant detection, you can switch the notification sound for the driver message in the instrument cluster on/off.

Tone when leaving vehicle

On vehicles with direct occupant detection, you can switch the notification sound for warning level 1 on/off.

Notification when journey starts

On vehicles with direct occupant detection, you can select whether you want a driver message to appear when starting a journey if someone is detected on the rear seats.

Rear occupant detection

On vehicles with direct occupant detection, you can switch the system on/off. If the system is deactivated, a corresponding driver message appears every time the vehicle is switched on.

Notifications relating to direct occupant detection

When the system is active, the indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster when the vehicle is switched on, for example.

If someone is detected in the rear cabin at the start of a journey, this is indicated to the driver on the centre display.

Driver messages about the occupant detection system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Rear occupant detection: fault. See owner's manual

Check if the rear headliner is covered by any objects and remove any such objects, if necessary. Taller persons on the rear seats may also cause the sensor to be obstructed. If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

/ Please check rear seats!

or

/ Please check rear seats and be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual

At the end of each trip, a driver message will appear on the centre display to remind you that someone may be seated on the rear seats. If you previously opened one of the rear doors, the driver message will also appear in the instrument cluster. Make sure that you do not leave any persons or animals behind when you leave the vehicle.

For vehicles with the safelock mechanism, please observe ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on the anti-theft alarm system on page 40*.

/ Please do not leave any children or animals in the vehicle.

Or

/ Please do not leave any children or animals in the vehicle and be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual

Make sure all occupants have left the vehicle before you get out yourself and/or lock the vehicle.

For vehicles with the safelock mechanism, please observe ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on the anti-theft alarm system on page 40*.

Locking/unlocking the doors manually

Unlocking the driver's door manually if the vehicle key battery is flat

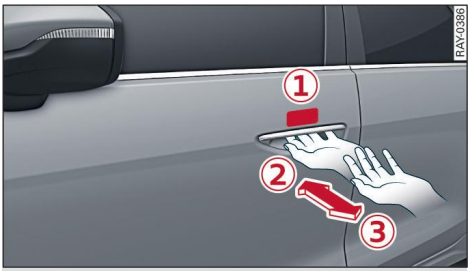


Fig. 7 Driver's door: Unlocking the electronic door handle manually

The driver's door must be unlocked manually if the vehicle key battery is flat.

- Hold the vehicle key above the exterior door handle (1) in the centre with one hand.
- To unlock the vehicle, pull the door handle (2) as normal with the other hand. Remove your hand from the door handle (3) completely after you have pulled it.
- Repeat this process several times at intervals of over 1 second until you can open the door.

After the door has been unlocked manually, the vehicle key battery must be changed ⇨ *page 47*.

Unlocking the driver's door manually if the 12-volt vehicle battery is flat

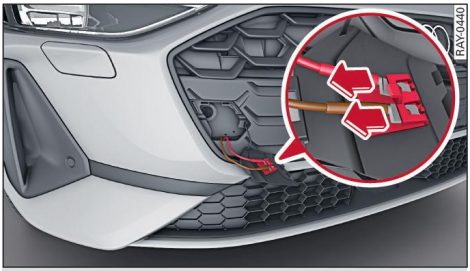


Fig. 8 Front bumper: Cap with 12-volt connections clipped into it

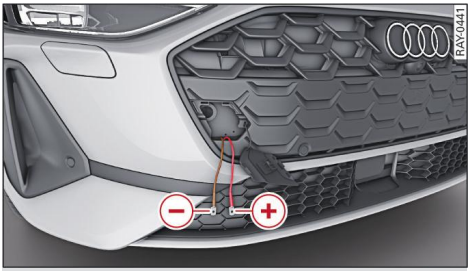


Fig. 9 Connecting a power source

If the 12-volt power supply fails, the doors must be unlocked separately.

Connecting the central locking system to an emergency power supply

The vehicle must be connected to an emergency power supply via the contacts in the bumper in order to unlock the door manually.

- Firmly press the cap inwards briefly ⇨ *page 341, Fig. 166*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- Release the two contact pins from the cap.
- Connect the positive terminal (+) of the 12-volt power source to the positive terminal (+) of the vehicle's contact pin (red cable).
- Connect the negative terminal (−) of the 12-volt power source to the negative terminal (−) of the vehicle's contact pin (brown cable).
- Open the driver's door as normal.
- Remove the terminals of the power source again.
- Re-secure the contact pins in the cap.
- Reinsert the cap in the bumper cover.
- Open the bonnet and charge the 12-volt vehicle battery.

WARNING

The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch – risk of short circuit.

Opening the doors manually from the outside if the door handle mechanism has failed

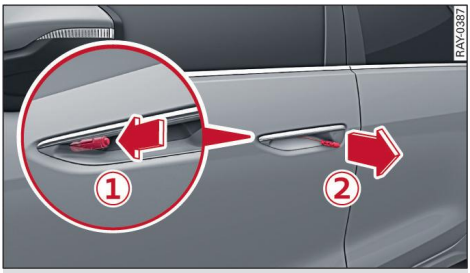


Fig. 10 Door: Opening manually

Important: The vehicle must be unlocked.

The doors must be opened manually if the door handle mechanism has failed.

You should not attempt the following steps unless you have the skills required.

- Briefly press the pin ① in the direction of travel ⇨ *Fig. 10*. This will release the pin, causing it to disengage from the door handle.
- Pull the end of the cable ② until the door opens.
- After opening the door manually, guide the cable and the pin back into the door handle.
- Press the pin ① in the direction of travel until it engages in the door handle. This will lock the pin back in place.

Opening the doors manually after an accident

After an accident in which the airbags are triggered, the vehicle will be unlocked and the electronic door locks will be deactivated. The pin of the manual release mechanism will be ejected from the door handle automatically. The door must be released mechanically in order to open it.

- Pull the end of the cable ② ⇨ *page 45, Fig. 10* until the door opens.

Locking the doors manually

Fig. 11 Door: Locking the door manually

If the central locking system fails, the doors must be locked separately.

The anti-theft alarm system is not activated when the doors are locked manually.

Locking the doors manually

Use the emergency key or a screwdriver to lock the doors manually.

The mechanical locking device is located on the end face of the doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 46*.
- If fitted, remove the cap from the opening on the end face of the door.
- Insert the emergency key or a screwdriver in the slot inside the door and turn it as far as it will go to the right (if the door is on the left side) or to the left (if the door is on the right side).
- If necessary, insert the cap to seal the opening and close the door.

Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle once. If the vehicle is without electrical power, pulling the door handle once will unlock the door; pull a second time to open the door. You will need to pull firmly and will feel noticeable resistance. If the child lock is engaged on one of the rear doors, the door can be opened by pulling the inside door handle and then opening the door from the outside. ▶

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 36*.

Keys

Information on the keys

Fig. 12 Key supplied with the vehicle

Two keys are supplied with each new vehicle.

① Vehicle key

The vehicle key can be used to lock and unlock the car.

② Emergency key and release button for emergency key

An emergency key is integrated in the vehicle key. To remove it, press the release button and pull out the emergency key.

You can use the emergency key to ...

– activate and deactivate the front passenger's airbag ⇨ *page 81*. The front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated on all vehicles.
– lock the doors manually.
– release the boot lid manually.

Information on the vehicle key

– The function of the vehicle key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range. You should always check that your vehicle is locked.
– You can see how many vehicle keys are initialised for your vehicle in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.
– A key fob may be attached to the set of keys when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The key fob contains information on the vehicle keys. The key fob can be used to order new vehicle keys. Please store the key fob in a safe place and give it to the new owner if you sell the car.

Digital key card

Important: Your vehicle must have a digital key card. The digital key card performs a number of the functions of the vehicle key and is approximately the size and shape of a credit card ⇨ *page 48*.

Replacing a key

If you lose a vehicle key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for that vehicle key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you.

Applies to vehicles with digital key / digital key card: If you lose a mobile device on which a digital key is stored, the corresponding mobile device must be deactivated ⇨ *page 47*. If you do not have short-term access to the myAudi app, it is possible to deactivate all assigned digital keys on the MMI ⇨ *page 48, Switching the digital key function on/off in the vehicle*. If you lose the digital key card, you can deactivate it at any time by switching the vehicle on with the vehicle key or digital key. Alternatively, you can deactivate the function in the myAudi app. To replace a digital key card, please contact an Audi dealer.

It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

It may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is another vehicle key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 36*.

CAUTION

The key must not be exposed to excessive temperatures; do not leave it in the sun.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 360, Information on waste disposal*.

LED and battery in vehicle key

Fig. 13 Vehicle key: Removing battery cover

LED in the vehicle key

The LED (1) lights up when you press the buttons.

- The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly. If the LED does not flash, there is a fault or the vehicle key is outside the vehicle's signal range. The LED also does not flash if the key battery is empty.
- The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close).

Replacing the battery in the vehicle key

A driver message appears when the key battery is empty ⇨ *page 47, Driver messages about the key battery*.

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one (battery type **CR 2032**).

- Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 46* and insert it into the opening ⇨ *Fig. 13*.
- Push the emergency key into the opening in the direction of the arrow to press the release button inside (2). Do not try to prise open the cover when doing so, as this could cause damage.
- Pull the cover off the battery compartment.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing up.
- Close the battery compartment with the cover.
- Insert the emergency key.

WARNING

A button cell is fitted in the vehicle key.

– If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time – risk of chemical burns!
– Keep the vehicle key and the key fob with batteries out of the reach of children.
– Keep new and used batteries away from children.
– If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the vehicle key and keep it away from children.
– Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 360, Information on waste disposal*.

Driver messages about the key battery

If the indicator lamp lights up and the corresponding message appears, the battery in the vehicle key is empty and must be replaced ⇨ *page 47, Replacing the battery in the vehicle key*.

Information on the digital key function

You can use your mobile device to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with the digital key function. A key user who has been verified by a dealer must be set. You and all other users must use a compatible mobile device.

To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged, the energy management system will ▶

switch off convenience functions that are not required. Use of the digital key may be restricted. If the vehicle battery is discharged, it is still possible to unlock and lock the vehicle with a mobile device using the sensor on the driver's door handle and the vehicle can be started via the sensor in the phone compartment.

Switching the digital key function on/off in the vehicle

You can switch the digital key function on/off for your vehicle. If you switch the function off, all digital keys that have been assigned and the digital key card can no longer be used temporarily. All assigned digital keys and the digital key card can be used again as soon as you switch the function back on.

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management**.
- Press ⊂⊃/⊂⊃ to switch the digital key function on/off.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

Setting up a digital key

The following options can be used to activate a digital key:

Setting up a digital key via the MMI

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Set up main device**.
- The key user will receive a notification on their mobile device. Follow the instructions in the notification.
- Follow the instructions on your mobile device to activate the digital key.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

Setting up a digital key via the myAudi app

- Open the myAudi app and set up the digital key.
- Follow the instructions on your mobile device to activate the digital key.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.
- The key user will receive a notification on their mobile device. Press on the link or follow the instructions.

Sharing a digital key

- Open the app on your mobile device to manage digital keys.
- Share the desired digital key.
- The recipient must follow the instructions on their mobile device to activate the digital key.

Displaying the digital key on the MMI

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management** > **Key list**.

Removing a digital key

The key user can remove a digital key via their mobile device or the recipient can return it via their mobile device.

The key user can remove the digital key via the MMI.

Important: The vehicle must be switched on.

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management** > **Key list**.

Disconnecting the main device

To reset the vehicle to the factory settings, it may be necessary to disconnect the digital key from the main device.

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management** > **Main device management**.

Information on the digital key function

– In some countries, you can manage digital keys via the myAudi app.
– The key user can deactivate digital keys that have been issued at any time.
– The digital key function may stop working if the mobile device remains uncharged for several days.
– Whether the function is available also depends on the mobile device's manufacturer.

Information on the digital key card

Important: You must have a digital key. Your vehicle must have a digital key card and the key card must be activated. You can use your digital key card to lock/unlock and start the vehicle.

This prevents you from having to give your mobile device to others e.g. for a service appointment or if you require roadside assistance. Once activated, the key card can be used until the next ▶

time the vehicle is switched on with a vehicle key or digital key.

The vehicle can then be driven and locked or unlocked with the digital key card. However, it is not possible to unlock the boot lid separately.

Activating/deactivating the digital key card

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Switch the vehicle on using the digital key (mobile device) ⇨ *page 104*.
- Place the key card in the phone compartment. Follow the instructions given by the MMI.

The key card is automatically deactivated again as soon as the vehicle is switched on using a digital key or a vehicle key. Once deactivated, the key card can therefore be stored in the vehicle.

You can check the status of your key card on the MMI ⇨ *page 49*.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 360, Information on waste disposal*.

Calling up the digital key status

Applies to vehicles with digital key: The status of assigned digital keys and the digital key card can be checked in the myAudi app and in the vehicle.

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management**.

Unlocking/locking

Unlocking/locking the vehicle via the buttons on the vehicle key

Do not use the vehicle key when the vehicle is out of sight.

- To unlock the vehicle, press the 🔓 button ⇨ *page 46, Fig. 12*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the 🔒 button **once**.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle via the sensors

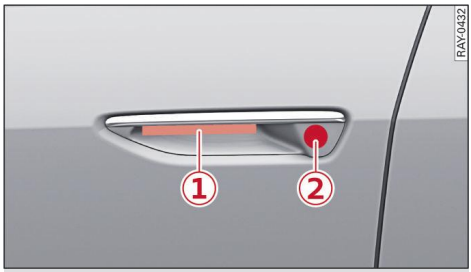


Fig. 14 Door handle: Sensor for locking and unlocking the vehicle

Important: The vehicle must be equipped with a convenience key and door sensors. Transmission position P must be selected. The convenience key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the door handle or boot. To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged, the energy management system will switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle via sensor.

- To unlock the vehicle, reach into the recess under the door handle (1) ⇨ *Fig. 14*.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor (2) on the door handle **once**. Do not reach into the recess when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked. Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle using the digital key/digital key card

Important: The vehicle must be equipped with door sensors and the digital key/digital key card must be activated. The digital key or digital key card must be on your person.

- Important: The mobile device must be connected via Bluetooth. To unlock the vehicle and open the door, reach into the recess under the door handle (1).
- Important: The mobile device must be connected via Bluetooth. To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor (2) on the door ▶

handle **once** ⇨ *page 49, Fig. 14*. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked. Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

- Applies to Near Field Communication (NFC): To unlock/lock the vehicle using Near Field Communication (NFC) technology, hold the mobile device/key card next to the sensor ②.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle automatically

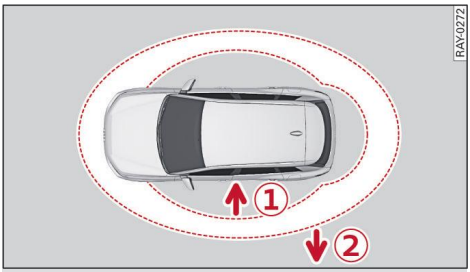


Fig. 15 Area covered by the radar sensors

Important: Your vehicle must have a convenience key and an anti-theft alarm system, you must have your vehicle key or digital key on your person and the extended convenience access function must be activated on the MMI.

When you use the extended convenience access function, the vehicle is locked ① and unlocked ② automatically when you approach or move away from the vehicle within the area detected by the system. The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked.

If the turn signals do not flash when the vehicle is locked, check that all the doors and the boot lid are properly closed and that there are no other vehicle keys inside the vehicle or inside the locking area.

If your vehicle is fitted with an anti-theft alarm system, the safelock mechanism is deactivated when the vehicle is locked automatically. Lock the vehicle manually if you want to lock it with the safelock mechanism.

Activating/deactivating functions

You can adjust the settings for the extended convenience access function in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

Deactivating the unlocking function temporarily

- Lock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key.
- Touch the sensor on the door handle **once** within the next 5 seconds ⇨ *page 49, Fig. 14*. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked.
- To check whether the function has been deactivated, wait at least ten seconds and then pull the door handle. It should not be possible to open the door.

The vehicle can be unlocked the next time only by using the button on the vehicle key. After the vehicle has been unlocked, the automatic unlocking function is reactivated.

Deactivating the locking function temporarily

- With the door open, press the button on the vehicle key for longer than 2 seconds.

The automatic locking function will not be available until the next time the vehicle is locked manually.

Troubleshooting for unlocking/locking

Check whether the key battery is sufficiently full ⇨ *page 47*.

If the vehicle does not unlock when you approach it:

- Try moving away from the vehicle and coming back again, or

If the vehicle does not lock when you move away from it:

- Check that there are no other vehicle keys in the area detected by the vehicle, or
- Check that all doors, the bonnet and the boot are closed.

Information on the extended convenience access function

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function only becomes available again the next time the vehicle is unlocked. Move away from the vehicle and come back again. You may need to lock the vehicle manually.

CAUTION

If the vehicle key remains inside the area detected by the vehicle for an extended period of time, there may be issues with locking when you move away from the vehicle or unlocking when you approach it. If this is the case, the vehicle will not be locked when you leave it. Always check whether the turn signals flash once to indicate that the vehicle is locked. If they do not, the vehicle will not be secure.

Boot lid

Information

WARNING

- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 40, Information on the anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk. The safelock mechanism is not available on all vehicles. The anti-theft alarm system is not available on all vehicles.
- Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you are not using the vehicle. Children could otherwise enter the vehicle e.g. through the luggage compartment and become locked inside. To avoid risk of injury, never allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
- To prevent any risk of injury when closing the boot lid, make sure that no one is in its path – in particular around the hinges, the upper and lower edges and the complete surrounding edge.
- After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving – this could result in an accident.
- The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving; otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn from outside the vehicle into the interior.
- If a luggage rack (e.g. a bicycle carrier) is attached to the boot lid, the boot lid may not open completely or may move downwards by itself due to the added weight. For this reason, make sure you support the boot lid or take the luggage off the carrier before opening the boot lid – risk of injury!
- Applies to vehicles with power-operated/sensor-controlled boot lid: Always be careful when closing the boot lid. A safety feature is provided (pinch protection), but this may not always be able to prevent serious injuries to yourself or others in all circumstances.

CAUTION

To avoid damage, please take care that the boot lid does not hit the ceiling when opening it inside a garage or car park, etc.

8B1012720AG

Opening/closing boot lid

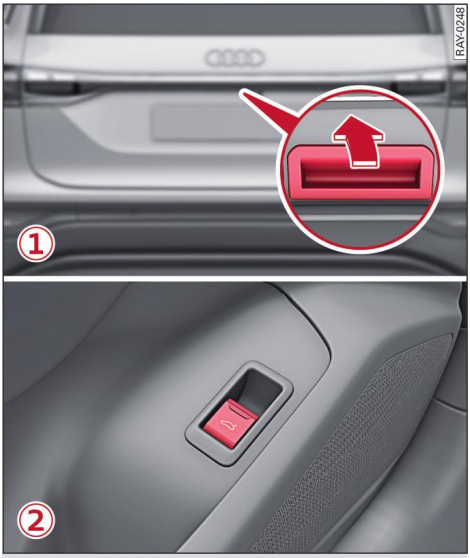


Fig. 16 Release catch in boot lid ①, button in driver's door ②

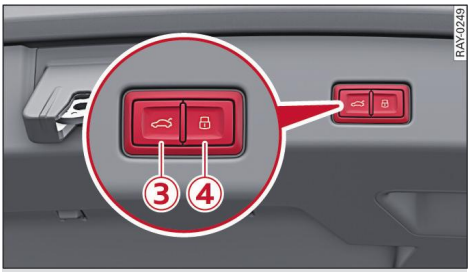


Fig. 17 Boot lid: ③ close button, ④ lock button

The boot lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on page 51*.

Opening the boot lid

There are several ways to open the boot lid:

- Press the release catch on the boot lid ① ⇨ *Fig. 16*. The vehicle key or digital key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment if the luggage compartment is locked, or
- With the vehicle switched off, press the 2x button on the vehicle twice ⇨ *page 46, Fig. 12*, or
- Briefly pull the button ② in the driver's door ⇨ *Fig. 16*, or
- Unlock the vehicle or boot lid with the / 2x button on the vehicle key and press the release catch on the boot lid ①.

You can change the settings on the MMI to activate/deactivate the option for opening the boot lid via the release catch ⇨ *Fig. 16* ⇨ *page 37*.

Closing the boot lid

There are several ways to close the boot lid:

- Press the button ③ ⇨ *Fig. 17* inside the boot lid, or
- With the vehicle switched off, press the / button ③ / ④ inside the boot lid. The vehicle key or digital key must not be in the vehicle. If you press the button ④, the vehicle will be locked after the boot lid is closed. If you press the button ④ and the vehicle key is in the luggage compartment or out of range (more than approx. 1.5 m away), a warning tone will sound and the boot lid cannot be closed, or
- With the vehicle switched on, pull and hold the button ② in the driver's door ⇨ *Fig. 16* until the boot lid is closed, or
- If the button ④ is fitted in the boot lid, with the vehicle switched off, press and hold the 2x button on the vehicle key until the boot lid closes. There will be a slightly delay before it closes. Make sure to stand clear of the boot lid when doing so (do not stand further away than 3 m).

Stopping the automatic movement

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- You press button ③ or the release catch ① on the boot lid ⇨ *Fig. 16* again, or
- You press the 2x button on the convenience key once. The convenience key is not available for all vehicles, or
- It cannot open/close freely or it is obstructed.

If you now press button ③ or the release catch on the boot lid ① again, the boot lid will close/open again.

Storing the open position of the boot lid

The boot lid must be opened at least as far as the minimum open setting, otherwise it will not be possible to store the setting. ▶

- Open the boot lid as far as desired. When pulling the boot lid downwards, you should move it slowly in small steps; otherwise the boot lid will close automatically.
- Press button ③ on the inside of the boot lid for at least 5 seconds to store the desired open position. A visual and audible signal will be given.
- To set a higher open position, wait for 5 seconds and then push the boot lid carefully upwards.
- Then press button ③ again for at least 5 seconds to store the desired open position.

Once the stored open position has been reached, you can open the boot lid fully by pressing the 2x button twice within 3 seconds.

Opening/closing the boot lid manually

The boot lid can be opened/closed manually if the power-operated mechanism fails or the vehicle battery charge is low. This will require more effort. If you move the boot lid slowly, less effort will be required.

- Pull the boot lid down slightly and then push the boot lid down until it closes.

Information on the boot lid

When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the 2x button on the vehicle key twice. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.

If the convenience key or digital key is in the luggage compartment or the passenger compartment while the boot lid is open, the button on the boot lid will not function. The button is not fitted on all vehicles.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 51*.

Opening/closing boot lid with a foot gesture (kicking movement)

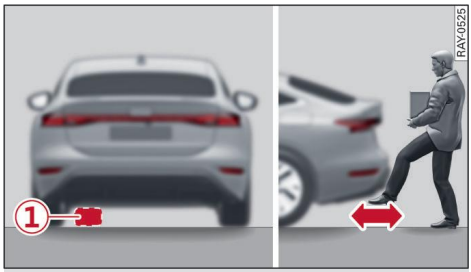


Fig. 18 Rear of vehicle: Foot gesture (example)

Important: Your vehicle must have a sensor-controlled boot lid.

The boot lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on page 51*.

Important: The vehicle must be switched off. You must have the convenience key or digital key on your person and the foot gesture control and convenience key functions must be activated on the MMI. You must be standing to the left of centre ① behind the boot lid.

Depending on the model version, upon approaching the left side at the rear of the vehicle, you can see an illuminated spot on the ground in darker conditions indicating where to perform the foot gesture.

Activating/deactivating function

You can switch the foot gesture control for the boot lid on/off in the **Central locking** ⇨ *page 37, Adjusting the settings for the central locking system* or **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

Opening/closing the boot lid

The turn signals flash to indicate that the boot lid is opening.

An acoustic signal is given to indicate that the boot lid is closing. If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid is opened, it will be locked again automatically after the boot lid is closed.

- To open/close the boot lid, swing your foot forwards and back very closely under the bumper ① without touching it in one single fluid movement ⇨ *Fig. 18*. Take care not to slip. The boot ▶

lid will open/close when the system detects the gesture.

If the boot lid is fully open, it will be closed with a delay as soon as you move away from the vehicle and there are no keys in the vicinity of the boot lid. A warning tone will sound until the boot lid starts closing. If you move back towards the vehicle while the boot lid is closing automatically, it may open again.

If you have used the foot gesture to close the boot lid but remain in the vicinity of the boot lid for an extended period, the automatic delayed closing function is cancelled. This is accompanied by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the automatic movement

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- ▸ You perform the foot gesture again.
- ▸ You press the button ③ ⇨ *page 52, Fig. 17* or the release catch ① ⇨ *page 52, Fig. 16* on the boot lid again, or
- ▸ You press the 2x button on the convenience key, or
- ▸ It cannot open/close freely or it is obstructed.

If you now press the button ③ ⇨ *page 52, Fig. 17* or the release catch on the boot lid ① ⇨ *page 52, Fig. 16*, the boot lid will close/open again.

Information on using the foot gesture function correctly

The boot lid will open/close only if you make the exact gesture described above. This is to prevent the boot lid from opening/closing in similar situations, for instance if you walk between the rear of the vehicle and a garage door. In certain situations, the system may be temporarily unavailable or the functionality may be restricted. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

- If you are standing too close to or too far away from the bumper.
- If the boot lid was closed or opened immediately beforehand.
- If you park near a hedge and the wind blows the branches back and forth under the vehicle over an extended period.
- If you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner or drive through an automatic car wash.
- In heavy rain.
- If the bumper is very dirty (e.g. after driving on salted roads).
- If the radio signal from the convenience key or digital key was affected by interference from other transmitters (e.g. mobile phones or remote control devices).
- If the boot lid is open and the convenience key or digital key is in the luggage compartment or passenger compartment. In this case, the boot lid cannot be closed via foot gesture.

Information on incorrect use

The boot lid could open unintentionally if you have the convenience key or digital key on your person in certain situations, for example:

- If a charging cable is routed around the rear of the vehicle.
- When sweeping under the rear bumper.
- If exposed to a strong jet of water or steam.
- When repair work is performed on or near the rear bumper.
- By gates moving in the area near the bumper.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 51*.
- Please note that the sensor-controlled boot lid may be opened/closed unintentionally if you have the convenience key or digital key on your person while you are behind the vehicle – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Please note that the sensor-controlled boot lid may be opened/closed unintentionally (and could hit the garage ceiling) if you have the convenience key or digital key on your person while you are behind the vehicle.
- Always make sure that there are no valid vehicle keys unintentionally within the area of detection around the sensors for the boot lid that are fitted underneath the bumper cover ① ⇨ *Fig. 18*.

CAUTION

Deactivate the foot gesture control for the boot lid on the MMI ⇨ *page 53, Activating/deactivating function* to prevent the boot lid from being opened unintentionally in the following situations:

– When you park the vehicle close to obstacles such as streetlights, posts or garage doors, or in an underground car park with a low ceiling
– Before washing the vehicle
– When using a car wash
– Before any maintenance and repair work on the vehicle
– Before fitting a bicycle carrier or attaching a trailer

Releasing the boot lid manually

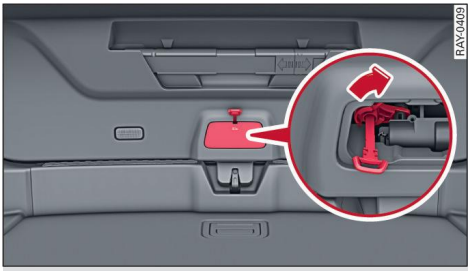


Fig. 19 Inside of boot lid: Access to manual release

The boot lid can be released manually from the inside.

Use the emergency key or a screwdriver to release the boot lid manually.

▸ Fold the rear seat backrest forwards ⇨ *page 92*.
▸ Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 46*.
▸ Prise off the cover in the boot lid trim using the emergency key or a screwdriver.
▸ To unlock the boot lid, use a suitable tool (such as a screwdriver or the emergency key) to press the release lever in the direction of the arrow.
▸ Move the backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 51*.
– After you have folded the backrest back upwards, always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

Electric windows

Opening/closing the windows

The window switches are located in the door trim. You can also operate the windows via voice control using the Audi assistant ⇨ *page 30*.

Opening/closing the windows

All of the window switches can be operated from the driver's seat. All windows have two-stage switches:

▸ To open/close the window automatically, press/pull the switch briefly to the second position. The window will stop moving immediately if the switch is operated again.
▸ To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first position until the window has reached the desired position.

Information on using the window switches

– The windows can be operated with the switch for a few minutes after the vehicle has been switched off. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.
– The electric windows have a roll-back function. The window may stop moving upwards automatically, and may also re-open even when there does not appear to be an obstacle. Pull and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.

WARNING

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 36*.
– Take care when closing the windows. Careless use of the windows can cause injuries.

Opening/closing the windows with the convenience open/close function

Convenience open/close function for windows

Important: Your vehicle must have a convenience key or digital key.

You can use the MMI to set whether all the windows are opened all at once ⇨ *page 37, Adjusting the settings for the central locking system*.

- Press and hold the 🔒 / 🔓 button on the vehicle key until all the windows have reached the desired position ⇨ ⚠, or
- Applies to vehicles with door sensors: Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor on the door handle ⇨ *page 49, Fig. 14* until all the windows are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

The turn signals flash once when all the windows are closed.

⚠ WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 36*.
- Take care when closing the windows. Careless use of the windows can cause injuries.
- For safety reasons, you should only use the vehicle key to open and close the windows when you are approx. 2 metres away from the vehicle and the vehicle is in sight.
- To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows when pressing the 🔓 button to close them. The closing procedure stops immediately when you release the 🔓 button.

Garage door opener

Introduction

Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with a garage door opener.

The garage door opener allows you to activate garage doors, security systems, home or office lighting and other electrical devices using control buttons inside your car. The functions are operated on the MMI. You can program several receivers, which perform the functions of up to eight[1] hand-held transmitters.

Information on selling the vehicle

- Before you sell your vehicle, reset the system to the factory settings ⇨ *page 280*.

Information on compatibility of the garage door opener

Before programming your system for the garage door opener, please check that it is compatible:

- You can obtain information from your qualified workshop or at www.homelink.com. There you will also find further information on HomeLink.
- You can view information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/ HomeLink generation) in the **Car** menu on the MMI ⇨ *page 28*.

⚠ WARNING

- When you are operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no persons or objects are close to the devices receiving the transmitter signals. Otherwise, persons might be injured or other damage caused by moving parts.
- Do not allow looking at the displays and operating the centre display to distract you from watching the traffic.

Operating the garage door opener

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇨ *page 57, Programming the garage door opener*, the vehicle must be within range of the system and must be switched on.

Several options are available for opening/closing the garage door or other system:

- You can operate the garage door opener in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*. After opening this menu, press on ⌂ for the relevant system, or ▶

[1] The possible number of hand-held transmitters depends on the equipment.

- Open the quick access bar. Activate the desired function, or
- Click on the desired function in the display area, or
- Important: Your vehicle must have a GPS link. If you have stored the location of the system, press on the notification centre on the centre display. The button will appear in the notification centre on the MMI shortly before you reach the linked system, or
- Important: Your vehicle must be equipped with the parking aid/reversing camera/surround view camera. When you select reverse gear, the parking aid/reversing camera/surround view camera is shown on the centre display. To display the buttons for the first three garage door openers, press the button, then press the appropriate button for the system.

When transmission has been completed successfully, a driver message for the system will be shown.

Programming the garage door opener

The procedure described here is suitable for programming both fixed code and rolling code systems on the MMI.

Important: The vehicle must be switched on and use of the location for the vehicle app must be active.

Programming hand-held transmitters

Important: You must have the hand-held transmitter with you, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door) you would like to program. If you program more than three hand-held transmitters, assign the first three slots to the systems you want to use in reverse gear.

- You can program systems for the garage door opener in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*. After opening this menu, press (+). Follow the instructions on the MMI.
- You can **reprogram** systems that have previously been programmed for the garage door opener in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*. After opening this menu, press the button for the system you would like to reprogram. Select **Program**. Follow the instructions on the MMI.

For some systems, the garage door opener function will be available immediately after programming. For others, the garage door opener function must also be synchronised.

Synchronising[1] hand-held transmitters

Important: You must have already programmed the hand-held transmitter, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door).

To synchronise the system directly following programming, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to synchronise at a later time:

You can **synchronise** hand-held transmitters in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

- After opening this menu, press the button for the system you would like to synchronise and press **Synchronise**.
- Follow the instructions on the MMI.

Storing the location

Important: Your vehicle must have a GPS link. For more convenient operation, you can program in the location of your system (GPS link).

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇨ *page 57* and the vehicle must be in front of the corresponding system.

- If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI, or

If you wish to store the location of a system that you programmed earlier:

You can **store** the location in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

- After opening this menu, press the button for the system your vehicle is currently positioned in front of and press **Change position**.
- Follow the instructions on the MMI.

[1] Applies only to rolling code systems

The notification centre can only display up to three programmed systems. If you would like to see all the systems, press **All garage doors**.

Renaming a system

You can assign individual names (with up to 10 characters) to the systems you have programmed.

▸ If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI, or

If you wish to rename a previously programmed system:

You can **rename** the system in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

▸ After opening this menu, press the button for the system you would like to rename and press **Change name**. You may have to delete the default name first (e.g. Garage door opener 1).
▸ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

Deleting a system

The programmed systems can be deleted individually.

You can **delete** systems in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

▸ After opening this menu, press the button for the system you would like to delete and press .

Information on programming a hand-held transmitter

– Before programming a button, make sure that the batteries in the hand-held transmitter are charged.
– The programming process can take up to 30 seconds, and you may need to press the button on the hand-held transmitter again during that time.
– It may be necessary to synchronise the garage door opener with the system after programming. Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

Information on universal receivers

If a universal receiver is installed, the system must be programmed via “UR mode”.

– Switch the vehicle on.
– You can **program** the alternative mode in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.
– After opening this menu, press and hold the button.
– Select **Yes, in UR-Mode** and follow the instructions on the MMI.

Lights and vision

Exterior lights

Switching lights on and off

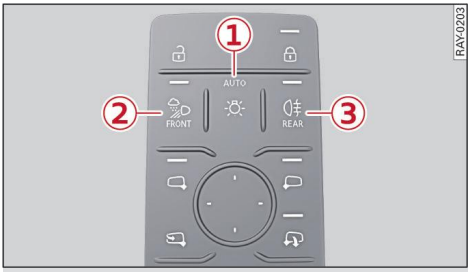


Fig. 20 Driver's door: Light switch module

① Light switch module

Press ① repeatedly until the desired lighting function is selected. The selected function will be displayed briefly in the instrument cluster. The AUTO lighting function is selected automatically when the vehicle is switched on.

– AUTO – The headlights are switched on automatically according to the ambient light conditions. On vehicles for some markets, the daytime running lights, tail lights and number plate light are switched on permanently.
– – You can turn on the dipped headlights as soon as you have switched the vehicle on.
– – You can turn on the side lights at speeds below 10 km/h.
– OFF – You can switch all of the light functions off when the vehicle is stationary and switched off.

When the dipped headlights or side lights are switched on, the corresponding indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster.

When the side lights are switched on and the vehicle is switched off, a corresponding indicator lamp will light up in the light switch module.

When the daytime running lights are activated, only the front lights are switched on. On vehicles for some markets, the rear lights are also switched on.

② All-weather light FRONT

If fitted, all-weather lights improve illumination of the road when visibility is poor.

③ Rear fog light REAR

To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with country-specific regulations.

Information on the exterior lighting

– If the vehicle battery has been losing charge for a while, the side lights or parking lights may be switched off automatically. Avoid using the side lights for long periods (several hours). Switch the left or right parking lights on where appropriate.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.
– The driver is responsible for complying with the relevant country-specific regulations when using the lights while driving and parking the vehicle.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights in these conditions and when driving after dark.

Using the turn signal and main beam lever

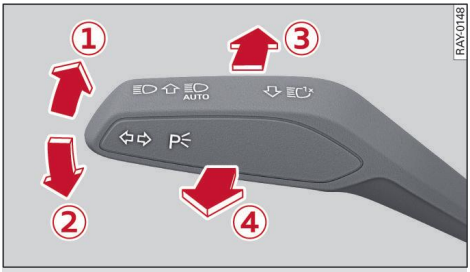


Fig. 21 Turn signal and main beam lever: Switching light functions on/off

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨ and parking lights

The turn signals will flash if you move the turn signal and main beam lever while the vehicle is switched on. The corresponding indicator lamp ⇦ or ⇨ will flash. If you just tap the turn signal and main beam lever, the turn signals will flash three times (one-touch signalling).

The parking lights will be switched on if you operate the lever with the vehicle switched off:

① Turn signals/parking lights (right side)

② Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

When the vehicle is switched off, you can switch on the parking lights on both sides by switching on the side lights and locking the vehicle from outside.

If one of the indicator lamps flashes twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Drive carefully to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Main beams and headlight flasher

▸ Move the turn signal and main beam lever to the appropriate position:

③ Main beams on

④ Main beams off or headlight flasher

When the main beams or the headlight flasher are switched on, a corresponding indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster.

⚠ WARNING

The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beams or the headlight flasher in situations where they could dazzle other road users.

Switching the main beam assist on/off

The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.

A camera (located in the mounting for the interior mirror) detects light sources from other road users. The main beams are activated/deactivated automatically depending on the position of vehicles on either side of the road, on the road speed, and on other traffic and ambient conditions.

On vehicles with matrix LED headlights, individual segments of the main beam are activated or deactivated. The headlight beam is dipped in the relevant area in front of the vehicle while the main beam remains switched on in the remaining areas. The ambient surroundings are thus illuminated optimally without dazzling other road users.

When using the lights, make sure you adhere to the relevant country-specific regulations, for example with regard to dazzling other road users. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Activating the main beam assist

Important: The lights must be set to AUTO. The **main beam assist** must be switched on in the **exterior lighting** menu ⇨ *page 61*.

▸ Briefly press the turn signal and main beam lever forwards to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster display and the main beams will be activated/deactivated automatically. The indicator lamp is lit when the main beams are partially or fully on. ▶

Activating/deactivating the main beams manually

If the main beams are not activated/deactivated as expected, you can do this manually:

- Briefly press the turn signal and main beam lever forwards to activate the main beams manually. The indicator lamp will light up.
- Pull the turn signal and main beam lever towards you to deactivate the main beams manually. The main beam assist will be deactivated.

Flashing the headlights

- Pull the turn signal and main beam lever towards you to flash the headlights. The main beam assist function will remain activated if the headlights were dipped.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. It is always the driver who is responsible for controlling the lights and making adjustments according to the light conditions and visibility.
– The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beams or the headlight flasher in situations where they could dazzle other road users.

Information on automatic light functions

Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. This prevents oncoming traffic from being dazzled when your vehicle is heavily loaded. The headlight range is adjusted automatically.

Adaptive light

The adaptive light provides better visibility in the dark. The light is adapted according to the road characteristics, e.g. for motorways, major roads, intersections and corners. The adaptive light feature can only be used when the AUTO lighting function is activated.

Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

You can switch the exterior lighting functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*. The available settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, various menu options may be available in the settings menu ⚙.

Digital light signatures

You can choose between different light signatures. Depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle, the light signature is active in conjunction with the daytime running lights and/or the tail lights.

In some countries, when you change the light signature, the new light signature will not be applied until shortly after you leave the vehicle.

The signatures displayed in the menu may differ from those displayed in the lighting settings.

Main beam assist

You can switch the main beam assist on/off.

Entry and exit lights

The entry/exit lights illuminate the area around the vehicle when the vehicle is unlocked or when the driver's door is opened with the vehicle switched off. The entry/exit lights are operational in the dark when the lights are set to AUTO. The headlights and tail lights are switched on automatically every time the vehicle is unlocked, irrespective of the ambient light conditions.

Communication lights

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the communication lights display light signatures via the daytime running lights and the tail lights. A light signature in the front daytime running lights and the tail lights can indicate the status of automatic parking. A warning signature can be shown in ▶

the tail lights if a hazardous situation is identified.

Activation time for dipped headlights

You can set when the dipped headlights are activated. This changes the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad

If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

One exception to this is when you are driving on motorways. In this case you should turn the light switch to the dipped headlights setting to prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled.

Switching the hazard warning lights on/off

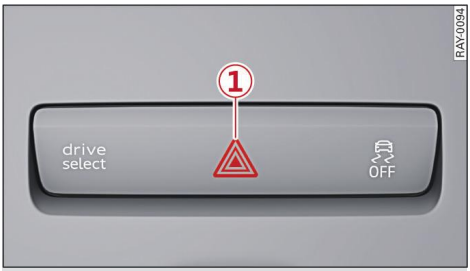


Fig. 22 Centre console: Hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

- Press the button (1) to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the indicator lamps and both flash simultaneously.

If you brake hard at high speed, the brake lights will flash and the hazard warning lights will come on automatically[1].

You can use the turn signal and main beam levers to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the vehicle is switched off.

Driver messages about the exterior lighting

If the indicator lamp lights up, a bulb has failed.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Adaptive light: fault. See owner's manual

The adaptive light feature is not working. The dipped headlights will still be working normally. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Headlight range control: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control which may cause other road users to be dazzled. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Main beam assist: fault. See owner's manual

You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Main beam assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

This message will appear if the camera view is obstructed. The system will switch itself off. Try switching the system on again later. ▶

[1] This function is not available in all countries.

Automatic headlights: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. For safety reasons, the dipped headlights will then be switched on permanently when the lights are set to AUTO. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Interior lights

Switching the front interior lights on/off

Fig. 23 Headliner: Interior lights

Buttons for interior lights

① – Interior lights on/off

② REAR – Rear interior lights on/off

Touch-sensitive reading lights

- Briefly touch the surface ③ to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To dim the reading light, touch the surface ③ when the light is switched off, and hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

Switching the rear interior lights on/off

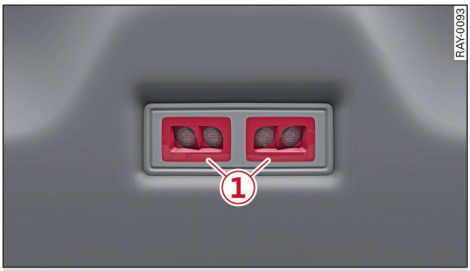


Fig. 24 Headliner: Rear reading lights

Reading lights

- Briefly touch the surface ① to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To dim the reading light, touch the surface ① when the light is switched off, and hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

On some versions, the reading lights are on the side.

Background lighting settings

The background lighting turns on when the vehicle is switched on. The background lighting is deactivated when the light function is OFF.

You can change the settings for the background lighting in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

Available settings:

– You can adjust the brightness and colour of the background lighting individually for the linear and surface lighting.
– You can also select from several defined colour settings.
– You can set the linear and surface lighting to change according to the Audi drive select mode.

Functional background lighting settings

The functional background lighting uses the linear and surface lighting to indicate when certain functions are activated and to provide warnings about hazards. For example, it can show that a turn signal is switched on or provide a warning if one of the doors is open. The main component of this lighting is a light strip at the bottom edge of the windscreen.

You can switch the functional background lighting on/off for certain functions and change the brightness in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

The functional background lighting is always switched on for certain functions.

8B1012720AG

Adjusting the display brightness

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument cluster and the displays in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

Clear vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

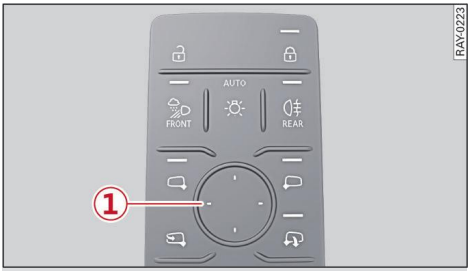


Fig. 25 Driver's door: Control panel for exterior mirrors

The buttons for adjusting the exterior mirrors are on the control panel in the driver's door.

/ – To select the exterior mirror (left or right side). To adjust the mirror, press on the control panel (1) in the desired direction.

– To fold in the exterior mirrors. To fold the mirrors back out, press again. One of the centre display settings allows you to control whether or not the mirrors are folded in automatically when you lock the vehicle.

– To select the automatic lowering function.

If the electrical adjustment fails to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

Automatic lowering function

Select this function to obtain a better view of the kerb, such as when reversing into a parking space. The automatic lowering function can only be activated when the vehicle is in reverse gear.

- Press to activate the automatic lowering function.
- Select the left and/or right exterior mirror.
- Adjust the mirror position using the control panel if necessary.

The vehicle stores the user's last settings. When you select reverse gear, an LED next to the symbol for the mirror on the control panel will flash to indicate that the automatic lowering function is activated.

The mirror returns to its original position:

– If you switch the vehicle off.
– If you drive forwards faster than 15 km/h.
– If you switch the automatic lowering function off by pressing the button again.

WARNING

Convex or wide-angle exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

– Applies to vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must be fully retracted with the electric control. You will hear a loud noise when the mirrors snap back into place. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.
– Applies to vehicles without electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), it must be returned to its proper position by hand.
– Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Do not fold electrically retractable exterior mirrors in or out by hand! Always use the electrical power control.

Anti-dazzle setting

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

- Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

- The interior and exterior mirrors will darken when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror.

The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.

The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water if you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.

CAUTION

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces and paintwork. Use a wet sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

Operating the panoramic glass roof with switchable transparency

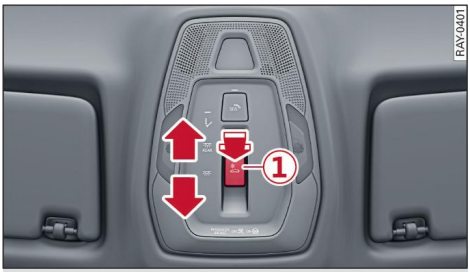


Fig. 26 Headliner: Switch for panoramic glass roof with switchable transparency

The panoramic glass roof with switchable transparency is divided into segments. You can adjust the settings so that certain segments become transparent to let the sun in or opaque to block it out. You can also select one of the defined transparency patterns.

At low ambient temperatures, particularly below freezing, the switching processes are delayed.

Setting the transparency

You can set the transparency of the individual segments by pushing the switch (1).

- Automatic adjustment: Briefly push the switch to the corresponding end position to change all segments at once to either all let sunlight in or all block it out. You can stop the automatic adjustment at any position by pressing the switch again.
- Manual adjustment: Push the switch to the corresponding end position and hold it there until the segments let sunlight in or block it out as desired. You can stop the manual adjustment at any position by letting go of the switch.

Selecting a defined transparency pattern

You can select one of the defined transparency patterns by pressing the switch (1).

- Press the switch to select a transparency pattern or to change between the transparency patterns.

Using the sun visors

Fig. 27 Headliner: Sun visor

Sun visors

The sun visors can be pulled out of their mountings (1) and turned towards the doors.

Make-up mirrors

- Slide the make-up mirror cover (2) to the side. The mirror light will be switched on.

Using the side blinds

Fig. 28 Rear door: Side blind

▸ Pull out the side blind on the rear door and hook it into the retainer at the top of the door frame.

Windscreen wipers

Using the wipers

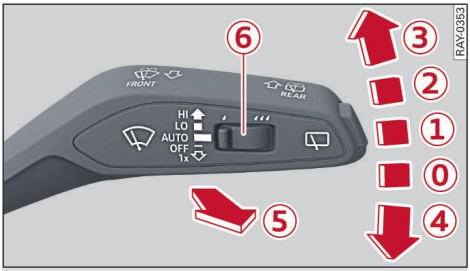


Fig. 29 Wiper lever: Windscreen wipers

Fig. 30 Wiper lever: Rear window wiper

▸ Move the windscreen wiper lever to the appropriate position:

⓪ Wipers off

① Rain sensor/intermittent wipe. As long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx. 4 km/h at least once, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor (i.e. the further switch ⑥ is moved to the right), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen. In rain sensor mode, a wash cycle may be performed in specific ambient conditions to improve the camera vision. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28* (this will activate the intermittent wipe mode). In intermittent wipe mode, you can adjust the interval with switch ⑥.

② Slow wipe

③ Fast wipe

④ Single wipe. If you hold the wiper lever in this position, the wipers will switch from slow continuous wiping to fast continuous wiping after a while. Single wipe also works when the vehicle is switched off.

⑤ Wash/wipe. The number of wipe and extra-wipe cycles depends on how long you hold the wiper lever in position ⑤.

The windscreen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving). You can deactivate this function by moving the wiper lever to position ⑤ again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch the vehicle on.

The headlight washer system only operates when the dipped headlights are switched on. The headlights are also automatically washed intermittently when you move the wiper lever to position ⑤.

⑦ Rear wipe. The frequency of the rear wiper depends on the frequency of the windscreen wipers.

If the windscreen wipers are on and in operation, the rear window wiper will also be switched on automatically when you engage reverse gear.

⑧ Rear wash/wipe. The number of wiper cycles depends on how long you hold the wiper lever in position ⑧. The reversing camera is also washed (depending on the vehicle's equipment). ▸

WARNING

– The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the wipers as required depending on visibility.
– Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.

CAUTION

– In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.
– Switch the wipers off (wiper lever in position ⓪) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

Cleaning/changing the windscreen wiper blades

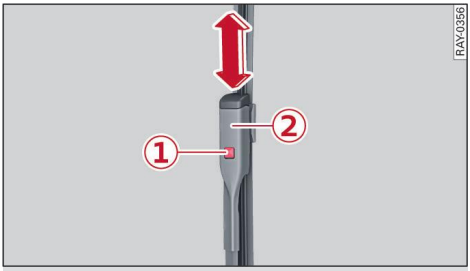


Fig. 31 Windscreen wipers: Changing wiper blades

Activating the wiper change position

Important: The bonnet must be closed.

▸ Switch the vehicle off, move the windscreen wiper lever to position ④ ⇨ *page 66, Fig. 29* and hold it there until the wipers move into the wiper change position.
▸ To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch the vehicle on and hold the windscreen wiper lever in position ④ until the wipers have returned to their original position, or drive faster than 12 km/h.

You can also switch the wiper change position on/off on the centre display:
▸ Switch the windscreen wipers off (position ⓪ ⇨ *page 66, Fig. 29*).
▸ Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **More** > **Wiper change position**.

Cleaning wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

▸ Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
▸ Notes on cleaning ⇨ *table on page 325*.

Changing wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

▸ Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
▸ Keep hold of the wiper blade.
▸ Press the release button ① on the wiper blade.
▸ Pull the wiper blade out of the mounting on the wiper arm ②.
▸ Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm. You should hear it engage.
▸ Fold the wiper arm back down onto the windscreen.
▸ Switch off the wiper change function.

WARNING

Old or dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view – risk of accident! Clean the wiper blades if they become dirty. Change the wiper blades once or twice a year. You should also change the wiper blades if they are no longer able to provide a clear view that is safe for driving, e.g. if the wiper blades become damaged.

CAUTION

– The wipers must be in the wiper change position before they are lifted off the windscreen! Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged. ▸

– Never move your vehicle or operate the windscreen wiper lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreen.

Cleaning/changing the rear wiper blade

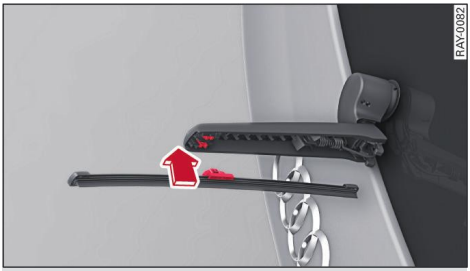


Fig. 32 Rear window wiper: Attaching the wiper blade

Cleaning the wiper blade

- Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- Notes on cleaning ⇨ *table on page 325*.

Taking off the wiper blade

- Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- Pull the wiper blade out of the retainer.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Press the mounting on the wiper blade into the retainer.
- Fold the wiper arm back down onto the rear window.

WARNING

Old or dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view – risk of accident! Clean the wiper blades if they become dirty. Change the wiper blades once or twice a year. You should also change the wiper blades if they are no longer able to provide a clear view that is safe for driving, e.g. if the wiper blades become damaged.

Driver messages about the wipers

If is displayed in the event of a fault, the wiper functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. Try switching the wipers on later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Sitting correctly and safely

Ensuring the correct seating position

Safety information on seating positions

As the driver, you are responsible for ensuring that all vehicle occupants are sitting in the correct position and that they stay in this position for the entire journey. Ensure that:

– Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their seat correctly ⇨ *page 69*.
– The steering wheel is set correctly ⇨ *page 72*.
– The mirrors have been adjusted so that you have a good view of the surrounding area ⇨ *page 64*.
– Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their head restraint correctly ⇨ *page 73*.
– Every vehicle occupant has fastened their seat belt correctly ⇨ *page 74*.
– Applies to vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: The front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated as appropriate for the person occupying the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 81*.
– Any children are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system on an appropriate seat ⇨ *page 82*. Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety information on child restraint systems on page 82*.

If physical factors prevent you from being able to assume a correct seating position, please contact a qualified automotive specialist.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed.

The list below contains examples of incorrect positions which can be dangerous to all vehicle occupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided. Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– Never stand up in the vehicle.
– Never stand on the seats.
– Never kneel on the seats.
– Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
– Never lean against the dash panel.
– Never lie down on the rear seat.
– Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
– Never sit sideways.
– Never lean out of the window.
– Never put your feet out of the window.
– Never put your feet on the dash panel.
– Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
– Never ride in the footwell.
– Never sit on the armrests.
– Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
– Never climb into the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting out of position, not wearing a seat belt or being too close to the airbag exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries if, for instance, the airbags inflate and strike an occupant who is not seated in one of the proper positions. Please note the important information and safety precautions in the corresponding chapters on the subjects above.

Front seats

Safety information on the front seats

Ensure that:

– You can press the pedals down completely with your legs still slightly bent.
– Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel/dashboard.
– Your knees are at least 10 cm away from the dashboard.
– Your thighs are resting lightly on the front of the seat cushion.
– The backrest is in an upright position and makes full contact with your back. ▶

8B1012720AG

– You have a good view of your surroundings.
– You have an unobstructed view of the instrument cluster, warning/indicator lamps and head-up display.

Use only one control at a time to adjust the seat.

WARNING

– If you are too close to the steering wheel/dash panel, the airbag system cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– To reduce the risk of injury to the driver in the case of sudden braking or an accident, you should never drive with the backrest reclined. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. If the backrest is reclined too far, the seat belt may slide away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach – risk of injury!
– Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
– Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless use of the seat adjustment controls can cause injuries to both the front seat and rear seat occupants.
– Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.
– Always make sure that the floor mats are properly secured.
– Never lay additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.
– Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat, as this could lead to injury. This also applies to the rear seat occupants.
– The electric front seat adjustment also works when the vehicle is off. To avoid injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

CAUTION

Take care when adjusting the seat to ensure the head restraint does not collide with the headliner or sunroof (if fitted). This could cause damage.

Manual adjustment of front seats

Fig. 33 Front seat: Adjuster controls

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the seat position

▸ To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever (1) and move the seat.
▸ To move the seat upwards/downwards, pull/press the lever (2).

Adjusting the backrest

▸ To move the backrest forwards/backwards, turn the knob (3).

Adjusting the thigh support

▸ To move the thigh support in or out, lift the handle (4) and slide it in either direction.

Adjusting the seat cushion angle

▸ To adjust the angle of the seat cushion, pull/press the lever (5).

Adjusting the lumbar support

▸ To adjust the lumbar support, press one of the four direction buttons (6).

Electric adjustment of front seats

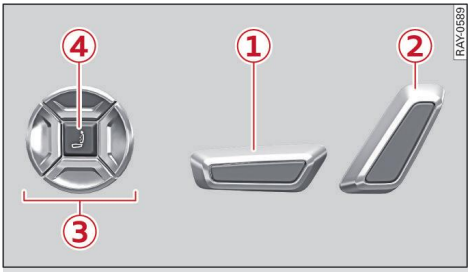


Fig. 34 Front seat: Buttons for seat adjustment

The basic settings can be adjusted using the buttons.

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the seat position

- To move the seat forwards/backwards, push button ① forwards/backwards.
- To move the seat up/down, press the rear area of button ① upwards/downwards.
- To tilt the seat cushion, press the front area of button ① upwards/downwards.

Adjusting the backrest

- To move the backrest forwards/backwards, press button ② forwards/backwards.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- To adjust the lumbar support, press one of the four direction buttons ③.

Massage function

Press button ④ to switch the massage function on/off.

Seat functions

Seat settings on the MMI

You can use the MMI to adjust further seat settings and switch functions on/off.

- Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **Seats**.

The settings can be operated via the MMI. Which settings are available depends on the vehicle's equipment.

Using the massage function on the front seat

- Press the button on the front seat to switch the massage function on/off.

The **Massage** menu will be displayed.

- Other functions may be available depending on the vehicle's equipment and can be operated via the MMI.

The massage function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

Using the elevated entry function

The elevated entry function gives improved access to the vehicle.

You can switch the elevated entry function on/off or adjust the settings in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

Information on the front centre armrest

The front centre armrest is located between the front seats.

Adjusting the centre armrest

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Lift the centre armrest to move it out of its initial position. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, press the button.
- Depending on the vehicle's equipment, press and hold the button to close the centre armrest.
- Depending on the vehicle's equipment, to adjust the angle, press and hold the button and move the centre armrest to the desired position.
- Fold the centre armrest down to return it to its initial position. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, press and hold the button.

WARNING

– In certain positions, the centre armrest may limit the movement of the driver's arms – risk of injury!

– Applies to centre armrest with button: Loose objects can be flung around in the ▶

passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.

Using the memory function

Introduction

The memory function enables you to store and call up seat profiles. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to store various settings in the seat profiles, such as the position of the driver's seat and the exterior mirrors.

The memory function buttons are located in the door trim.

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Storing the seat profile

- Press the SET button. When the LED in the button lights up, a seat profile can be stored.
- Press one of the numbered recall buttons. A tone will sound to confirm that the settings have been stored.

Calling up the seat profile

- Press one of the numbered recall buttons and follow any instructions given by the system.

WARNING

– For safety reasons, never recall seat settings when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
– To avoid injuries (such as trapping fingers), the recall function can be stopped at any time by pressing the seat adjustment button in the door/on the display for the relevant seat – risk of injury!

Operating backrest bolster adjuster

You can use the MMI to adjust the backrest bolster adjusters and switch functions on/off.

- Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **Seats**.

The settings can be operated via the MMI. Which settings are available depends on the vehicle's equipment.

Steering wheel

Safety information on the steering wheel

Ensure that:

– Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel.
– Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows.
– You have a good view of your surroundings and can see the instrument cluster and head-up display at all times.
– You always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position while driving.

WARNING

– Before setting off, make sure that the steering wheel is correctly adjusted and that it cannot slip out of the engaged position – risk of accident!
– If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver airbag cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or with your hands inside the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This could result in serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

Adjusting the steering wheel position (manual adjustment)

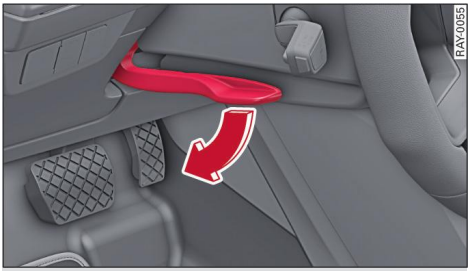


Fig. 35 Steering column: Lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- Pull the lever in the direction indicated (arrow).
- Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- Push the lever all the way up until the catch engages.

WARNING

– Adjust the position of the steering wheel only before driving off – risk of accident!
– Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

Adjusting the steering wheel position (electric adjustment)

Fig. 36 Steering column: Button for adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted electrically to suit the driver.

- To adjust the steering wheel in the desired direction, press the corresponding point on the switch.

The steering wheel can be adjusted even when the vehicle is switched off.

Head restraints

Safety information on the head restraints

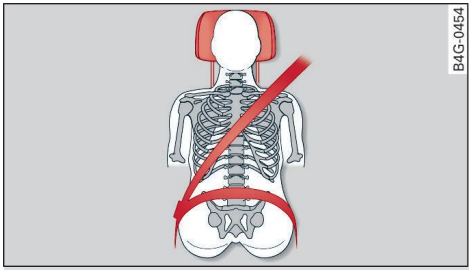


Fig. 37 Correctly adjusted head restraint

Ensure that:

– The top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head.
– The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of your head.
– The head restraints on any occupied rear seats are pulled all the way up.

WARNING

– There is a head restraint for every seat. It is very important that all vehicle occupants adjust their head restraint correctly before every trip. Incorrectly adjusted head restraints can increase the risk of neck injuries in an accident or during sudden or unexpected braking or other manoeuvres.
– Remove the rear head restraints only if this is necessary in order to attach a child restraint system ⇨ *page 82*. Store head restraints securely if you remove them, e.g. in the luggage compartment. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system. Travelling with the head restraints removed increases the risk of severe neck injuries.

Adjusting the front head restraints

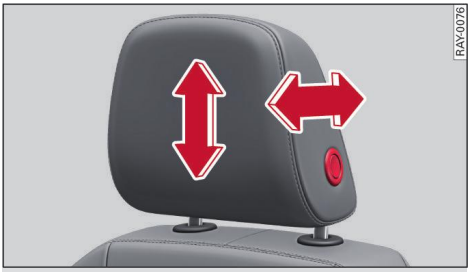


Fig. 38 Front seat: Adjusting head restraint

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- To move the head restraint forwards, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
- To raise or lower the head restraint or move it backwards, press the side button and move the head restraint in the desired direction. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

Adjusting the rear head restraints

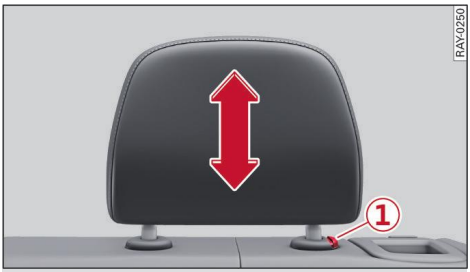


Fig. 39 Rear seat: Adjusting head restraint

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- To raise the centre head restraint, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
- To raise the outer head restraint, press the button (1) and move the head restraint. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.
- To lower the head restraint, press the button (1) and move the head restraint downwards. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

Removing/installing rear head restraints

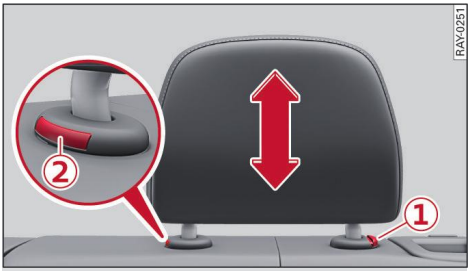


Fig. 40 Rear seat: Removing/installing head restraint

Removing head restraint

Important: On vehicles with folding backrest, the backrest must be folded down.

- Raise the head restraint as far as it will go.
- Press the buttons (1) and (2) at the same time and pull the head restraint out of the backrest ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety information on the head restraints on page 73*.

Installing head restraint

Important: On vehicles with folding backrest, the backrest must be folded down.

- Push the posts of the head restraint into the guides until you feel them click into place.
- Press the button (1) and push the head restraint all the way down. It should no longer be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

Seat belts

Safety information on the seat belts

Every seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt. When worn correctly, seat belts are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident. You should therefore always wear your seat belt correctly and you should also ensure that all vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly while the vehicle is moving. ▶

Although the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, every vehicle occupant must still wear a seat belt. In addition to their normal function of protecting the vehicle occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection. Seat belts offer protection in accidents in which no airbags are triggered or where they have already been triggered.

WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injury is increased if the seat belt is worn incorrectly or not at all, or if it is damaged.

– All vehicle occupants (including the driver) must put their seat belt on correctly before every trip and must always keep it on while the vehicle is moving, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to children who are being secured in a child restraint system appropriate to their height, weight and age using the seat belt.
– In the event of an accident, anyone not wearing a seat belt will be thrown around in the vehicle and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, doors, etc. They could even be thrown out of the vehicle. Rear passengers not wearing seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the other occupants.
– Never allow passengers to share the same seat belt. Never secure more than one person (including small children) with the same seat belt.
– Never travel with children or babies on your lap and never share the same seat belt.
– To ensure that the seat belt is fully effective, the latch plate must always be engaged in the correct buckle for a particular seat.
– To ensure that the seat belts can provide maximum protection, all vehicle occupants must be seated in the correct seating position ⇨ *page 69*.
– Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals ⇨ *page 325*. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
– The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.
– Seat belts which have been worn in an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Information on the correct positioning of seat belts

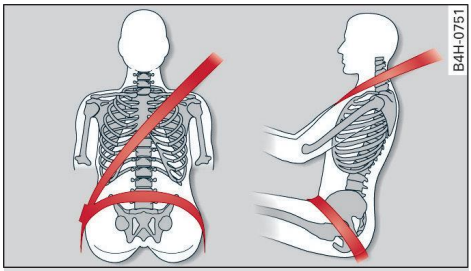


Fig. 41 Positioning seat belts over lap/shoulder

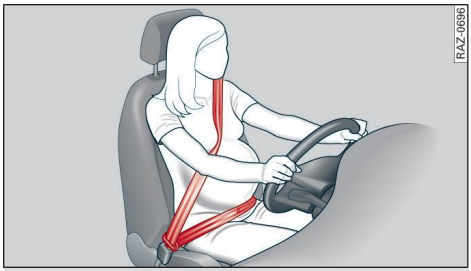


Fig. 42 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

Seat belts must always be worn correctly in order to provide the best possible protection in the event of an accident and to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Correctly worn seat belts also hold the vehicle occupants in position in such a way that the airbags provide maximum protection if they are triggered. For this reason, it is essential that you always fasten your seat belt and ensure that it is worn correctly ⇨ *Fig. 41*.

Make sure that you are wearing your seat belt correctly by checking the following points:

– The lap belt section of the seat belt should be worn tightly across the hips. ▶

– The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder.
– The seat belt must always make firm and even contact with the body.

At all times during pregnancy, women must wear the seat belt so that it runs evenly across the chest and as low as possible over the hips; the belt must make even contact so that there is no pressure on the stomach ⇨ *Fig. 42*.

WARNING

Wearing a seat belt incorrectly may result in serious injuries in the event of an accident or under sudden braking or manoeuvres.
– Never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt.
– The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if it slides away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach.
– The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder and torso and never under the arm, behind the back or over the neck or face.
– The lap belt section of the seat belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and never over the stomach or abdomen.
– The seat belt must make firm and even contact with the upper body and hips.
– Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
– The protection offered by the seat belt in an accident is reduced if the height of the belt is not correctly adjusted or if the seat belt is not properly positioned. Make sure that the seat belts are properly positioned and the height correctly adjusted to suit the vehicle occupants.
– Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt webbing.
– Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
– Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.).
– During pregnancy, women must wear the lap belt section of the seat belt as low as possible across the hips and underneath the rounded stomach.

CAUTION

Make sure that no velcro fasteners or sharp objects, such as zip fasteners or rivets on clothing, are in the way of the seat belt while you are wearing it; otherwise the seat belt could be damaged.

Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

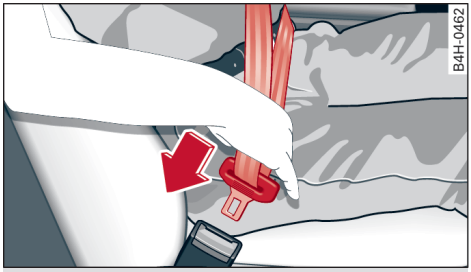


Fig. 43 Latch plate and buckle

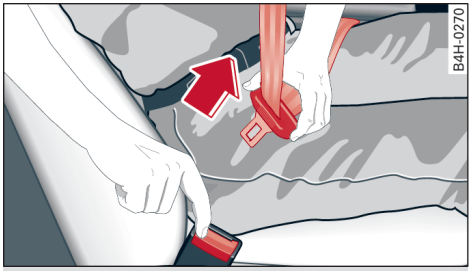


Fig. 44 The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buckle

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 74*.

Fastening the seat belt

▸ To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap. ▶

- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇨ *Fig. 43*.
- Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

- Press the red button in the seat belt buckle ⇨ *Fig. 44*. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up more easily.

Overview of seat belt warning and indicator lamps

– If the warning lamp lights up/flashes in the instrument cluster, one of the seat belts is not fastened/was unfastened while the vehicle was moving. Audible warning signals may also be given.

The status of the rear seat belts is also monitored by the following indicator lamps in the instrument cluster:

– If the indicator lamp lights up, the seat belt for the corresponding rear seat is not buckled or the seat is not occupied.

– If the indicator lamp lights up, the rear seat belt has been fastened.

Adjusting seat belt height

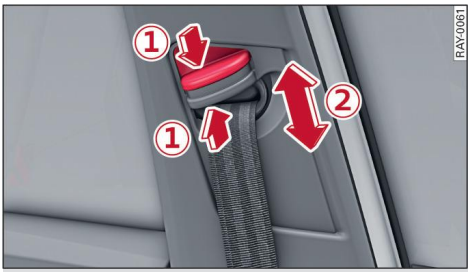


Fig. 45 Belt height adjustment for the front seats: guide fitting

- To move the seat belt higher, slide the guide fitting ② upwards.
- To move the seat belt lower, squeeze the release mechanism ① and slide the guide fitting ② downwards.
- After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the guide fitting is engaged securely.

It is also possible to adjust the height of the front seats to obtain the best position for the front seat belts.

Information on belt retractors

The seat belts are equipped with automatic belt retractors. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or corner sharply.

Information on belt force limiters

Seat belts with belt force limiters reduce the forces acting on the body from the seat belts themselves in an accident.

Information on seat belt retraction

After the seat belt is unbuckled, it is rolled up by an electric motor in the reversible belt tensioner.

Information on belt tensioners

Reversible belt tensioners

Seat belts with reversible belt tensioners may be tightened after you drive off or in certain driving situations. This is done if the belt is too loose and needs to be taken up in order to lie more tightly against the body.

Irreversible (pyrotechnic) belt tensioners

Seat belts with pyrotechnic belt tensioners may be tensioned automatically in certain types of collision. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants. Some smoke may be released when the pyrotechnic belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. ▶

WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only be activated once. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Airbag system

Safety information on the airbag system

WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt or sit in the correct position, or if you are seated too close to the airbag system, you will not be fully protected by the airbag system. This puts you at risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that all occupants are seated in the correct position with their seat belts fastened ⇨ *page 69*. This applies regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
- If you are travelling with children, please note the information and safety precautions ⇨ *page 82*.
- Never place your feet on the dashboard, on the centre armrest, out of the windows or on the seat. To ensure that the airbag systems can open without obstructions, never lean forwards, learn over the centre armrest, or lean on the door or the side window. You could otherwise sustain potentially fatal injuries if the airbags are triggered.
- Persons, pets or objects positioned between the airbag system and the occupant will prevent the airbag system from inflating properly and could be catapulted through the vehicle cabin – risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that there are no objects between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Never secure or carry objects in the area of inflation of the airbag systems, in particular around the steering wheel, on the dashboard, against the doors, on the windows, on the centre armrest and in the footwell.
- Never apply stickers or other coverings to the airbag system covers.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. The side airbags inflate from the backrest and the protection they provide would otherwise be seriously impaired.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery in the area from which the airbags inflate must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. Improper servicing or repairs to the vehicle can cause damage to parts of the airbag system or prevent the airbags from working properly. As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation, putting the occupants at risk of serious or fatal injury. Have any repairs or modifications to the vehicle carried out by a qualified workshop.
- The airbag system can only be activated once; after it has been triggered, have the airbag system replaced by a qualified workshop without delay.
- The airbag may release a fine dust when it is triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and eyes and/or cause breathing issues, particularly in persons who suffer or have suffered from asthma or other breathing issues. Get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors to breathe in fresh air.
- If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with centre airbags. The centre armrest must remain closed while the vehicle is in motion. The centre front airbag inflates from the driver's ▶

seat backrest and the protection it provides would otherwise be seriously impaired.
– As the driver, it is your responsibility to ensure that you and your passengers do not hold any devices connected with the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, controller) in front of your torsos or heads when sitting in a seat which is protected by an active airbag system.

Further safety information on airbag system for Republic of Korea

RAZ-1666

에어백 관련 주의 사항

1. 특히 13세 미만의 어린이는 에어백 팽창-충격으로 피해를 입을 수 있습니다.
2. 어린이에게는 뒷좌석이 안전합니다.
3. 유아용 보조의자는 앞좌석에 설치하지 마십시오.
4. 에어백에서 가능한 멀리 떨어져 착석하십시오.
5. 좌석 안전띠와 어린이 보호 장치를 사용하십시오.

Fig. 46 Further safety information on airbag system for Republic of Korea

Overview of indicator lamps for safety systems

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including control units, sensors and wiring) and belt tensioners. It lights up for a few seconds when you switch the vehicle on.

If the indicator lamp does not light up when you switch the vehicle on, if it does not go out after a few seconds, or if it lights up or flashes while you are driving, there is a fault in one of the safety systems. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Have the fault in the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise the systems may fail to trigger in an accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Overview of airbags

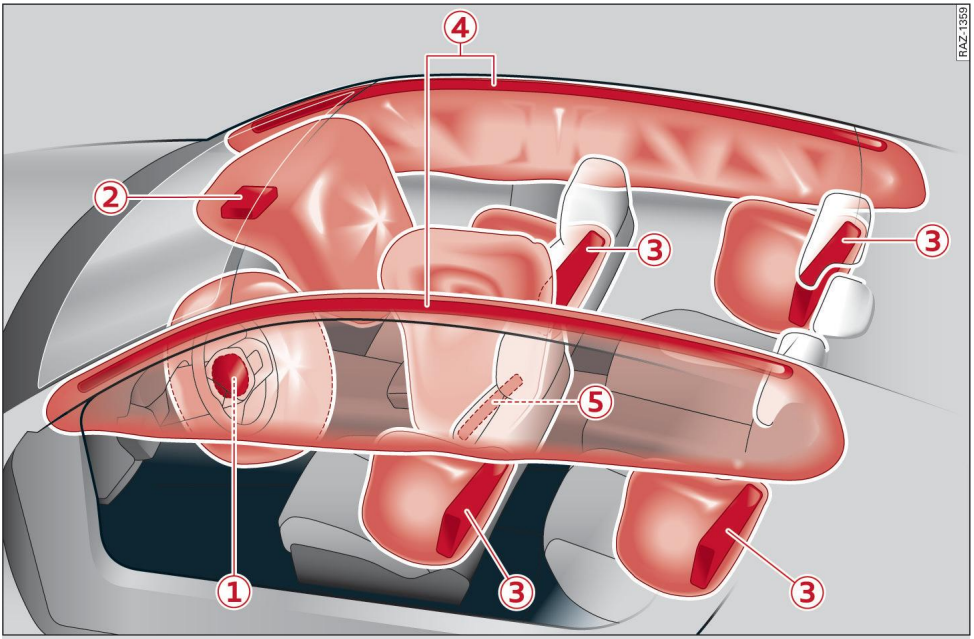


Fig. 47 Overview of airbags (inflation area after airbags are triggered)

The locations of the airbags are marked with the word “AIRBAG”. The following airbags are fitted in your vehicle:

1. Driver's airbag
2. Front passenger's airbag
3. Front side airbags and rear side airbags (optional)
4. Head-protection airbags
5. Centre front airbag (if applicable)

The airbags in your vehicle provide the greatest possible protection in accident situations when passengers are seated in the correct position with their seat belts properly fastened. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system; they are not a substitute for seat belts. The possibility cannot be ruled out completely that an airbag might cause injury when triggered.

How the airbags work

The airbags may be triggered in accidents affecting the front or side areas of the vehicle or in which the vehicle overturns.

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on. Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car. In ▶

these situations, the occupants are restrained by the correctly fastened seat belts.

When an airbag is triggered, it is filled with gas. This causes the relevant airbag cover panel to break off. The airbag then opens into its deployment zone in milliseconds, with significant force. As the seat belt-restrained occupants move in the direction of the impact, the inflated airbags slow their movement, thereby helping to protect e.g. the head, torso and pelvis. Nonetheless, the possibility cannot be ruled out completely that an airbag might cause injury when triggered.

The airbag system works when the vehicle is switched on.

Deactivating the front passenger's airbag

Fig. 48 Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating front passenger's airbag

Fig. 49 Headliner: Indicator lamp for status of front passenger's airbag

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.

If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always switch the front passenger's airbag off ⇨ *page 83*. If you have deactivated the front passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.

- Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 46* or take the glove box key out of the glove box.
- To deactivate the front passenger's airbag, turn the key to the (OFF) position in the key-operated switch ⇨ *Fig. 48*. The indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF will light up and remain lit.
- To reactivate the front passenger's airbag, turn the key to the (ON) position. The indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG ON will light up briefly.

WARNING

– A child in a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury! Always secure any child restraint systems to the rear seats. If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always check while driving that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains lit at all times.

– Adults travelling on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the front passenger's airbag if it is deactivated – risk of severe or fatal injury! In this case, while driving, always check that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF is not lit.

Child restraint systems

Safety information on child restraint systems

Fig. 50 Passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker

Fig. 51 Passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker for Taiwan

When installing and using child restraint systems, always observe the information in the Owner's Manual, the applicable country-specific regulations and the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

WARNING

To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

- Children under 1.50 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle without a suitable child restraint system. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
- Improperly secured child restraint systems in the vehicle can lead to serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Children and babies must NEVER travel on another occupant's lap.
- Never allow more than one child to occupy one child restraint system.
- Never leave a child without supervision in a child restraint system.
- Never allow a child to travel unrestrained in the vehicle or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, potentially causing fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.
- If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This applies in particular if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat, or if the child's head is near the opening for the side airbag when the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect seating position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
- Make sure there is sufficient clearance in front of the child sitting in the child restraint system. If necessary, adjust the seat position and backrest angle of the front seat in front of the child restraint system.
- The back of any forward-facing child restraint system must be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove the head restraint if it hinders installation. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system.
- Always make sure that the backrest of the seat carrying the child restraint system is properly engaged and that it cannot move forwards. Otherwise the backrest could be moved forwards, together with the child restraint system attached to it, in the event of an accident or other emergency.
- No anchorages are provided in the vehicle for child seats which need to be secured additionally with restraint systems such as a lower tether. Do not secure any additional restraint systems to the front seats, for example to the backrest or seat rail.
- NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in ▶

front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

– Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.
– Applies to vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no other alternative than to use a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. In this case, while driving, always check that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains lit at all times. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not light up, remove the child restraint system and re-install it according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not light up, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the airbag system checked.
– If you need to use a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. A child in a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– Always replace the child restraint system with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.
– The child restraint system must always be properly secured, even when it is unoccupied; otherwise it could be flung through the cabin during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.

Information on the right place to seat children

Children should always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

Audi recommends child restraint systems from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.

You can secure child restraint systems in your vehicle using the ISOFIX retaining rings or the seat belts. You can also secure child restraint systems to the top tether anchorages.

Always seat children on the rear seats

Accident statistics show that the rear seats are the safest place for children to sit. Children should always be seated in an appropriate child restraint system on the rear seats approved for these systems ⇨ *table on page 84*.

In exceptional cases: children on the front passenger's seat

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations regarding whether a child restraint system may be used on the front passenger's seat in exceptional circumstances. A child restraint system must not be used on the front passenger's seat if this is prohibited by the relevant country-specific regulations. If the relevant country-specific regulations allow the use of a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, check the tables ⇨ *table on page 84* to see whether your system can be secured on the front passenger's seat in the vehicle.

If your child restraint system complies with the relevant country-specific regulations and is suitable for use on the front passenger's seat of your vehicle, please note the following: ▶

Applies to: rearward-facing child restraint systems

– Vehicles without deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: Use on the front passenger's seat is **not** permitted.
– Vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: The front passenger's airbag must be deactivated ⇨ *page 81*.

Applies to: forward-facing child restraint systems

– Move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area.

Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems

Child restraint system		Rear seats		Front passenger's seat[a)]	
Size category	**Orientation**	**Outer**	**Centre[b)]**	**Front passenger's airbag on**	**Front passenger's airbag off**
Category 0: 45-75 cm up to 10 kg	Rearward facing	U/I	U	X	U/I
Category 0+: 45-87 cm up to 13 kg	Rearward facing	U/I	U	X	U/I
Category 1: 61-105 cm 9–18 kg	Rearward facing	U/I	U	X	U/I
	Forward facing	U/I	U	X	U/I
Category 2: 100-135 cm 15-25 kg	Forward facing	U/I	U	U/I	U/I
Category 3: 125-150 cm 22-36 kg	Forward facing	U/I	U	U/I	U/I
i-Size child restraint system	Rearward facing	U/I	X	X	U/I
	Forward facing			U/I	U/I
Booster child restraint system	Forward facing	U/I	X	U/I	U/I

a) If you fit a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the height and longitudinal position of the seat and the angle of the backrest as necessary. When attaching a child restraint system with the seat belt, move the front passenger's seat as far upwards as possible.

b) Seat not suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with a support leg.

– **Size category**: The size category specifies the weight or height range for which the child restraint system is approved. The size category of the child restraint system is specified on the ECE approval label.
– **I**: Seat suitable for the attachment of an ISOFIX child restraint system.
– **U**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system using the vehicle's seat belt.
– **X**: Seat not suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system.
– None of the seats are suitable for side-facing child restraint systems (L1/L2) or child restraint systems with lower tethers. ▶

Size categories and corresponding ISOFIX classes

Size category	ISOFIX class
Category 0	ISO R1
Category 0+	ISO R1/R2/R3
Category 1	ISO R2/R3 (rearward facing) ISO F2/F2X/F3 (forward facing)
Booster child restraint system	ISO B2/B3

Information on child restraint systems

– Child restraint systems can also be secured on seats with side airbags. Side airbags can provide additional protection to children who are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system in the event of an accident.
– For correct installation, some child restraint systems require the use of both the lower ISOFIX anchorages and the seat belt. The simultaneous use of both of these is permissible as long as this does not restrict the restraint systems or seat belts on an adjacent seat.

Attaching a child restraint system to the bottom ISOFIX anchorages

Fig. 52 Rear seat: Bottom ISOFIX anchorages

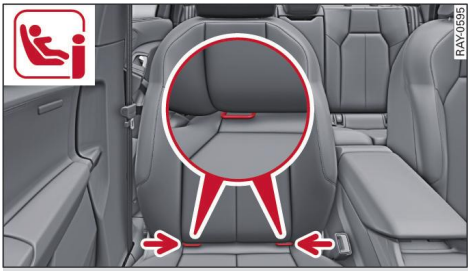


Fig. 53 Front passenger's seat: Bottom ISOFIX anchorages

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 82*.

The bottom ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seat cushion and the backrest on the vehicle's outer rear seats and (on some vehicles) on the front passenger's seat. There are two bottom ISOFIX anchorages on these seats to which you can secure an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system.

The ISOFIX anchorages are designed for a maximum total weight of 33 kg (weight of child and child restraint system). If the total weight is higher, the child restraint system must be attached to the vehicle using the seat belt.

▸ Activate the child lock.
▸ Open the flaps for the two ISOFIX anchorages.
▸ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
▸ Pull on the child restraint system to check whether both sides have engaged properly in the ISOFIX anchorages.
▸ If possible, also secure the child restraint system to the corresponding top tether anchorage of the seat ⇨ *page 86*.

WARNING

– NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
– The ISOFIX anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Securing child restraint systems with a seat belt

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 82*.

- Activate the child lock ⇨ *page 39*.
- When attaching a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far upwards as possible.
- Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- After securing the child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's backrest so that it makes full contact with the child restraint system. You should also ensure that the upper securing point for the seat belt is behind the child restraint system.
- If you are using a child restraint system on the rear seat, you should additionally secure the child restraint system to the vehicle's corresponding top tether anchorage ⇨ *page 86*, if possible.

WARNING

– NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

– To ensure proper protection by the child restraint system, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.

Additionally securing a child restraint system to the top tether anchorage

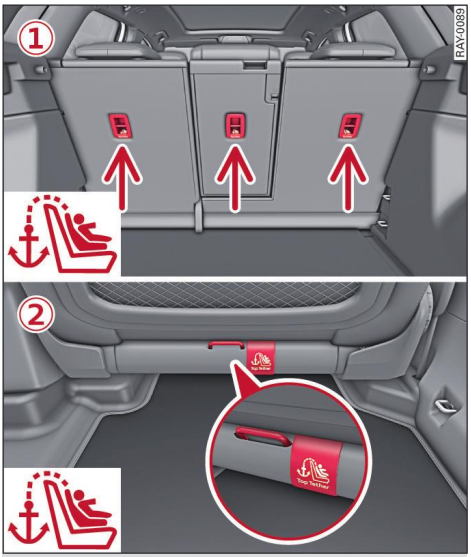


Fig. 54 ① Rear backrest / ② Back of front passenger's seat: Top tether anchorages for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap

Fig. 55 Rear backrest: Hooking strap into top tether anchorage

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 82*.

The top tether anchorages are intended for use as an additional point for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap. The anchorages may be fitted in the following locations in the vehicle:

- Behind the outer seats on the rear bench seat.
- Behind the centre seat on the rear bench seat.[1] ▶

[1] Depending on country

- On the back of the front passenger's seat at the bottom.[1)]

Depending on the equipment in the vehicle, the top tether anchoring point on the front passenger seat may be below a cover.

Make sure that the combined weight of the child seat and child is not over the maximum permissible weight of 33 kg.

- Raise the head restraint behind the child restraint system.
- Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Guide the top tether strap of the child restraint system underneath or past both sides of the head restraint (depending on the type of child restraint system) towards the rear.
- Hook the strap into the top tether anchorage ⇨ *Fig. 55*. When doing so, make sure that the belt is not twisted and that it is not on any sharp edges.
- Pull the strap tight so that the top of the child restraint system rests securely against the backrest.
- If necessary, lower the head restraint behind the child restraint system.

WARNING

The top tether anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with a top tether strap. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

[1)] Depending on country

Storage and convenience

Storage compartments

Safety information on storage compartments in the vehicle interior

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you will find several storage compartments and retainers that can be used to safely store items. These include, for example, the glove box.

WARNING

– To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep all storage compartments closed when driving.
– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– The storage compartments in the door trims should only be used to store small objects. Make sure that they are stored safely inside the compartment, as otherwise they might impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
– The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
– Make sure that your view to the rear is not obstructed (e.g. by any items of clothing hanging up or objects in the vehicle).

Using the glove box

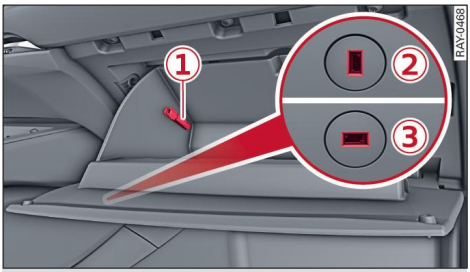


Fig. 56 Glove box: Glove box key

The glove box can be used to safely store items.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, it may be possible to lock and unlock the glove box.

- Open the glove box.
- Take the glove box key ① out of the holder inside the glove box.
- To lock the glove box, turn the glove box key to the locked position ②.
- To unlock the glove box, turn the glove box key to the unlocked position ③.

Information on the ashtray

The ashtray is located in the cup holder in the front centre console.

Emptying the ashtray

- Pull the ashtray upwards out of the holder.
- Rotate the upper section to separate it from the ashtray insert.
- To close the ashtray, put the upper section back on and screw it shut.
- Always put the ashtray safely back into the holder after removing it.

WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray, as this could cause a fire.

Information on the cigarette lighter

The cigarette lighter is located in the front centre console.

- Press the button on the cigarette lighter.
- When the button on the cigarette lighter springs out, pull the insert out.

WARNING

The cigarette lighter only works when the vehicle is switched on. Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

Information on power sources

When the vehicle is switched on, several power sources for external devices are available (depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle).

To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged, the energy management system will switch off power sources if necessary.

12-volt sockets

The 12-volt sockets are located in the front centre console and in the luggage compartment side trim. They are marked with the symbol or 12V.

You can connect electrical devices to the 12-volt sockets. The devices connected must not exceed a power rating of 120 W. Do not connect several devices to the vehicle sockets at the same time.

Do not plug any additional devices into the sockets while the compressor supplied with the vehicle is in use. The power rating for the sockets may be exceeded for a short period of time while the compressor is in use.

USB connections

The USB connections are located in the front centre console and in the rear cabin.

Depending on the vehicle model, USB connections may be indicated by one of the following symbols: or .

You can use the USB connections to charge mobile devices. Use a certified USB-C cable or a certified adapter to achieve the best possible charging performance.

If your vehicle is fitted with USB interfaces with increased charging capacity, use a certified USB-C cable with a charging capacity of 60 W or 100 W and an E-marker chip.

WARNING

– Make sure that all connected devices are securely stowed when driving to prevent them from being catapulted through the car under braking or in an accident – danger to life!

– Improper use of 12-volt electrical sockets or USB connections can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

CAUTION

– Please observe the operating instructions for the connected devices.
– To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electrical current to the power sources in order to charge the vehicle's battery.
– Do not connect a device with a voltage different from the designated voltage of the socket.
– To avoid damage, please take care when detaching connectors from the power sources.

Information on cup holders

The cup holders are located in the front centre console and in the rear centre armrest.

▸ To use the cup holders in the rear centre armrest, fold the armrest down.

WARNING

– Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.
– Do not use cups, mugs or glasses made from hard materials such as glass or porcelain. These objects can be thrown throughout the vehicle interior in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not place open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could otherwise spill over and cause damage to the vehicle’s equipment.

Luggage compartment

Safety information on the luggage compartment

- Make sure all luggage and other objects in the luggage compartment are safely secured.
- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- Close the luggage compartment cover before starting the journey if the vehicle load permits this.
- Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
- Secure items of luggage to the fastening rings with non-elastic straps.
- Adjust the tyre pressures according to the load.

WARNING

– The luggage compartment cover should not be used as a storage shelf. Items placed on this cover could injure the vehicle occupants in an accident or in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres.
– The luggage compartment cover must always be securely attached when in use – risk of accident!
– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings. Use suitable securing straps when transporting heavy objects.
– If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
– Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity – this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
– The luggage net is only strong enough to secure light items. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!
– Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle.
– Never secure a child restraint system to the fastening rings.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the children would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help. This could have fatal consequences.
– Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times ⇨ *page 74*.
– Be careful when releasing and folding down the backrest! Carelessness when folding it down could result in injuries.
– Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards. Otherwise objects stored in the luggage compartment can fly forward during sudden braking – risk of injury!
– Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards. Otherwise the protection provided by the seatbelt for the middle seat is not guaranteed – risk of injury!
– If the seat belt is trapped when the backrest is returned to its upright position, fold the backrest down again and free the seat belt. Hold the seat belt in one hand while you carefully fold up the backrest.
– The retaining hooks should only be used to hold objects weighing up to 3 kg. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!

CAUTION

– Lower the rear head restraints before you fold down the backrest – risk of damage!
– When returning the backrest to an upright position, make sure that the seat belts for the outer rear seats are not trapped – risk of damage!

– Remove all items from the rear bench seat before you fold down the backrest – risk of damage!
– If you need to adjust the front seats when the rear backrest is folded forwards, please take care to avoid damaging the rear head restraints.
– Please ensure that hard objects do not chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.
– Applies to vehicles with electric luggage compartment cover: To prevent any damage, let the luggage compartment cover retract slowly.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: Never exceed the maximum permissible load for the luggage compartment floor that is specified on the sticker; otherwise the high-voltage battery underneath it could be damaged. The sticker can be found on the inside of the vehicle body on the left-hand side when the bonnet is open.

Information on the electric luggage compartment cover

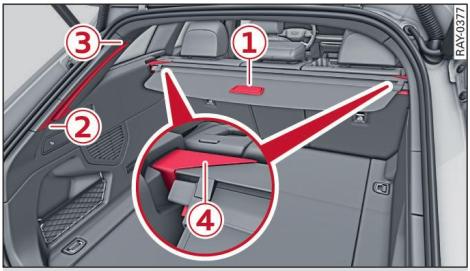


Fig. 57 Luggage compartment: Electric luggage compartment cover

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 90*.

When you operate the boot lid, an electric motor moves the luggage compartment cover into position ② or ③.

Disengaging and engaging the luggage compartment cover

▸ To disengage the luggage compartment cover, lift the cover slightly to position ③ using the handle ①.
▸ Guide it along the support rails to position ②.
▸ To retract the luggage compartment cover, guide it forwards slowly by hand, making sure it does not retract too quickly.
▸ To engage the luggage compartment cover, pull the cover out using the handle ①.
▸ Guide it into the support rails at position ② and engage it at position ③.

Removing and installing the luggage compartment cover

Important: The luggage compartment cover is retracted.

▸ To remove the luggage compartment cover, press the end cap ④ on one side inwards to loosen it from the side trim mounting.
▸ Lift the luggage compartment cover out.
▸ To install the luggage compartment cover, insert the end cap ④ on one side into the side trim mounting.
▸ Press the end cap on the other side inwards and position the luggage compartment cover between the two mountings.
▸ Also insert the end cap on the other side into the side trim mounting.

Information on the hard luggage compartment cover

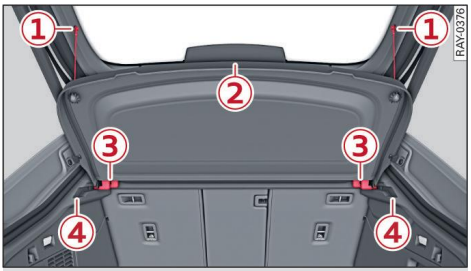


Fig. 58 Luggage compartment: Hard luggage compartment cover

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 90*.

Removing and installing the hard luggage compartment cover

▸ To remove the luggage compartment cover, unhook the cords ① from the boot lid. ▶

- Take hold of the luggage compartment cover ② in the centre and pull it backwards out of the support rails ④.
- To install the luggage compartment cover, fit the two pins ③ on each side in the support rails ④.
- Slide the luggage compartment cover ② towards the front.
- Attach the cords ① to the boot lid.

Folding the outer backrest up/down

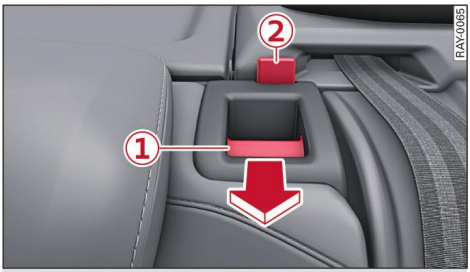


Fig. 59 Outer backrest: Release lever and backrest lock indicator with red marking

Applies to: Avant
Fig. 60 Luggage compartment: Release lever

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 90*.

- To fold down the backrest, pull the release lever ① or ③ on the appropriate side of the vehicle in the direction indicated by the arrow.
- When you no longer need the extra luggage space, move the backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking ② is no longer visible.

Folding the centre backrest up/down

Fig. 61 Centre backrest: Recess in centre backrest

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 90*.

- To fold the centre backrest down, reach into the recess ① from below and press the release handle upwards.
- When you no longer need the extra luggage space, move the centre backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

Removing/installing the net partition (version 1)

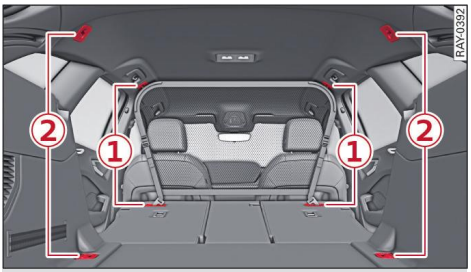


Fig. 62 Luggage compartment and folded-down backrest: Net partition

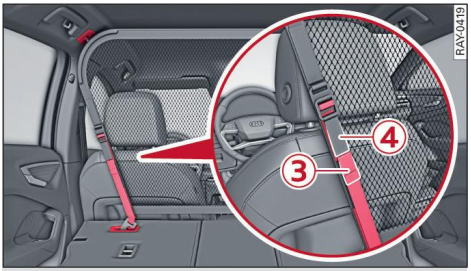


Fig. 63 Net partition: Securing belt

The net partition prevents objects in the luggage compartment from being thrown forward into ▶

the passenger compartment. You can attach the net partition to the retainers ① behind the front seats. On some models, you can also attach the net partition to the retainers ② behind the rear seats.

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 90*.

Installing the net partition

- To hook the net partition into the front retainers ①, the backrests must be folded down.
- Before hooking the net partition into the rear retainers ②, remove the luggage compartment cover.
- Secure the net partition in the top retainer on one side first, then in the bottom retainer ① or ② on the same side. Make sure that the securing belt ③ is facing towards the rear when securing.
- Tighten the securing belt ③.
- Repeat the procedure on the other side.
- Fit the luggage compartment cover again if you removed it previously.

Removing the net partition

- Before removing the net partition from the rear retainers ②, remove the luggage compartment cover.
- To unhook the net partition from the retainers ① or ②, loosen the securing belt on one side by pulling the tab ④ upwards.
- Release the net partition from the bottom retainer first, then from the top retainer ① or ②.
- Repeat the procedure on the other side.
- Fold the backrests back until they engage, if necessary.
- Fit the luggage compartment cover again if you removed it previously.

Removing/installing the net partition (version 2)

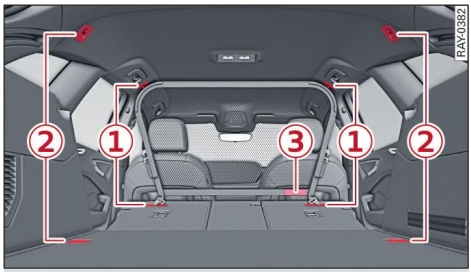


Fig. 64 Luggage compartment and folded-down backrest: Net partition

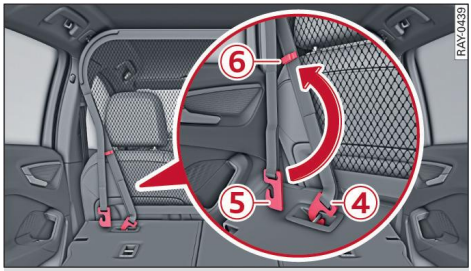


Fig. 65 Net partition: hooks and loops

The net partition prevents objects in the luggage compartment from being thrown forward into the passenger compartment. You can fit the net partition in the retainers behind the front seats ① or in the retainers behind the rear seats ②.

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 90*.

Installing the net partition

- To hook the net partition into the front retainers ①, the backrests must be folded down.
- Before hooking the net partition into the rear retainers ②, remove the luggage compartment cover.
- Position the net partition so that the label ③ at the bottom of the net partition faces towards the rear.
- To attach the net partition in the front retainers ①, first secure the net partition in the top retainer on one side and then engage the hook ④ in the bottom retainer. ▶

- To attach the net partition in the rear retainers ②, first secure the net partition in the top retainer on one side and then engage the hook ⑤ in the bottom retainer.
- Repeat the procedure on the other side.
- Once you have attached the net partition in the front retainers ① with the hooks ④, engage the hooks ⑤ in the loops ⑥ on both sides.
- Fit the luggage compartment cover again if you removed it previously.

Removing the net partition

- Before removing the net partition from the rear retainers ②, remove the luggage compartment cover.
- Release the net partition from the bottom retainer on one side first, then from the top retainer ① or ② on the same side.
- Repeat the procedure on the other side.
- Fold the backrests back until they engage, if necessary.
- Fit the luggage compartment cover again if you removed it previously.

WARNING

Once you have attached the net partition in the retainers ①, always engage the hooks ⑤ in the loops ⑥. Otherwise, the loose hooks could be catapulted forwards through the vehicle and injure occupants – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Once you have attached the net partition in the retainers ①, always engage the hooks ⑤ in the loops ⑥. Otherwise, the loose hooks could be flung around the vehicle and cause damage to the side windows or other parts of the vehicle.

Using the fastening rings and luggage net to secure objects

Fig. 66 Luggage compartment: Location of fastening rings

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 90*.

Fastening rings

There are fastening rings ① at the front and rear of the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage and other objects.

- Fold up the clips on the fastening rings ①.

Luggage net

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, there may be a luggage net in the vehicle which you can use to secure lighter objects in position in the luggage compartment.

- Insert the hooks of the luggage net into the fastening rings.

Using the floor panel in the luggage compartment

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 90*.

Folding the floor panel up/down

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, it may be possible to fold the floor panel up/down.

- Lift the floor panel at the handle and fold it up.
- Pull the ring on the floor panel towards the rear of the vehicle and fold the floor panel back down.

Removing and installing the floor panel

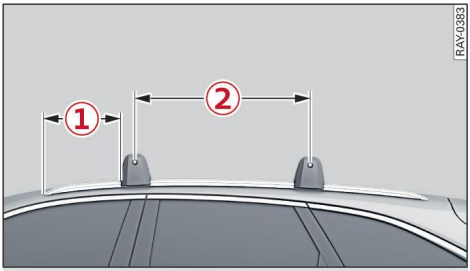
Depending on the vehicle's equipment, it may be possible to remove the floor panel from the vehicle. ▶

- To remove the floor panel, take hold of the handle and pull the complete panel towards the rear of the vehicle.
- To install the floor panel, insert it into the guide and push it towards the backrests as far as the stop.

Roof carrier

Safety information on roof carriers

Applies to: Saloon
Fig. 67 Roof: Attachment points



Applies to: Avant
Fig. 68 Roof rail: Attachment points

The cross bars form the basic elements of a complete roof carrier system. Use only roof carriers which are suitable for your vehicle. Audi recommends using roof carriers and additional elements from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.

Note the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

- Only attach roof carriers at the points provided on the vehicle. If applicable, make sure distances ① and ② are correct.
- You should ensure that you do not exceed the maximum permitted axle loads, gross weight and roof load for your vehicle. The roof load limit applies to the combined weight of the roof carrier, the additional elements and the load itself. Observe the maximum load capacity of the roof carrier you are using.

Distances for roof carriers (cm)	
①	32
②	73

WARNING

– Note the fitting instructions provided by the manufacturer of the roof carrier system. If you do not secure the roof carrier system and roof load correctly, they can become separated from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The use of a roof carrier system affects the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity and increasing susceptibility to cross winds – risk of accident! Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.

CAUTION

Please take extra care not to let the boot lid strike the roof load when open.

For the sake of the environment

The increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more energy. For this reason you should always take off the roof carrier when it is not in use.

Heating and cooling

Air conditioner

Introduction

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, one of the following options is available:

– A single-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature, air distribution and blower speed settings individually in the vehicle.
– A three-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature and air distribution at the front left and right and the temperature in the rear individually. The air output can be set for the entire vehicle using the controls for the front seats.

The air conditioner heats, cools, dehumidifies and filters the air inside the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows and the roof (if applicable) closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

The deluxe automatic air conditioner will maintain the temperature at the set level. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher setting once the heater has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the defrost setting).

Information on the air conditioner

– Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating/cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
– Condensation can drip off the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.
– If you notice, for instance, that the seat or rear window heating (if fitted) is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the energy management system. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.
– When the blower is switched on, the enhanced air filter with activated carbon reduces the concentration of fine particulate matter and pollen and neutralises odours in the vehicle interior.

Information on the air conditioner for the European Union

The air conditioner contains the fluorinated greenhouse gas known as R-1234yf.

Further information on the quantity of this greenhouse gas, the CO_2 equivalent and the global warming potential (GWP) is provided on a sticker in the engine compartment.

Overview of air conditioner displays

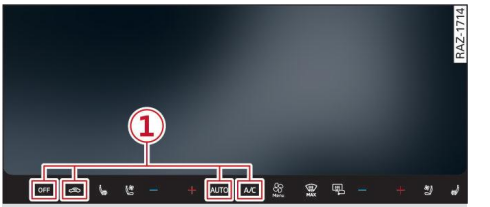


Fig. 69 Centre display: Control bar for three-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner

All of the air conditioner settings are available on the centre display; for the rear seats, only certain functions are available.

Adjusting the air conditioner control bar

Applies to: vehicles with 3-zone automatic air conditioner

You can replace certain air conditioner functions in the lower control bar (1) with an air conditioner function from the air conditioner menu.

▸ Press and hold one of the buttons (1) for a few seconds. Editable functions and selected functions for the control bar will be shown.
▸ Press the button for the editable function that you want to assign to the button.
▸ To confirm the selection, press **OK**.

Rear control console

The control console can be used to set the temperature and (if fitted) the seat heating in the rear cabin.

Adjusting the air conditioning

The air conditioner functions can be found in the lower control bar and the air conditioner menu on the centre display. The air conditioner menu is accessed by pressing Menu.

The functions can be switched on and off by pressing the buttons. When a function is switched on, a bar will light up in the button.

Temperature

You can press - / + on the centre display to set the temperature to between +16°C and +28°C. Outside this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear on the display. In the two extreme settings the air conditioner operates continuously with maximum cooling or heating output. You can press **-** / **+** on the rear control console to set the temperature in the rear.

AUTO **Automatic mode**

Automatic mode regulates the air output and distribution automatically in order to reach the set temperature as quickly as possible.

Press AUTO to set the air output mode. The mode displayed is used in automatic mode.

A/C **Cooling mode**

If you activate this function, cooling mode will be regulated automatically.

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The cooling system is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures. The button will remain lit.

A/C MAX **Cooling mode at maximum**

If you activate this function, cooling mode will operate at maximum power and maximum airflow. This function should only be used for short periods of time to avoid unnecessary energy consumption. This function can cause the windows to steam up in unfavourable climatic conditions.

ECO Cooling mode

If you activate this function, the air conditioner will operate in efficiency mode. Due to the reduction in power used, the comfort provided by the air conditioning is reduced.

Blower

You can adjust the blower speed manually by pressing - / +. You should leave the blower on and make sure the setting is not too low to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. Press AUTO for automatic control of the air conditioner blower speed.

Air recirculation mode

Press to switch air recirculation mode on/off manually.

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior ⇨ ⚠.

The manual air recirculation mode is automatically switched off once between switching the vehicle on and off if misting up of the windows is detected.

Air distribution

Select which vents you wish the air to flow out of. Press AUTO for automatic control of the air distribution.

Applies to vehicles with 3-zone automatic air conditioner: The air distribution is switched to automatic control if all three air distribution functions are switched off.

Pressing will direct the air to the windscreen.

The air distribution set manually for the driver's side will also be set for the rear.

To prevent the front side windows from misting up, open the side vents and point them towards the side windows. ▶

SYNC **Synchronising**

When the sync function is switched on, the temperature and air distribution settings on the driver's side will be applied to the rest of the vehicle.

OFF **Switching off**

Press OFF to off the air conditioning for the front and the rear seats. The supply of air from outside the vehicle will be cut off.

To switch the air conditioning on again, press any of the buttons on the centre display or in the rear cabin.

Defrosting

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. Open the side vents and point them towards the side windows. The air output is increased to maximum and the air comes out of the vents below the windscreen. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. A/C cooling mode is activated. The cooling system is switched off automatically depending on the outside temperature. The windscreen heating may be switched on automatically at low outside temperatures, depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle. Depending on the ambient temperature, you may be able to switch the windscreen heating on manually by pressing .

Rear window/mirror heating

Press to switch the rear window heating and exterior mirror heating on/off.

If you switch the function off, the exterior mirror heating will remain switched on until the vehicle is switched off.

The function is switched back on automatically if it was switched on previously and the vehicle has been stationary for no more than 10 minutes.

The rear window heating switches off automatically after about 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

Seat heating

The seat heating temperature can be adjusted to several levels. Press once to activate the highest level. Press repeatedly to lower the temperature by one level each time. When the button is not lit, the seat heating is switched off.

The seat heating will be switched off if the seat is unoccupied. If someone gets back in the seat within 10 minutes, the seat heating will be switched on automatically.

Seat ventilation

The intensity of the seat ventilation can be adjusted to several levels. Press once to set the highest level. Press repeatedly to lower the intensity by one level each time. When the button is not lit, the seat ventilation is switched off.

The seat ventilation will be switched off if the seat is unoccupied. If someone gets back in the seat within 10 minutes, the seat ventilation will be switched on automatically.

Steering wheel heating

When this function is switched on, the steering wheel will be heated.

You can also operate the steering wheel heating using the controls on the multi-function steering wheel.

Heat hands

When this convenience function is switched on, the air conditioning system increases the heat output at the dash panel vents. You can hold your hands in front of the vents to warm them up. If fitted, the steering wheel heating will be activated. The function switches itself off after a certain period.

This function is not available if insufficient heat output is available.

Heat feet

When this convenience function is switched on, the air conditioning system increases the heat output in the footwells. The function switches itself off after a certain period.

This function is not available if insufficient heat output is available. ▶

Cool feet

When this convenience function is switched on, the air conditioning system directs cooler air to the footwells. The function switches itself off after a certain period.

This function is not available if insufficient cooling output is available.

Fresh air

When this convenience function is switched on, the air conditioning system increases the amount of air in the vehicle and the proportion of air that is drawn from outside to improve the air quality in the vehicle interior. The manual air recirculation mode is deactivated. The function switches itself off after a certain period.

WARNING

- You should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. The windows can mist over as a result – risk of accident!
- If the air recirculation function is used for a long period, the concentration of CO_2 can build up inside the vehicle. This can cause personal discomfort and may even lead to an accident! Switch off the air recirculation / automatic air recirculation immediately and ventilate the vehicle if you experience any discomfort.
- The vehicle has functions which activate the seat heating automatically. People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature must make sure that the seat heating is switched off at the start of the journey to ensure that they do not burn themselves.
- An alternating magnetic field is generated when the seat heating is switched on. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) are very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions.
- Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

CAUTION

- To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.
- Only use the seat heating when the seat is dry.
- Only place dry objects on the seats.
- Do not spill any liquid on the seats.
- Covering the seats can impair the seat heating function. Do not use seat covers and do not place any objects (e.g. jackets, blankets or bags) on the seats when the seat heating is switched on.
- Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

Adjusting the vents

Move the lever to adjust the direction of the air flow. Use the rotary knob to adjust the amount of air.

Calling up the air conditioner settings menu

▸ Select: Menu > ⚙.

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the air conditioner settings menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Using the air conditioner functions

Seat temperature balance

You can distribute the set strength of the seat heating and ventilation between the seat cushion and the backrest in the air conditioner settings menu ⇨ *page 99*.

Automatic air recirculation

If this function is switched on in the air conditioner settings menu ⇨ *page 99*, air recirculation is regulated automatically when air pollution is detected ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Automatic supplementary heater

The vehicle interior warms up more quickly with the supplementary heater. The supplementary heater is regulated automatically when this function is switched on.

Air conditioning when unlocking

Applies to vehicles with convenience auxiliary air conditioner: If this function is switched on in the air conditioner settings menu ⇨ *page 99*, the air conditioning will run for several minutes after the vehicle is unlocked.

WARNING

If the air recirculation function is used for a long period, the concentration of CO_2 can build up inside the vehicle. This can cause personal discomfort and may even lead to an accident! Switch off the air recirculation or automatic air recirculation immediately and ventilate the vehicle if you experience any discomfort.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with supplementary heater

When the fossil fuel powered supplementary heater is in operation, hot exhaust gases are emitted from the exhaust outlet under the car.

Driver messages about the air conditioning

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear in the event of a fault. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. Try switching the air conditioning on later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Auxiliary heating/ventilation

Introduction

You can control the auxiliary heating/ventilation via the centre display or via the myAudi app.

When the air conditioner function is started, it automatically selects whether the auxiliary heating or auxiliary ventilation is switched on, depending on the ambient conditions.

The auxiliary heating warms up the inside of the vehicle, while the auxiliary ventilation draws in fresh air and can lower the temperature inside the vehicle, depending on the ambient temperature. The function can be used either when the engine is off or when driving (for instance while the engine is warming up).

Conditions for operation

– There is enough fuel in the tank.
– The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Information on the auxiliary heating/ventilation

– The auxiliary heating/ventilation will not switch on or will switch itself off earlier than intended if the battery charge or fuel level is low.
– The auxiliary heating/ventilation system heats/cools the interior to the temperature last selected on the air conditioner control bar.
– If the auxiliary heating/ventilation is on, it is not switched off automatically when the engine is started or stopped.
– At low outside temperatures, some visible water vapour may form in the engine compartment. This is a normal phenomenon, and no reason for concern.

WARNING

– The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run when the vehicle is in a confined space – risk of poisoning!
– Never have the auxiliary heating switched on when refuelling the vehicle – risk of fire!
– Because of the high temperatures which occur when the auxiliary heating is running, make sure when parking the car that the exhaust outlet under the car is not obstructed in any way and that the exhaust gases do not come into contact with flammable materials (fire risk).

Using the auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 100*.

Select: Menu > **Auxiliary heating**

Immediate start

You can set the operating time and switch the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off immediately by selecting **Switch on auxiliary heating**.

When a function is switched on, a white bar will light up in the button.

Departure times

To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings ⇨ *page 280*.

You can set up to five timers for the departure time.

A departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the most recently selected temperature. The departure time must be within the next six days. The auxiliary heating will continue to run for several minutes after the departure time is reached.

- Select **Departure times**.
- Select **Add new departure time**.
- Set the time and day.
- Select **Repeat** to set a repeat timer.
- Select **Store setting**.

The timer has been set.

The auxiliary heating/ventilation can be switched on/off immediately even if a timer has been set. This has no effect on the programmed timer setting as long as the auxiliary heating/ventilation is not switched off manually during the programmed period.

Air conditioning heating focus

- To have the system defrost the vehicle's windscreen and front side windows, select **Windows**.
- If you want the system to defrost the vehicle's windscreen and front side windows and also warm up the vehicle, select **Interior**.

Switching on/off using the button in the row of switches

- To switch the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off immediately, press the button in the row of buttons.

When the LED in the button flashes, the auxiliary heating is being pre-heated. The vehicle interior is not yet being heated. When the LED in the button is lit continuously, the auxiliary heating/ventilation is active.

If the symbol in the button is lit, a timer is programmed.

Driver messages about the auxiliary heating/ventilation

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Auxiliary heating/ventilation: fault. Not available

If this message appears, a system malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Auxiliary air conditioner

Introduction

You can control the auxiliary air conditioner via the centre display or via the myAudi app.

Important: The high-voltage battery must be sufficiently charged and there must be enough fuel in the tank.

The auxiliary air conditioner heats or cools the vehicle interior depending on the ambient conditions. The function can be used when the drive system is switched off.

The auxiliary air conditioner heats or cools the vehicle to the temperature that was most recently selected on the control bar.

If the auxiliary air conditioning is on, it is cancelled when the vehicle is started.

Noises may occur when the auxiliary air conditioning is activated. This is no cause for concern.

8B1012720AG

Using the auxiliary air conditioner

Select: Menu >**Auxiliary air conditioner**.

Departure times

To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings ⇨ *page 280*.

You can set up to five timers to control air conditioning and/or charging before the departure time.

A departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the most recently selected temperature. The departure time must be within the next six days. The auxiliary air conditioner will continue to run for several minutes after the departure time is reached.

- Select **Departure times**.
- Select **Add new departure time**.
- Set the time and day.
- Select **Repeat** to set a repeat timer.
- Select **Air conditioning** and/or **Charging**.
- Select **Store setting**.

The auxiliary air conditioning will not be reactivated if the vehicle was not switched on at the set departure time twice in a row.

The auxiliary air conditioner can be switched on/off immediately even if a departure time has been set.

Convenience

You can use this mode to heat or cool the vehicle interior. The windows will be demisted.

Eco

Using this mode saves energy. Due to the reduction in power used, the comfort provided by the air conditioning is reduced. The windows will be demisted.

Auxiliary air conditioning - zone selection

Applies to: vehicles with convenience auxiliary air conditioner

You can select the zones in which the extended convenience functions are switched on automatically here. Depending on the vehicle equipment, such functions may include the seat heating or the seat ventilation, for example. If fitted, the window heating and the exterior mirror heating will be switched on. When the functions are switched on depends on the ambient temperature.

Auxiliary air conditioner immediate start

This function allows you to switch the auxiliary air conditioner on/off immediately on the goodbye screen and in the auxiliary air conditioner menu.

After an immediate start, the auxiliary air conditioner will continue to run for a maximum of 30 minutes.

Information on air conditioning during charging

Depending on the charging capacity and the charge level of the battery, the air conditioning may be limited or the charge level may be reduced.

Driver messages about the auxiliary air conditioning

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear in the event of a fault. Try switching the auxiliary air conditioning on later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Information on fluids in the air conditioner

Refrigerant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and quantity of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. This sticker is located in the front section of the engine compartment or at the front or rear of the bonnet. ▶

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning: Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel.
	Type of refrigerant
	Type of lubricant
	Refer to workshop information (only available to Audi workshops and other qualified workshops)
	Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel.
	Flammable refrigerant
	Ensure that all components are disposed of correctly and never install components in the vehicle which have been removed from old vehicles or recycled.

Lubricant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type of lubricant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. For information about the quantity of lubricant used, please contact a qualified workshop.

Air conditioner evaporator

Components from old vehicles or recycled components must never be used to repair the air conditioner evaporator.

WARNING

Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be carried out by qualified and certified personnel who have been trained in accordance with the standards required in the specific country, e.g. SAE norms J2845 and J2911.

– Refrigerant is flammable. Keep the vehicle away from naked flames, sparks and other ignition sources – risk of fatal injury!
– The refrigerant is under pressure and could explode if it is heated – risk of fatal injury!
– The refrigerant may produce toxic vapours when it comes into contact with hot surfaces; such vapours must not be inhaled – risk of fatal injury!

Driving

Starting systems

Introduction

The vehicle (ignition) and the drive system can be switched on separately. Electronic systems such as the MMI are available when the vehicle is switched on but the drive system is not. The vehicle can only be driven once the drive system has been switched on. Depending on the model, the term “drive system” refers to the combustion engine or the electric drive system.

Important: The key must be in the vehicle. When using the digital key, the activated digital key card must be in the phone compartment; the mobile device does not have to be in the phone compartment.

Any brief noises which may be heard when the vehicle is started and stopped are quite normal and no cause for concern.

Switching the vehicle on/off

Fig. 70 Centre console: Switching on the drive system

If you only wish to switch the vehicle on/off and do not want to start the drive system as well, proceed as follows:

▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.

Situations where the vehicle is switched off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged, the vehicle and, in some cases, the exterior lighting may be switched off automatically.

Requirements:

– Conventional power unit: The start/stop system has switched off the engine.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: You have driven the vehicle. The combustion engine is not running.
– You must have left the vehicle more than 30 seconds ago.
– The vehicle must be switched on.

The methods used by the vehicle for detecting whether you have left include the following:

– Driver’s door has been opened.
– Driver’s seat belt has been unbuckled.
– Brake pedal is not pressed.

The vehicle will also be switched off after 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle from the outside.

Driver messages about the vehicle key

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Vehicle start system: fault. Please contact workshop soon

A vehicle start system fault has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Remote control key: key not recognised. Is key still in vehicle?

The vehicle key was removed from the vehicle while the drive system was active. If the vehicle key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the vehicle or restart the drive system after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Vehicle key: key not detected. Is there still a valid key in the vehicle?

The vehicle key and the digital key were removed from the vehicle while the drive system was active. If the vehicle key and digital key are not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the vehicle or restart the drive system after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to ▸

lock the vehicle from the outside while the drive system is active.

Remote control key: hold against marked area and press start/stop button. See owner's manual

The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the symbol.

If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Hold remote control key against marked area or place digital key in phone compartment. See owner's manual

The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the symbol or place the digital key in the phone compartment.

If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Engine

Switching the drive system on/off

Important: The key must be in the vehicle. When using the digital key, the activated digital key card must be in the phone compartment; the mobile device does not have to be in the phone compartment.

Any brief noises which may be heard when the vehicle is started and stopped are quite normal and no cause for concern.

Switching the drive system on

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button in the centre console. The drive system will be switched on.

It may not be possible to start the vehicle at extremely low outside temperatures.

The full performance is not available until the engine is warm. Certain powertrain components may need to be warmed up depending on the type of engine. During this warming up phase, is shown.

Mild hybrid drive: The combustion engine will start. Depending on the situation, the electric drive system may be switched on when driving off or manoeuvring.

Plug-in hybrid drive: The electric drive system should start. The combustion engine only starts when required. A glance at the instrument cluster reveals whether or not the drive system is switched on.

Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily while you start the engine. If the engine fails to start immediately, the starter will be switched off automatically after a few seconds. In this case, you should try to start the engine again after about 30 seconds.

Diesel engine: The engine may take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the brake pedal until the engine starts.

Switching off the drive system

- Stop the vehicle.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The drive system will be switched off.

After the engine is stopped, the radiator fan may remain on or turn itself back on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off.

Plug-in hybrid drive: The electric drive system and the combustion engine will switch off.

Applies to vehicles with steering lock: The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine in transmission position P and open the driver's door. The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

Switching off the drive system in an emergency

If necessary, the engine can be switched off in an emergency while the vehicle is still moving. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, it may only be possible to switch the engine back on again after the vehicle has come to a standstill.

- Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in quick succession or press and hold it. ▶

WARNING

- Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!
- Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
- Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

CAUTION

- Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.
- If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off; this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

Information on the drive system

Information on conventional and mild hybrid drive

Vehicles with conventional drive systems or mild hybrid drive are powered by a combustion engine which burns fuel to generate energy.

Vehicles with mild hybrid drive are equipped with additional battery technology. These vehicles switch automatically between electric driving and hybrid driving.

Information on plug-in hybrid drive

On vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive, you can choose between electric driving and hybrid driving ⇨ *page 107*.

Information on the vehicle sound

Electric motors are much quieter than combustion engines. To make the vehicle more audible when driving under electric power, an artificial vehicle sound is produced on models for some countries. The vehicle sound is faded out at higher speeds.

WARNING

Other road users may not hear an electric vehicle when it is moving. This applies in particular in areas with traffic calming measures, when manoeuvring or reversing – risk of accident!

Information on energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with a smart energy management system to control the distribution of electrical energy. This significantly improves reliability when starting the engine, and also prolongs the life of the vehicle battery.

If the vehicle is driven frequently on short trips, the battery may not be sufficiently charged while driving. In this case, certain convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.

If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, or if electrical equipment is used without running the engine, the battery will gradually lose its charge. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off.

Using recuperation

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the vehicle may be able to recover energy via recuperation. A large amount of the kinetic energy is thereby converted into electrical energy and stored in the battery of the hybrid drive system. The recuperation process causes the vehicle to decelerate in addition to the engine braking effect. Depending on the selected transmission position, the recuperation feature may be activated when you take your foot off the accelerator or press the brake pedal. ▶

Because the recuperation feature is used to slow the vehicle down when you press the brake pedal, the brakes are only used in addition as necessary. This means that, by adopting a moderate driving style, it is possible to brake the vehicle almost down to a standstill using the recuperation function.

WARNING

In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes – risk of accident!

Switching automatic recuperation on/off

You can switch automatic recuperation on/off in the **Car** menu depending on the active Audi drive select mode ⇨ *page 28*.

Mild hybrid drive: When this function is switched on, the recuperation braking effect is based on predictive control, e.g. allowing for the road or traffic ahead, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

Plug-in hybrid drive: When this function is switched on, the recuperation braking effect is based on predictive control, e.g. allowing for the road or traffic ahead, depending on the vehicle's equipment. In EV mode, you can correct the braking effect temporarily by selecting a different recuperation level via the paddle levers. Predictive control is resumed as soon as you press the accelerator.

Mild hybrid drive: When this function is switched off, predictive control is not used when the vehicle is coasting and the vehicle is controlled based on the selected transmission position instead.

Plug-in hybrid drive: When this function is switched off, the recuperation braking effect is controlled manually. In EV mode, you can use the paddle levers to select a recuperation level. The selected recuperation level and its availability are displayed in colour in the instrument cluster. On vehicles without paddle levers, the recuperation function does not brake the vehicle when it is coasting.

Settings via paddle levers:

- Select ⊖ for a stronger braking effect.
- Select ⊕ for a weaker braking effect.
- When the ESC is restricted or switched off, the automatic recuperation is unavailable and there will be no braking effect.

Selecting the drive mode

Changing the drive mode

The EV button is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The button lights up when the function is switched on.

- To switch between electric and hybrid driving, press EV, or
- Select: ⊞ > **Charging**.

Electric driving

The EV button lights up in green when the vehicle is in EV mode. The vehicle can be powered by the electric motor if the conditions for this have been met. The driver can override EV mode, such as by using the kickdown function.

You can specify whether the journey should always begin in electric mode:

- Select: ⊞ > **Charging** > ⚙ > **Always start in EV mode**.

Hybrid driving

If the EV button is not lit, the vehicle is in hybrid mode. The vehicle can be powered by the combustion engine or the electric motor if driving program D or E is selected and the accelerator is not pressed too heavily.

If the navigation system's route guidance is active and no desired charge level is selected, the route data is taken into account when selecting the drive mode. The vehicle is able to achieve the most efficient driving mode by calculating which sections of the route are best driven on electric power. Electric power is given priority on sections which it anticipates will be covered at low speed, such as towns or congested traffic areas. If the hybrid assist is activated, the vehicle switches to ▶

hybrid mode if the remaining distance to the destination is greater than the remaining electric range. This overwrites previously selected settings for the charge level.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Charging** > ⚙ > **Hybrid assist**.

If you switch the system off, it will remain switched off the next time you switch the vehicle on.

Setting the charge level in hybrid mode

The charge level can be adjusted using the slider:

– When the desired charge level is below the current level, the electric motor and the combustion engine work together efficiently. Once the desired charge level has been reached, it will be held at this level.
– When the desired charge level is the same as the current level, the vehicle will be powered primarily by the combustion engine in order to keep the charge level of the high-voltage battery as close to this level as possible.
– When the desired charge level is above the current level, the vehicle will be powered by the combustion engine in order to charge the high-voltage battery. This results in a higher fuel consumption.

The desired charge level can only be set to a maximum of 80 %. The high-voltage battery can only be charged fully via the charging cable.

If S mode is selected, the desired charging level is automatically set to 20 % depending on the model. This value can be changed manually at any time.

Overview of symbols for drive modes

The following indicator lamps may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Symbol	Meaning
EV	EV mode is switched on and active. You are driving purely on electric power.
EV	EV mode is switched on but is temporarily in stand-by mode. Electric driving will be activated as soon as the conditions have been met.
EV	EV mode is not available because the conditions for electric driving have not been met.

Conditions for electric driving

– The charge level and temperature of the high-voltage battery must be sufficient.
– Driving program S must not be selected.
– The road speed must be below 140 km/h.
– The kick-down function must not be used.

Displaying the energy flow

You can display the current energy flow in the vehicle on the centre display.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Charging**.

The animation of the drive system components shows how energy is being used by the system. Combustion drive components as shown in orange, while electric drive components are shown in green.

Information on the range

The estimated range of the vehicle is shown in the status bar in the instrument cluster.

The range shown is calculated from the previous driving profile and the predicted consumption values. These may be affected if convenience functions (e.g. air conditioning, seat heating) are switched on, for example.

The range shown may change depending on the battery charge level or outside temperature.

The range may be affected by heating or cooling of the high-voltage battery by the system.

Driver messages about the drive system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Drive system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The vehicle must not be driven any further. Continuing to drive can cause damage to the drive system. Stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away. Seek professional assistance.

Drive system: fault. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The vehicle's performance may be limited. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Drive system: fault. Limited performance. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The power output is limited. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Drive system: fault. Limited performance. No reverse gear. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The power output is limited. You can no longer engage reverse gear. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Drive system: warning! Performance temporarily restricted. Please adapt driving style. See owner's manual

The performance is temporarily restricted due to the ambient temperature or the temperature of the drive components. Adjust your driving style accordingly.

Vehicle sound: fault. Vehicle inaudible to pedestrians. Please contact workshop

A vehicle sound fault has occurred. Drive extremely carefully, as other road users may not be able to hear the vehicle under electric power.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Transmission positions and driving programs

Information on transmission positions and driving programs

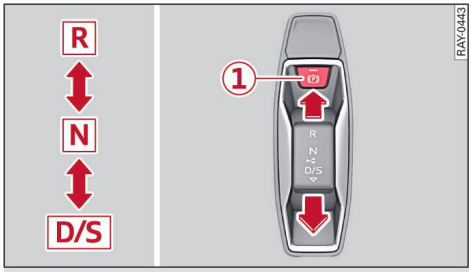


Fig. 71 Centre console: Selector lever

Transmission positions

The transmission positions are shown on the selector lever in the centre console.

– **P** (Park)
– **R** (Reverse): Drive backwards
– **N** (Neutral)
– **D** (Drive): Drive forwards

Driving programs

Various driving programs can be selected in transmission position D. These have an effect on when the gearbox changes gear and the reaction to accelerator pedal inputs, for example.

The selected driving program will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

– **D** (Drive): Normal driving
– **E** (Efficiency): Economical driving
– **S** (Sport): Performance driving

Audi recommends driving program D for everyday use.

WARNING

– Before driving off, check that the desired transmission position is displayed on the selector lever.

– Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.
– In transmission positions D and R, the vehicle must always be held with the foot brake when the drive system is activated. This is because the gearbox still transmits power and the vehicle will “creep”.
– If the vehicle drives into an obstacle, e.g. a higher curb, the vehicle will no longer creep and it may roll back slightly – risk of accident! Creeping can be reactivated with the accelerator or by changing the transmission position/driving program.
– Do not press the accelerator before selecting a transmission position with the vehicle stationary and the drive system switched on – risk of accident!
– Never select transmission position R when driving at normal speeds – risk of accident!
– The vehicle can roll away even if it is switched off.

Selecting a transmission position

Selecting a transmission position

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
- To select the next adjacent transmission position, move the selector lever forwards or backwards to the first point of resistance.
- To skip a transmission position (e.g. to go from D to R), move the selector lever past the point of resistance in the desired direction.
- You do not have to press the brake pedal if you switch back and forth between D and R within one second. This allows you to rock the car backwards and forwards, e.g. to free it from snow or mud, etc.
- The selected transmission position will light up on the selector lever.

Transmission position P (parking lock)/ parking brake

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

In transmission position P, the vehicle is prevented from rolling away by the parking lock. The parking lock is a mechanical locking mechanism for the gearbox.

- Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
- Press the Ⓟ button ①. The parking brake will be applied. Transmission position P (parking lock) will be selected.
- The parking brake status is shown on the selector lever and in the instrument cluster. The parking lock status is shown in the instrument cluster.

If you switch off the drive system when transmission position D or R is selected, transmission position P will be engaged automatically. If you switch off the drive system in transmission position N, transmission position P will be selected automatically after approx. 30 minutes.

Transmission position P will be selected automatically if you release the driver’s seat belt and open the driver’s door while the vehicle is stationary in transmission position D or R.

The drive system must be active in order to change from P to D or R. Depending on the vehicle’s equipment, the drive system may need to be active in order to change to N.

Transmission position N (neutral)

No power is transmitted to the driven wheels in transmission position N. Use transmission position N, for example, in a tunnel car wash.

If you accidentally select transmission position N while the vehicle is moving, you can switch back to D without pressing the brake.

For safety reasons, the vehicle can only be locked with the central locking switch when N is selected.

Selecting a driving program

Press the selector lever downwards to switch between the current driving program and S.

If you select **dynamic** or **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select, driving program S or E will be activated respectively. The driving program may be switched back to D when the ignition is switched off. ▶

Plug-in hybrid drive: Driving program S is only available in hybrid mode.

Driving the vehicle

Information on running in

A new vehicle should be run in over the first 1,500 km so that all moving parts can settle in together gently and the service life of the engine and other powertrain components can be increased.

For the first 1,000 km, do not exceed two thirds of the engine's maximum rpm speed and do not accelerate at full throttle. You can increase the engine speed gradually over the next 500 km.

Switching the drive system on/off

Driving away from a standstill

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Start the vehicle.
- Select transmission position D or R. The parking brake will be released automatically.
- Take your foot off the brake pedal. The vehicle may start to creep forwards.
- Press the accelerator to increase the speed.

Please note, especially when driving off and parking, that the vehicle "creeps" forwards/back. The drive system sets the vehicle in motion when you take your foot off the brake pedal.

Securing the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away

Before leaving the vehicle, always secure it so that it cannot roll away.

- Apply the parking brake.
- When parking on a slope, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move unexpectedly.

If this is not possible (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you must take additional steps to secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away.

- Only park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Block the wheels by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of each wheel.

WARNING

– Always apply the parking brake before leaving your vehicle – even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Otherwise the vehicle can roll away – risk of accident!
– Never leave your vehicle unattended while the drive system is active – risk of accident!
– If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always make sure that position P is selected when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Always switch off the vehicle and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is particularly important if persons or animals are left in the vehicle. They might otherwise unintentionally start the vehicle, release the parking brake or use power-operated equipment – this could cause accidents.
– Do not leave any persons or animals in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
– If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.

CAUTION

To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the brake pedal if you have to stop. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle by keeping your foot on the accelerator. This could cause the drive system to overheat – risk of damage!

8B1012720AG

Using the paddle levers

Fig. 72 Steering wheel: Paddle levers

You can change gear manually in transmission position D. The gearbox must be in tiptronic mode. Depending on the active Audi drive select mode, it may be possible to switch to manual gear selection mode both when the vehicle is stationary and when it is moving.

Plug-in hybrid drive: Manual gear selection is only possible in hybrid mode.

Gear selection with paddle levers

The gearbox only allows manual gear changes if the engine speed would remain within the permissible range.

- To change up: Press the paddle lever ⊕.
- To change down: Press the paddle lever ⊖.
- To shift into the lowest possible gear for maximum acceleration, hold the paddle lever ⊖.
- To switch back to automatic mode, press and hold the paddle lever ⊕.

The gearbox automatically shifts up or down into the next gear before a critical engine speed is reached.

Depending on the selected driving program and Audi drive select mode, the gearbox may revert to automatic mode if you do not operate one of the paddle levers again within a short period.

Information on the accelerator pedal

You can use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle's speed.

Maximum acceleration

A kick-down function is available for maximum engine output and acceleration if you press the accelerator all the way down.

Applies to vehicles with boost function: In driving programs D and S, the electric motor may cut in briefly when the accelerator pedal is pressed heavily. The availability of this function depends, among other things, on the charge level of the high-voltage battery and the temperature of the drive components. The function may also be automatically activated earlier in Audi drive select **comfort** or **dynamic** mode, depending on the amount of power required.

WARNING

The driven wheels may start to spin when you use the kick-down function, causing the vehicle to lose grip, on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

Using the launch control

The launch control gives you optimum acceleration when starting from a standstill.

Availability

Whether this function is available depends on the availability of the drive components.

Some vehicle components may be hot after accelerating with the launch control. In this case, the function may not be available for several minutes. This is to avoid damage. The launch control will be available again after a cool-down period.

Important

– The engine must be warm.
– The steering wheel must be pointing straight ahead.
– The hold function must be deactivated.
– The ESC must be restricted.
– Driving program S must be selected and Audi drive select must be set to **dynamic** mode. ▶

Using the launch control

– Press the brake pedal with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.
– Keeping the brake pedal pressed, quickly press the accelerator all the way down with your right foot (kick-down function).
– The **LAUNCH CONTROL** symbol will appear. When the engine revs are high and steady, take your foot off the brake.

Once the launch control or acceleration process is complete, please remember to fully activate the ESC again.

WARNING

Only use the launch control when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your driving style and acceleration do not inconvenience or endanger other road users. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Accelerating with the launch control places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.
– Do not use the launch control when the vehicle is in towing mode as this could result in damage to the vehicle, trailer and load.

Information on driving in an efficient and environmentally conscious way

Fuel and energy economy, environmental impact and wear on the power unit, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. You can drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way by considering the following tips:

– Select **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select.
– Activate the predictive efficiency messages.
– Switch off any electrical equipment you do not need (e.g. seat heating).
– Anticipate the traffic conditions to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
– Avoid driving at high speeds.
– Remove ballast, such as roof racks or rear carriers, when not needed.
– Make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure.
– Have the vehicle serviced regularly.
– Do not leave the engine running while the car is stopped.
– Do not use winter tyres in summer.
– Brake early and evenly in order to use the recuperation function.
– Make use of the start/stop system.
– Make use of the engine braking effect.
– Avoid short trips.

Sporty driving can lead to significantly higher noise emissions. Please therefore be aware of your social responsibilities and consider the environment and those around you, particularly at night.

Driver messages about the selector lever

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Gearbox overheating: please adapt driving style

The gearbox temperature has risen significantly. Drive more passively or take a break until the temperature is back to normal and the indicator lamp has gone out.

Selector lever: fault. You can continue driving in current position until drive system off

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up program. If you switch the drive system off, you will not be able to engage any other transmission positions after the drive system is switched on again. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Selector lever: fault. Transmission mode can only be changed using both paddle levers. Please contact workshop

A selector lever malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving but the selector lever is out of operation. The transmission positions can only be selected by simultaneously pulling both paddle levers briefly while the vehicle is stationary. ▶

Transmission position P will be selected automatically when you switch the drive system off. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Selector lever: fault. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop soon

A selector lever malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Parking lock: fault. Please contact workshop

A parking lock malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving. However, you should drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away.

P button: fault. Auto P when drive system switched off. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred on the P button on the selector lever. Transmission position P will be selected automatically when you switch the drive system off. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

P cannot be selected. Vehicle may roll away! Please contact workshop

It is no longer possible to engage the parking lock. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Start/stop system

Introduction

The start/stop system can help to save fuel and reduce CO_2 emissions. In start/stop mode, the engine is switched off automatically when the vehicle stops, e.g. at traffic lights.

If certain conditions are met, the engine may be switched off before the vehicle has come to a standstill. If the brake pedal is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed in this case, the engine starts and delivers power again.

The ignition and important supporting systems, e.g. the brake servo, remain available during the stop phase. The engine is automatically started on demand.

The start/stop system is automatically activated each time you switch on the ignition.

In certain situations, the engine may stop earlier while the vehicle is still **coasting**.

To prevent the engine from stopping when this is not necessary, the engine is sometimes stopped with delayed effect, such as before roundabouts, intersections or level crossings. The map material on the navigation system must be updated regularly to ensure that this feature functions reliably.

Conditions for using the start/stop system

– The driver's door and bonnet must be closed.
– Transmission position P, N or D must be selected.
– The steering wheel must be relatively straight.
– The vehicle must have been moving at over 3 km/h since the last stop.
– If you select transmission position D after selecting reverse gear, the car must have been moving at over 10 km/h before the system can switch off the engine again. This allows you to manoeuvre the vehicle without the engine being switched off.

Switching the start/stop system on and off

The A OFF button is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The button lights up when the function is switched off. Depending on the engine, it may not be possible to switch the start/stop system off/on.

▸ Press A OFF to switch the function on/off.

If you switch off the system during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

CAUTION

Always switch off the start/stop system before driving through water.

Information on automatic starting/ stopping of the engine

Before and during each stop phase, the system checks that certain conditions have been met and decides whether to switch off the engine and for how long. For instance, the engine is not switched off if the power consumption is high. Whether or not the engine is started/stopped automatically depends on factors such as the following:

– Ambient conditions (downhill/uphill gradient, altitude and temperature)
– Battery (charge level, temperature and power consumption)
– Air conditioner
– Engine temperature
– Driver assist systems
– Driving style

Switching off/starting the engine

▸ Apply the brakes and keep your foot on the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary. The indicator lamp Ⓐ will appear in the instrument cluster as soon as the engine has been switched off automatically.
▸ The engine will start again automatically when you take your foot off the brake pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

If the parking brake is applied or the hold function is switched on, the engine will only restart when you press the accelerator pedal.

Information on switching off/starting the engine

– Keep your foot on the brake pedal during a stop phase to prevent the vehicle from moving.
– If you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase, the ignition will be switched off.
– If you briefly leave the vehicle during a stop phase and then get back in, you will need to close the driver's door and fasten your seat belt for the engine to start again.
– You can control whether or not the engine is switched off by varying the amount of pressure on the brake pedal. For instance, if you brake gently in stop-and-go traffic or before turning off at a junction, the engine will remain on while the vehicle is at a standstill. As soon as you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will be switched off.

Driver messages about the start/stop system

The following driver message may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Drive system: please start vehicle manually

This message appears if certain conditions have not been met during the stop phase and the start/stop system cannot start the engine again automatically. The START ENGINE STOP button must be used to start the engine.

Brakes

Safety information on the brakes

WARNING

– When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
– All brake repairs must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory – risk of injury! Improper repairs can also impair the function of the system.
– Never let the vehicle coast with the power unit switched off (this can cause accidents).
– If you wish to equip the vehicle with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the brakes is not obstructed; otherwise the brakes can overheat – risk of accident!

CAUTION

– Never let the brakes “drag” by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This can cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.

– Please observe the important safety warnings on driving on gradients. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan.

Introduction

You can use the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down. The braking effect of the brake pedal may be affected by the automatic recuperation if this is switched on.

Information on the brakes

Noises

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).

The brake system performs system tests at regular intervals while the vehicle is stationary and shortly after the vehicle starts moving. Noises may occur temporarily and haptic feedback may be felt on the brake pedal.

Braking effect

To ensure an optimum braking effect, the brake pads are applied to the brake discs briefly at high speeds when the windscreen wipers are on.

If the brake system is wet, e.g. after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Further causes of a temporary increase in brake response time include:

– Wet conditions
– Low temperatures, ice and snow
– Salted roads
– Dirty brake pads

Corrosion

Corrosion can form on the brake discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages. In this case, you can clean the brake discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety information on the brakes on page 115*.

Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Use transmission position N to do so, to prevent the recuperation function from being used for braking.

Brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 400 km, they must first be “bedded in”. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Because recuperation is also used for braking, new brake pads take 800 km to bed in.

The rate of wear on the brake pads depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. For example, the rate of wear will increase if the vehicle is used frequently in city traffic, for short distances, or for hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

Multicollision brake assist system

The multicollision brake assist system can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit detects that a collision has taken place, the ESC system applies the brakes.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

– you apply the accelerator, or
– the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system, or
– the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.

Driver messages about the brake system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the brake system. If and also light up, this means that the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems ▶

have failed. You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails.

Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance. Please refer to the additional safety information.

Brakes: function restricted. You can drive on carefully. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the brake system. There is a risk that the braking effect may be delayed. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

The brake pads are worn. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the brake pads checked.

Brake servo: restricted. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the brake servo. The brake servo remains available with reduced capacity. The brakes may perform differently than usual. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Brake servo will be deactivated shortly. See owner's manual

The brake servo remains active for a short time after the vehicle is switched off. Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away.

Brake cleaning function active

The recuperation function is blocked in certain weather conditions or if parts of the brake system have recently been replaced to ensure that the full braking effect is provided.

Brakes: hot. Please adapt driving style

The brakes have been used intensively. This may be because you left your foot on the brake pedal or adopted a dynamic driving style, for example. You can continue driving. Adapt your driving style to reduce the load on the brakes.

Brakes: risk of overheating. Please select D and use recuperation

The brakes have been used intensively while driving downhill for an extended period. Follow the instructions in the driver message to use the recuperation function and take the load off the brakes.

WARNING

If the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems fail, input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Parking brake

Introduction

The (P) button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

The electromechanical parking brake is intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

Any noises heard when the parking brake is applied or released are quite normal and no cause for concern. Noises may also occur when the vehicle is stationary due to automatic test cycles.

Operating the parking brake

Applying the parking brake via the button

Press the (P) button. The parking brake will be applied. Transmission position P (parking lock) will be selected.

When (P) appears, the parking brake is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.

If the red warning lamp flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied. Take additional measures to secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away when parked.

Applying/releasing the parking brake via the MMI

You can apply and release the parking brake manually, independently of transmission position P (parking lock).

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **More** > **Brakes** > **Electromechanical parking brake**. ▶

To avoid noises when driving off, do not release the parking brake manually when the vehicle is parked on a hill or is heavily loaded.

Putting the vehicle in neutral (to allow it to roll)

To prevent the parking brake from being applied automatically (e.g. in a tunnel car wash), proceed as follows:

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and must be switched on. Press the brake pedal and select transmission position N.

- Confirm the message on the MMI, or
- Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **More** > **Brakes** > **Ability to roll** > **Make vehicle able to roll after exit**.
- When you leave the vehicle, it will still be able to roll.
- To prevent the vehicle from rolling away again, press the (P) button.
- To activate/deactivate the message display when neutral (N) is selected, select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Brakes** > **Ability to roll** > **Show pop-up in position N**.

WARNING

– Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!
– If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always make sure that position P is selected when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
– If the electrical power supply fails, it is not possible to apply the parking brake (if it was released) or to release the parking brake (if it was applied). Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away. Seek professional assistance.

CAUTION

The parking brake must not be allowed to be applied automatically in a tunnel car wash. Make sure that the vehicle is free to roll. Do not switch the vehicle off – risk of damage!

Using the hold function

This function can help you to move off easily, for example at traffic lights, on inclines or in stop-start traffic.

The hold function is generally activated automatically on gradients when the vehicle is stationary. The indicator lamp HOLD will light up.

Important: The driver's door must be closed and/or the driver's seat belt must be buckled. The drive system must be switched on and transmission position D or R or driving program S must be selected.

Depending on the situation, you may need to activate the hold function yourself.

- With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the brake pedal.
- Now increase the pressure on the brake pedal.
- When HOLD appears, the vehicle is being held automatically. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

In certain situations, such as when parking on a hill, the hold function is deactivated automatically to enable manoeuvring. If you want to activate the hold function again, press the brake pedal again more firmly.

When the hold function is switched on, it stops the vehicle from creeping forwards when you take your foot off the brake pedal.

WARNING

– The hold function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy). Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the hold function.
– Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If you come to a standstill without pressing the brake pedal on a steep road, the vehicle may roll back slightly before the hold function ▶

holds the vehicle. In this case, you should press the brake pedal.

Using the emergency braking function

You should only use the emergency braking function in a real emergency, for example if the brake system were to fail or if the brake pedal were to be obstructed. If you use the emergency braking function, this has the same effect as heavy braking.

- Press and hold the Ⓟ button while the vehicle is moving.
- A warning buzzer will sound and the emergency braking procedure will be triggered.
- If you release the button or press the accelerator pedal, the emergency braking procedure will be cancelled.

WARNING

Heavy braking in corners or in bad road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to skid or lose steering control – risk of accident!

Driver messages about the electromechanical parking brake

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

Parking brake: fault. Please release parking brake

If one of these two messages appears, there is a parking brake fault. If this message appears while the vehicle is stationary, check whether the parking brake can be released and reapplied. If so, switch the vehicle off and on again.

If the driver message still appears, if the parking brake cannot be released or if the driver message appears while the vehicle is moving, do not continue driving. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away. Seek professional assistance.

Parking brake: fault. Please contact workshop

HOLD Hold system: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the parking brake or hold function. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the fault rectified. Do not park the vehicle on a slope and secure the vehicle so it cannot roll away.

Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

Hold system: caution! Incline is too steep

If one of these two driver messages appears, the braking force may not be sufficient to prevent the vehicle from rolling away. Park the vehicle at a location with a gradient that is less steep.

Parking brake is applied

The parking brake is applied. Press and hold the brake pedal and release the parking brake.

Please take over.

The vehicle can no longer be held stationary. Press the brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Special driving situations

Information on driving on hills and gradients

Please follow the tips below when driving on hills and gradients or at high altitudes:

– Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
– Do not try to turn round if you can't make it up a hill or gradient. Instead, drive back down in reverse gear.
– When driving down steep gradients, the downhill speed control function may be activated if you press the brake pedal while in transmission position D. The automatic gearbox will then select a suitable gear for the gradient and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the brakes were applied. You should still continue to use the brakes as necessary. Downhill speed control is ▶

deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you accelerate.
– When driving down steep gradients, use the engine braking effect by selecting driving program S. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan. This will reduce the load on the brakes.
– Use the hold function if appropriate.

WARNING

– Drive only on gradients for which your vehicle is designed. Do not exceed the vehicle's available climbing power. Your vehicle could tip over or slide away.
– Keep the vehicle straight when driving on steep hills and gradients. If your vehicle is in danger of tipping over, you must steer in the direction of the gradient immediately – risk of accident!
– Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the downhill speed control.

Information on driving through water

If you cannot avoid driving on a flooded road, you should follow the advice below:

– Check the type of road surface under the water, the strength of the current and the depth of the water. The water **must not be higher than the vehicle's underbody**, even allowing for landslides, strong currents and waves.
– Deactivate the start/stop system.
– Drive carefully and not faster than walking pace so that any waves created by the movement of the car do not splash over the underbody. Bear in mind that waves can also be created by oncoming traffic.
– Do not stop the car in water.
– Do not drive in reverse.
– Do not switch off the drive system.

WARNING

After driving through water, carefully apply the brakes to dry them and restore the full braking power.

CAUTION

– Parts of the vehicle (e.g. drive system, gearbox, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.
– Avoid driving through salt water to prevent corrosion. If any vehicle parts come into contact with salt water, rinse them with fresh water – risk of damage!

Handling dynamics

Audi drive select

Introduction

Audi drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. You can switch between different driving modes, e.g. from a dynamic set-up to a comfortable one. In addition, you can adapt the set-up of individual systems to suit your personal driving style.

Selecting an Audi drive select mode

The drive select button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

- Press the drive select button repeatedly until the desired mode appears in the instrument cluster or on the MMI, or
- Press the drive select button and press the desired mode on the MMI.
- Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **Audi drive select**.
- To activate a + mode, first select the appropriate basic mode if it is not already selected and then select the + mode on the MMI.

You can set a specific Audi drive select mode as your favourite. If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button accordingly, press the ✻ button on the multi-function steering wheel. You can switch between the last selected Audi drive select mode and the favourite.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, briefly take your foot off the accelerator after changing the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the power unit.

The following options are available, depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

balanced – provides a good balance between ride comfort and dynamic performance for everyday use.

individual – allows you to adjust selected vehicle systems as desired. Press ✎ to configure the **individual** mode to your preferred vehicle set-up ⇨ *page 122, Information on individual settings*.

The mode is cancelled again when you switch the vehicle off.

dynamic – gives the vehicle a tighter set-up. Driving program S is selected. The mode is cancelled again when you switch the vehicle off.

dynamic+ – adjusts the vehicle settings for high-performance driving away from public roads. The ESC is restricted in order to enable oversteering handling characteristics. Driving program D is not available in this mode. The mode is cancelled again when you switch the vehicle off.

comfort – alters the vehicle set-up for a more comfortable ride and is suitable for long motorway trips, for instance. The mode is cancelled again when you switch the vehicle off.

efficiency – adjusts the vehicle settings to an economical driving style. Driving program E is selected. The mode is cancelled again when you switch the vehicle off.

Using the Audi drive select assistant

The Audi drive select assistant analyses the type of road and the driving style and selects the appropriate Audi drive select mode.

Availability

The assistant can only choose between specific Audi drive select modes. If you select an incompatible mode, the assistant will be deactivated.

The assistant is cancelled again when you switch the vehicle off.

Activating the Audi drive select assistant

- Press the drive select button, or
- Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **Audi drive select**.
- Press drive select A to activate the assistant.

An A will appear behind the automatically selected mode.

Adjusting the Audi drive select assistant

You can override the automatically selected mode with certain Audi drive select modes. This teaches the assistant your driving style. ▶

It is not possible for the assistant to learn the driving style in certain driving situations, such as during dynamic driving or on motorway slip roads.

▸ Press to reset the learnt behaviour.

Information on individual settings

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which systems you can select:

Drive system

The response of the engine to accelerator pedal movements is more spontaneous or balanced.

Steering

The degree of power assistance can be set from comfortable to dynamic.

Suspension control

The suspension is set for a firmer or more comfortable ride depending on the road surface.

Sound

The sound of the engine is matched to the selected setting and ranges from subdued to dynamic.

quattro

The four-wheel drive power distribution can be changed from balanced to biased towards the rear axle.

Cruise control

During assisted driving, depending on vehicle equipment, the driving behaviour of the adaptive cruise control and the predictive cruise control can be changed between comfortable and dynamic.

Audi virtual cockpit layout

The layout of the instrument cluster can be changed.

Suspension

Information on suspension control

The suspension control is an electronically controlled shock absorber system. The firmness of the shock absorbers is adapted to the road conditions and the driving situation. The settings depend on the Audi drive select mode selected.

Information on ground clearance

The height and ground clearance of the vehicle can be affected by the following factors:

– Changes in vehicle loading

CAUTION

Always ensure that there is sufficient clearance above and below the vehicle. This applies especially when driving into areas with low headroom, e.g. car parks. You should also be aware that the underside of the vehicle can make heavy contact with the ground if you drive onto the kerb or up a steep ramp – risk of damage!

Driver messages about the suspension

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Suspension: fault. You can continue driving

A malfunction has occurred. Driving characteristics may be restricted. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Air suspension: not possible to raise suspension automatically. See owner's manual

The current speed is too high for the lift function to be performed by the Audi assistant. Reduce your speed and activate the lift function manually if required.

Steering

Introduction

The electromechanical steering assists you when steering the vehicle by adapting the degree of power assistance electronically, depending on the speed. The settings depend on the Audi drive select mode selected.

Information on the progressive steering

For increased dynamic performance and vehicle handling, the steering ratio is varied depending on the steering input. The more the steering wheel is turned, the more direct the steering response. This facilitates manoeuvring and provides precise steering feedback at high speeds.

Driver messages about the steering

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

The power assistance may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to allow for the possibility of heavy steering and stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

You can drive on if the warning lamp only lights up briefly.

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The vehicle can no longer be switched on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away. Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Seek professional assistance.

Steering: fault. You can continue driving

There is a fault in the steering system. The steering may be heavier or its response may be more sensitive than usual. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Have the steering checked by a qualified workshop without delay. Please note that the red warning lamp may appear if you restart the drive system, and in this case you must not continue driving.

You can drive on if the indicator lamp only lights up briefly.

Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock – risk of accident!

Four-wheel drive (quattro)

Safety information on the four-wheel drive system

This combination gives the car exceptional handling capabilities – both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points.

WARNING

- Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions – risk of accident!
- The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. Therefore, do not be tempted to drive too fast – risk of accident!
- On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to “aquaplane” and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed, as with a front-wheel drive car. Therefore, do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).

Introduction

The four-wheel drive system varies the distribution of power to the front and rear axles and thus improves the vehicle’s handling characteristics. It interacts with a selective wheel torque control, which may intervene when cornering.

Information on quattro ultra

If four-wheel drive is not required for the current road conditions, the rear part of the drive train is uncoupled in order to save fuel. The system continuously analyses whether four-wheel drive is required. This allows the rear part of the drive train to be recoupled shortly before it is needed.

Information on the sport differential

The sport differential varies the distribution of power between the driven wheels on the rear axle according to the prevailing conditions. A high level of agility and acceleration is therefore achieved during cornering, while the vehicle responds well to steering input. The settings depend on the Audi drive select mode selected.

Driver messages about the four-wheel drive

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Dynamic driving system: fault. Function restricted. Please contact workshop

The function is restricted. You can continue driving carefully. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Dynamic driving system: overheating. Please adapt driving style

The temperature of the drive system has risen significantly. You should avoid performance driving until the temperature drops to the normal level and the indicator lamp goes out.

Four-wheel drive: please check tyres. See owner's manual

A difference in the rolling circumferences of the front and rear tyres has been detected. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern. Check the tyres and correct the tyre pressures if necessary. If the indicator lamp does not disappear, contact a qualified workshop.

Electronic stabilisation control

Safety information on the electronic stabilisation control

WARNING

- The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
- Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.
- When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.
- Increasing the load the vehicle is carrying – particularly its roof load – raises the vehicle's centre of gravity and therefore also increases the risk of the vehicle tipping over. Adapt your driving style to suit the conditions and avoid performing any dynamic manoeuvres – risk of accident!

Introduction

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer, wheelspin on the driven wheels or any danger of the vehicle tipping over. ▶

It stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the engine torque.

The ABS and ASR systems can only work properly if all four tyres have a similar degree of wear. Any differences in the rolling circumference of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.

The systems can make noises when they intervene.

Overview of functions of the electronic stabilisation control

The stabilisation functions integrated in the ESC system include the following:

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes.

There may be noises while the anti-lock brake system is working.

Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the torque to match the amount of grip available. This increases driving stability.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheels and directs the power to the other wheels. This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Selective wheel torque control

The selective wheel torque control function intervenes when cornering by braking the wheels on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering.

Steering assistance

The ESC can also intervene via the steering in order to stabilise the vehicle.

Using the electronic stabilisation control

The OFF button (on some vehicles) for operating the ESC is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The ESC is switched on automatically when the vehicle is switched on.

Systems which can apply the brakes automatically may be partially or completely unavailable if the ESC is restricted, switched off or malfunctioning.

If there are faults in other systems or if specific driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on for system-related reasons. The ESC is switched on automatically if necessary and cannot be operated via the button in this case.

Restricting the ESC

In certain situations it may be appropriate to restrict the stabilisation functions of the ESC so that the wheels can spin – for example, when rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it, or when driving with snow chains fitted. The ESC can also be restricted if reduced stabilisation input is desired during performance driving.

– To restrict the ESC, press the OFF button briefly. The indicator lamp will light up.
– To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamp will go out.

Switching off the ESC

For more active control of the vehicle with no input from the ESC stabilisation functions, the ESC system can be switched off completely.

– To switch off the ESC, press and hold the OFF button for more than 3 seconds. The indicator lamps and ESC OFF will light up.
– To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamps will go out. ▶

WARNING

– If the ESC has been switched off or if its functions have been restricted, the vehicle will not be stabilised at all or will only be stabilised to a limited degree. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!
– Only drive the vehicle with the ESC switched off or with restricted functions if this is necessary. You should switch the ESC on again as soon as possible.

Driver messages about the electronic stabilisation control

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault! See owner's manual

There is a fault in the ABS or EDL. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Further indicator lamps

If flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC is intervening. Noises may be heard while this is happening. If the indicator lamp lights up permanently, the ESC system has been switched off for system reasons. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

High-voltage system

Safely handling the high-voltage system

Safety information on the high-voltage system

Components of the high-voltage system

The high-voltage system includes the high-voltage battery, electric motor, air conditioner and charging socket. All components of the high-voltage system can be clearly identified based on their orange cables or are marked with a high-voltage warning label.

The high-voltage battery is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

Maintenance work on the high-voltage system

All work on the high-voltage system must be carried out solely by high-voltage technicians and workshops who are authorised according to Audi's regulations and the legislation in the relevant country.

WARNING

Risk of fatal injury due to high voltage! Even when the vehicle is switched off, potentially lethal voltages still exist in the high-voltage system.

– Do not insert any objects in the vehicle charging socket or charging equipment, such as when cleaning them. If you wish to clean the charging unit or charging equipment, only use a dry cloth. Do not use any other tools such as screwdrivers or brushes.
– Do not touch the contacts on the vehicle charging socket and charging equipment.
– Damage to high-voltage components is not always visible, particularly after an accident. Never touch the high-voltage components or orange high-voltage cables after the vehicle has been involved in an accident. Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted.
– Never perform work on the high-voltage components or orange high-voltage cables.
– Never make modifications or repairs to electrical components and in particular to the high-voltage system.
– Never use cutting, forming or sharp-edged tools or heat sources in the vicinity of high-voltage components and orange high-voltage cables.

WARNING

Caustic fluids can cause injury. Avoid all contact with any fluids escaping from the high-voltage battery.

– If such fluids come into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.

CAUTION

The high-voltage battery is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment. If damage occurs to the vehicle's body, such as if the underbody makes hard contact with the ground or in the event of an accident, the high-voltage system may also be damaged. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle checked.

What to do in hazardous situations

General rules

Hazardous situations may occur if a driver message is shown or if you can smell smoke or gas. In the event of a hazardous situation, you should behave as follows:

– Do not inhale the fumes.
– Ensure that you and all other occupants have left the danger area and remain in an area which is safe from all traffic (e.g. behind a roadside crash barrier).
– Inform the emergency services.
– Do not attempt to extinguish any fires yourself.
– Do not try to move the vehicle.

In the event of a technical emergency, inform the emergency services and service team that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery. ▶

8B1012720AG

Driver messages

HV battery: risk of fire! Safely stop vehicle immediately and evacuate. Emergency services!

If this driver message appears, there is a risk of fire due to a severe fault in the high-voltage battery. You should behave as follows:

– Stop the vehicle without delay, paying attention to the traffic situation.
– You should use a safe place in the open, keeping a safe distance from buildings, other vehicles, overhanging roofs, carports or other structures.
– Switch the hazard warning lights on, if possible.
– Apply the parking brake.
– Switch the vehicle off.
– To assist the emergency services, leave the vehicle key in a visible location in the vehicle, e.g. in the centre console.
– Get out of the vehicle immediately and make sure that no other persons or animals remain in the vehicle.
– Ensure that you and all other occupants have left the danger area and remain in an area which is safe from all traffic (e.g. behind a roadside crash barrier).
– Continue to follow the general rules ⇨ *page 127*.

The acoustic warning inside the vehicle can only be deactivated by a qualified workshop.

Protective functions in the event of a fault

In the event of a serious fault in the high-voltage battery, the vehicle may trigger additional protective functions (e.g. the hazard warning lights may be switched on or the horn may sound after the vehicle is switched off).

WARNING

If there is a risk of fire in high-voltage battery cells, toxic gases may escape or high-voltage components may be live. Risk of severe injuries, burns or a fatal electric shock.

– Get out of the vehicle and evacuate all persons and animals.
– Ensure that you and all other occupants have left the danger area.

Driver messages about the high-voltage electrical system

If the warning lamp or the indicator lamp lights up, there is a fault in the power supply or the high-voltage battery.

High-voltage electrical system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

If this driver message appears, stop the vehicle safely and do not drive on. The drive system may be switched off automatically ⇨ ⚠. Switch the vehicle off. Seek professional assistance.

High-voltage electrical system: fault. No restart possible. Please contact workshop without delay

Once you switch off the drive system (e.g. by selecting P), it will not be possible to restart the vehicle. The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

High-voltage electrical system: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a fault in the high-voltage system. Certain vehicle functions may be restricted. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

WARNING

A fault in the high-voltage electrical system can cause vehicle functions to fail, thus impairing the vehicle's stability – risk of accident! Switch the vehicle off and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Charging infrastructure labelling

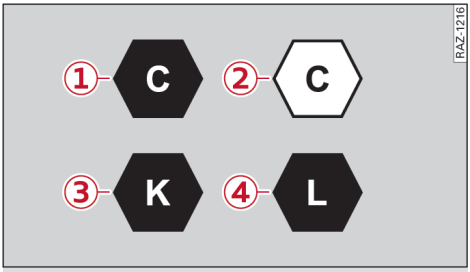


Fig. 73 Labels used on charging infrastructure

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure[1)]

	Meaning
①	Vehicle: label for alternating current (AC) and type 2 connector
②	Charging station: label for alternating current (AC) and type 2 connector
③	Vehicle: label for direct current (DC) and CCS connector with a voltage of 50 V to 500 V
④	Vehicle: label for direct current (DC) and CCS connector with a voltage of 200 V to 920 V

The DIN EN 17186 labels indicate whether the local power supply is suitable for the vehicle. They can be found on the vehicle's charging unit, on the components of the local charging infrastructure (charging station, mains socket) and on the charging equipment. The labels are designed to help you find the appropriate charging station for your vehicle. They refer to standardised charging systems that conform to the DIN EN 62196 standard.

Information on charging stations

Audi recommends that you only charge the vehicle at charging stations which meet the standards applicable in your country and the following standards at minimum:

– IEC 61851 and IEC 62196 (Europe)
– SAE J1772 (North America, Japan)
– GB/T 18487.1 and GB/T 20234 (China)

[1)] May vary in different countries.

Charging at home and abroad

Audi charging systems are designed for use in private and semi-public areas (e.g. on private land or in company car parks). In some countries, the Audi charging system may also be used at charging stations with a domestic or industrial connection. Before travelling abroad, please always ensure that you are carrying suitable charging equipment for the country in which you are travelling. For more information, contact a qualified workshop. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

The following may apply in some countries:

– Using a charging system with an operating unit (mode 2, such as an Audi charging system) may be prohibited in public areas, e.g. in Italy and New Zealand.
– Charging at domestic power outlets may be prohibited, e.g. in Abu Dhabi, Israel, Singapore and India.

Careful use of the high-voltage battery

A plug-in hybrid vehicle is equipped with an electric and a conventional drive system. The electric drive system is powered by a high-voltage battery (also known as a hybrid battery or traction battery) and supports the combustion engine according to the situation.

Lithium-ion batteries are subject to ageing and wear over the course of their lifetime due to their physical and chemical properties. In addition to this, the ageing process of high-voltage batteries is affected by how the battery is used. Following the advice below on careful use of the high-voltage battery can significantly help to maintain a high usable capacity. Please also observe the conditions of the Audi warranty related to the high-voltage battery.

– The ageing process can be accelerated and the available range reduced if the high-voltage battery is frequently charged to its maximum capacity. For everyday use, you should only charge the high-voltage battery to 80 %. To do this, ▶

set the charging target to a value of no higher than 80 % ⇨ *page 136*.
– If you charge the high-voltage battery to 100 %, drive off as soon as possible after charging. Set a departure time to reduce the amount of time during which the vehicle remains stationary with a battery charge level of 100 % ⇨ *page 137*.
– Ensure a good balance between use of the electric drive system and use of the conventional drive system. If only the electric drive system is used to power the vehicle for extended periods, the high-voltage battery will wear more quickly.
– Avoid discharging the high-voltage battery quickly as a result of repeated abrupt acceleration when the vehicle is being powered solely by the electric motor or when using the boost function.
– You should only charge the vehicle at a domestic power outlet if an industrial AC power outlet or a public AC or DC charging station is not available. If the mains voltage is less than 200 V, it may not be possible to charge the vehicle at a domestic power outlet, e.g. due to a charging capacity limitation being activated.
– Do not use your vehicle to jump-start another vehicle. This could cause serious damage to your vehicle's electrical system.

Information on breaks between uses

The high-voltage battery may become deeply discharged if there is an **extended break between uses** (longer than 4 weeks). Irreparable damage may occur if the battery becomes deeply discharged. Following the advice below can help prevent the high-voltage battery from becoming deeply discharged during a longer break between uses.

– Break between uses without charging equipment: Before parking the vehicle, make sure the remaining battery charge is between 30 % and 80 %. The longer the vehicle is to remain stationary for, the higher the charge level of the high-voltage battery should be (max. 80 %).
– Break between uses with charging equipment constantly available: Plug the charging equipment into the vehicle and set the charging target to 50 %. Deactivate automatic unlocking of the charging connector ⇨ *page 138*. If applicable, observe the information on prices and parking times provided by the charging station operator.

CAUTION

The high-voltage battery can be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to discharge completely. Even if the vehicle is not used, the charge level of the high-voltage battery will drop naturally over time, potentially leading to deep discharge.
– If you do not use the vehicle for an extended period, you should charge the high-voltage battery after 4 months at the latest, or connect the vehicle permanently to the power supply and set the charging target to 50 % ⇨ *page 136*.
– Charge the high-voltage battery within 2 months if the remaining electrical range shows 0 km. Charge the high-voltage battery immediately if the remaining electrical range shows 0 km and the vehicle will not be used for an indeterminate period.

Displaying information on the high-voltage battery

Calling up the battery data menu

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **Servicing** > **Vehicle data** > **Battery data**.

High-voltage battery state of health

The high-voltage battery state of health section shows the energy content of the high-voltage battery compared to the certified energy content when the battery is new. The value is given as a percentage. The distance driven since the last time the high-voltage battery state of health was updated is also shown. User-specific charging behaviour may affect the accuracy of the information shown. Audi recommends calibrating the high-voltage battery to obtain the most accurate value possible (e.g. before selling the vehicle).

To calibrate the high-voltage battery yourself, perform the steps listed below. Please note that ▶

the outside temperature where the vehicle is parked must not be below -5°C.

- Make sure the charge level is below 7 % when you park the vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle; leave it locked and do not move it for at least three hours.
- Charge the high-voltage battery to 100 % using alternating current.
- Lock the vehicle; leave it locked and do not move it for at least three hours.
- Once this time has passed, calibration is complete. The display showing the distance driven since the information was last updated will have been reset.

High-voltage battery charging capacity

The high-voltage battery charging capacity section shows the current maximum possible charging capacity compared to the actual charging capacity being used to charge.

Charging the high-voltage battery

Safety information on charging

WARNING

Risk of fatal injury if charging is not carried out correctly. Short circuits, electric shocks, explosions, fire and severe burns may occur.

– Do not charge the vehicle at a power outlet or electrical installation if it shows signs of damage or improper installation.
– Never use damaged and/or dirty charging equipment. Always check the charging equipment for obvious signs of damage before use.
– Always place the charging system on a stable surface when using it.
– Never charge the vehicle in potentially explosive atmospheres. The components of the charging equipment can produce sparks and ignite flammable or explosive vapours.
– To reduce the risk of explosions, especially in garages, please ensure that the operating unit of the charging system is placed on a stable surface and is at least 50 cm above the ground during charging.
– Always protect power outlets and plug connections against water, humidity and other fluids.
– Protect the equipment so that it cannot be run over, dropped, pulled, bent or crushed.
– Never charge the vehicle simultaneously at both vehicle charging sockets.
– Use only the factory-supplied charging equipment provided with your vehicle or the charging cable at the charging station.

CAUTION

The high-voltage components in your vehicle may be damaged at altitudes higher than 4500 m above mean sea level. The high-voltage components are not designed for charging at altitudes higher than 4500 m above mean sea level.

– Do not charge the vehicle at altitudes higher than 4500 m above mean sea level.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 360, Information on waste disposal*.

Overview of charging methods and charging cables

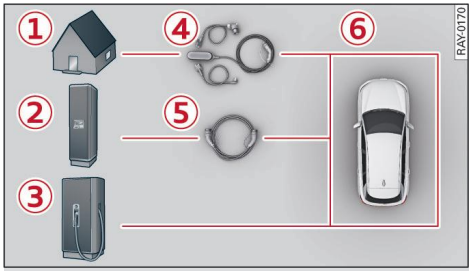


Fig. 74 Overview of charging options

Charging sockets may be located in the following places on the vehicle ⑥:

– Rear left side

Charging methods

Depending on the charging socket, the following charging methods may be possible:

Charging method	Charging socket on vehicle
① Charging at a domestic or industrial power outlet	Left
② + ③ Charging at a public charging station (with AC power)	Left

Charging cable

Various charging cables can be used depending on the charging method:

– ④ **Charging systems (mode 2)** allow for charging at domestic and industrial power outlets. Only charge using domestic power outlets in exceptional cases when there is no other charging method available. This will enable you to achieve a higher efficiency and a significantly lower charging time.
– ⑤ **Charging cables (mode 3)**[1] allow for charging at public charging stations using alternating current (AC) if there is no charging cable available at the charging station.
– **Charging station charging cables** allow for charging at public charging stations using alternating current (AC).

Information on the charging time

The amount of time required to charge the vehicle can vary depending on the following:
– Type of power outlet used (domestic or industrial).
– Current load on the charging infrastructure.
– The country's grid voltage, current rating and number of phases available.
– Mains output of the domestic connection.
– Charging capacity setting in the vehicle's charging settings or on Audi charging system operating unit.
– Fluctuations in mains supply.
– Ambient temperature surrounding the vehicle.
– Temperature of high-voltage battery and Audi charging system operating unit.
– Ageing condition of the high-voltage battery.
– Air conditioner settings for interior temperature.
– Electrical capacity of charging connector.
– Vehicle switched on/off.

Starting the charging cycle

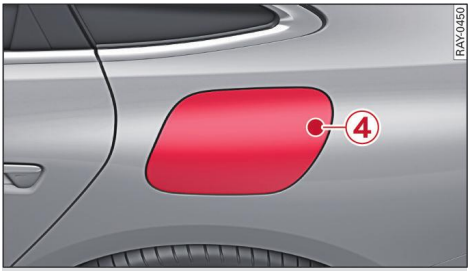


Fig. 75 Vehicle as seen from the rear left: Opening charging flap

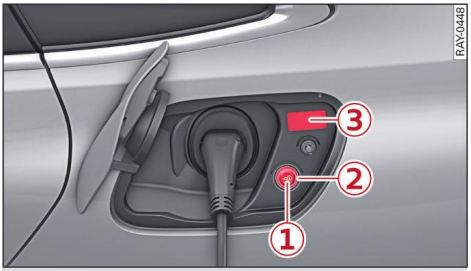


Fig. 76 Rear left side of vehicle: Charging unit consisting of charging socket, button and LED

The sequence of the steps may vary when you charge your vehicle at a public charging station. Follow the instructions and operating tips provided by the charging station manufacturer.

Important: Transmission position P must be selected and the vehicle must be secured to prevent it rolling away.

▸ Make sure that your preferred charging settings are set for the impending charging cycle before connecting the charging cable. This includes, for example, whether the vehicle should ▶

[1] Depending on country

be charged immediately or at a later time ⇨ *page 136*.

- Take the charging cable out of the vehicle if necessary.
- Remove the protective caps on the charging cable if necessary.
- Connect the charging cable to the power supply or take it out of the charging station.
- Unwind the charging cable completely.
- To open the charging flap, press on the right side of the charging flap ④.
- Plug the charging connector into the vehicle charging socket and push it in for 5 seconds to secure it in the charging socket. The charging connector will be locked in place. If a departure time has not been set, the charging cycle begins immediately when the charging connector is locked and (if applicable) the charging station is activated.

If you hear a noise when plugging in the charging connector, this may be because the parking brake is being applied.

The charging connector remains locked during charging. The LED on the charging unit ② and the instrument cluster show the current charging status. A sticker ③ on the charging unit describes the various charging status indicators.

There may be some interference in the vehicle's onboard systems, such as radio reception, while the vehicle is being charged.

WARNING

Please observe the safety information on charging ⇨ *page 131* and charging equipment ⇨ *page 138*.

Ending the charging cycle

You can interrupt and terminate the charging cycle at any time.

If there is ice or snow on the charging unit, remove it with a small brush and a solvent-free deicer spray.

- Unlock the vehicle. On vehicles with convenience key, it is sufficient for the convenience key to be near the charging unit.
- With the vehicle unlocked, press the button ① ⇨ *page 132, Fig. 76*.
- Unplug the charging connector.
- Close the charging flap.
- Disconnect the charging cable from the power supply if necessary or secure it to the charging station again.
- Put available protective caps back onto the charging cable.
- If you are transporting the charging cable in the vehicle, stow it safely ⇨ *page 139*.

WARNING

– Please observe the safety information on charging ⇨ *page 131* and charging equipment ⇨ *page 138*.
– Do not unplug the charging cable from the charging socket or the vehicle charging socket while the vehicle is being charged. Terminate the charging cycle before you unplug the charging cable from the socket – risk of fatal burns and electric shock.
– Never drive the vehicle when the charging flap is open. An open charging flap could strike another road user – risk of injury!
– If the charging unit is damaged, or if the charging flap cannot be closed or is missing, drive immediately to a workshop and have this rectified – risk of injury!

CAUTION

– The charging flap and the electronic components behind it can be damaged if you drive with the charging flap open. After charging and before starting a journey, please check that the charging flap is properly closed.
– Do not unplug the charging cable from the charging socket or the vehicle charging socket while the vehicle is being charged. Terminate the charging cycle before you unplug the charging cable from the socket – risk of damage to the connector contacts due to spark generation.

Troubleshooting during charging

Charging connector is plugged in but charging does not start or starts in emergency charging mode

It may not be possible to lock the charging connector as it is not fully engaged.

- Plug the charging connector into the vehicle charging socket again and push it firmly into the charging socket for 5 seconds. This keeps the charging connector in the optimal position and enables it to be locked automatically.

Charging connector cannot be unplugged from charging socket

If it is not possible to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle, a fault may have occurred. Perform the following steps in the order given and try to unplug the charging connector after each one:

- Make sure that charging has ended.
- With the vehicle unlocked, press the button (1) ⇨ *page 132, Fig. 76*.
- Switch the vehicle on and off again.
- Lock and unlock the vehicle.
- Ensure that the auxiliary air conditioner is not activated.
- If it is still not possible to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle, you will need to release it manually ⇨ *page 135*.

At temperatures below freezing, the charging connector may be frozen. Seek professional assistance.

Charging connector cannot be unplugged from charging station

- Make sure that charging has ended.
- Authenticate yourself again on the charging station and try to unplug the charging connector.
- If it is still not possible to unplug the charging connector from the charging station, please contact the operator of the charging station.

Charging status

You can see the charging status on the charging unit or in the instrument cluster.

Reading the charging status on the charging unit

There is an LED on the charging unit that displays the current charging status (2) ⇨ *page 132, Fig. 76*. A sticker (3) on the charging unit describes the various indicators.

LED on charging unit		Meaning
off		Vehicle charging system in standby mode. Charging is not active.
white	pulsating	Charging is starting/ending.
	lit	Charging cycle has been interrupted. Charging connector is still locked.

LED on charging unit		Meaning
green	pulsating	The high-voltage battery is being charged.
	flashing	Waiting for charging cycle based on set departure time or location-specific setting.
	lit	The charging target has been reached and the charging cycle has ended. Observe the automatic connector release settings ⇨ *page 138*.
red	lit	The vehicle cannot be charged due to a fault. Please note the messages in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 135*.

Reading the charging status in the instrument cluster

The symbol shows the same charging status as the LED on the charging unit.

In addition, depending on which view is selected, the following information on the charging cycle may be displayed in the instrument cluster:

Symbol	Meaning
	Range
	Remaining charging time
	Battery charge level
	Date and time of the completed charging cycle/planned departure time
AC	Charging capacity of AC charging cycle

Releasing the charging connector/charging flap manually

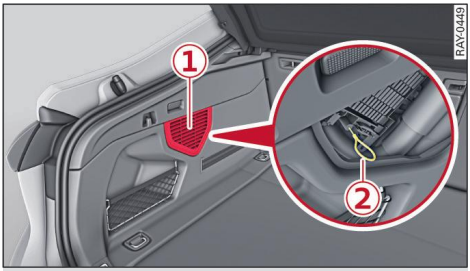


Fig. 77 Left side of luggage compartment: Manual release mechanism for charging connector

Having the charging flap released manually

- If you cannot open the charging flap, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Releasing the charging connector manually

Important: The vehicle must be unlocked.

- End the charging cycle.
- Open the boot lid.
- Remove the cover (1) by levering it off with a screwdriver.
- Carefully pull the yellow ring (2) ⇨ (!).
- Unplug the charging connector immediately.
- Put the cover (1) back in its original position.
- Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

If the charging connector cannot be removed after the manual release procedure, there is still a malfunction. At temperatures below freezing, the charging connector may be frozen. In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

CAUTION

Stop pulling the ring when you feel resistance (the release mechanism is not audible). Otherwise, you could damage the manual release mechanism.

Driver messages about the high-voltage system

If the indicator lamp lights up, the range is very low. Charge the high-voltage battery.

If the indicator lamp and a driver message about the charging system appear, charging is not possible or is restricted. Please contact a qualified workshop.

Charging system: fault. AC charging restricted. Please contact workshop ▶

If this driver message appears, plug the charging connector into the charging socket again and push it firmly into the charging socket for 5 seconds. If the driver message is still shown, the vehicle is being charged with reduced power as an emergency measure. Drive to a qualified workshop after the charging cycle.

Vehicle charging connection: charging flap fault. See owner's manual

This message appears if the charging flap lock is defective. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Connector locking system: fault. See owner's manual

This message appears if the charging connector was not locked correctly in the charging socket. Unplug the charging connector, plug it into the charging socket again and press it firmly into the charging socket for 5 seconds. Alternatively, try using a different charging station. If a fault occurs when unlocking the charging connector, operate the manual release mechanism for the charging connector. If the driver message continues to appear, seek professional assistance.

Charging system: fault. Error in charging infrastructure. See owner's manual

This message appears, for example, if the time limit for starting the charging cycle has been exceeded or the charging station/system is incompatible. Unplug the charging connector and plug it into the vehicle's charging socket again and authenticate yourself at the charging station. If the message is still shown, use a different charging station, charge the vehicle with an Audi charging system or seek professional assistance.

Charging system: fault. Charging aborted. See owner's manual

This message appears if there is a fault in the vehicle or the charging station. Plug the charging connector in again. If charging is still not possible, use a different charging system. If charging is also not possible at a different charging station, please contact the network provider.

– The temperature of the charging socket may be too high. Unplug the charging connector and wait for the vehicle and the charging socket to cool down. Plug the charging connector in again and start the charging cycle.
– The capacity of the charging socket may be too low. You should therefore use a charging socket with a higher capacity.

If the message is still shown, contact a qualified workshop.

Charging settings

Calling up the charging menu

In the **Charging** menu you can adjust the charging settings, e.g. you can change the charging target or set charging locations and departure times:
– Select: ⊞ > **Charging**.

You can adjust some of the charging settings on the goodbye screen on the centre display after you have switched the vehicle off.

Using a charging target

You can use the charging target to set a maximum level for charging the high-voltage battery. This function can help charge the vehicle with the least impact on the longevity of the high-voltage battery, for example. See ⇨ *page 129* for information on careful use of the high-voltage battery.

The set charging target is stored and applied to all charging cycles. Exception: If you use the e-tron route planner, the set charging target will not be used.

Setting a charging target

▸ Open the **Charging** menu ⇨ *page 136* and set the charging target via the slider.

If you set a charging target which is lower than the current charge level when charging the vehicle, the charging cycle will be cancelled. The charging cycle will be resumed when you set a charging target which is higher than the current charge level. This is not the case if you are using a charging station at which you have authenticated yourself manually. In this case you will need to ▶

authenticate yourself at the charging station again.

Using a charging location

You can use a charging location to define a location where you want location-specific charging settings to apply. These are automatically applied when your vehicle is in the vicinity of a specified charging location.

A charging location must be specified in order to use the departure time function.

Adding and managing charging locations

- Open the **Charging** menu ⇨ *page 136* and select **Charging locations**.
- To add a new charging location, select **New charging location** and follow the instructions on the display.
- To change the existing settings for a charging location, select the charging location and press ✎.
- To delete a charging location, press and hold the appropriate charging location and press 🗑.

Location-specific charging settings

- Preferred charging time (e.g. to use a cost-effective electricity tariff).
- Reduce AC charging current.

Preferred charging time

If you activate this function, the vehicle is charged within a charging window defined by you. If the charging time is too short, the specified charging target may not be reached. To ensure that a particular charging target is reached by your departure time, you should also program a departure time. When a departure time is activated the vehicle can also be charged outside of the defined charging window. Please be aware that this may result in additional costs being incurred.

Reduce AC charging current

This function can reduce the load on the electrical installation and prevent it from overheating or becoming overloaded, for example if several items of electrical equipment are connected to the same circuit.

Using a departure time

Introduction

Using a departure time has the following advantages:

- The vehicle interior is optimally pre-heated or pre-cooled by the departure time.
- The high-voltage battery can be charged with the least impact on longevity as it will only reach a high charge level shortly before the departure time.

The following options can be selected for a departure time:
- Air conditioning without charging
- Charging with air conditioning
- Charging without air conditioning

Adding a departure time

The following applies to a departure time with a charging cycle: The location at which you want to charge must be set as a charging location ⇨ *page 137*.

- Open the **Charging** menu ⇨ *page 136* and press **Departure times**.
- To add a new departure time, press **Add new departure time**.
- Select the desired departure time and day of the week.
- If you wish to set multiple days of the week, press **Repeat** next to the selection of days of the week. Select the desired days of the week.
- Select the option (**Air conditioning**/**Charging**) that you want to be applied for the departure time. You cannot change the options again once the configuration is complete.
- Complete the configuration.

Managing departure times

- To switch an existing departure time on/off, press ⊂⊃/⊂⊃.
- To revise an existing departure time, press on the departure time.
- To delete an existing departure time, press and hold the appropriate departure time and select 🗑.

8B1012720AG

Automatically release AC connector

When this function is activated, the charging connector will be released automatically after AC charging. This allows you or someone else to unplug the charging connector even when the vehicle is locked. This function is useful to avoid blocking a charging station for longer than necessary or to allow the charging connector to be unplugged in a private area without needing the vehicle key.

- Open the **Charging** menu ⇨ *page 136* and select ⚙.
- Before each charging cycle, you should check whether the current setting is the one desired for the current charging cycle.

CAUTION

The function should only be activated when the charging cable is part of the charging station. If you use your own charging cable, it will not be protected against theft.

Charging equipment

Safety information on charging equipment

Purpose of use for Audi charging systems

Charging device for charging mode 2 for charging Audi vehicles with a high-voltage battery which comply with the generally applicable standards and regulations for electric vehicles.

Notes on using the charging equipment

Please note the following information for safe handling of the charging equipment:

– Whenever possible, disconnect charging systems from the charging infrastructure during thunderstorms.
– Protect the equipment so that it cannot be run over, dropped, pulled, bent or crushed.
– To prevent overheating during use, do not expose charging systems to direct sunlight for long periods of time. If the operating unit overheats, the charging cycle is automatically interrupted until the temperature drops again to within the normal range.
– Do not immerse the charging equipment in water. Keep it protected against snow and ice.
– When you unplug the charging cable from the vehicle and from the power supply, pull only the connectors, not the cable.
– Put the protective caps back on after using the charging cable.
– Only use the Audi charging system in a power grid with a mains frequency of 50 Hz/60 Hz.
– Use and store the Audi charging system only when the relative humidity is between 5 % and 95 % (non-condensing).
– The Audi charging system is protected against dust and water jets (IP55).
– For uninterrupted charging, Audi recommends only charging the vehicle at power outlets which are connected via a separately fused power circuit.
– Audi recommends keeping charging systems in the clip wall mount during operation.

The warnings attached to the charging equipment may vary in different countries:

Symbol	Meaning
-30	Use and store the Audi charging system at temperatures between -30°C and +50°C.
≤4000m	Use and store the Audi charging system at altitudes of max. 4000 m above mean sea level.
≤5000m	Use and store the Audi charging system at altitudes of max. 5000 m above mean sea level.
PE	The Audi charging system is equipped with an unswitched protective earth conductor.
PE	The Audi charging system is equipped with a switched protective earth conductor.
PE	Do not use the Audi charging system in unearthed power networks (e.g. IT networks). Only use the Audi charging system in earthed power networks.

Symbol	Meaning
	Surfaces can become very hot if exposed to direct sunlight.
	Improper use may result in electric shocks.
	Please refer to the associated operating instructions and read the safety instructions.
	Please follow the waste disposal rules.
	Do not use extension cables or cable reels.
	Do not use socket adapters, such as travel adapters or timer adapters.
	Do not use multiple outlet power sockets.
	Do not use charging cables if the connector leads or electronics have been damaged.

WARNING

Risk of fatal injury if incorrectly installed electrical sockets or incorrect charging infrastructure are used. Electric shock or fire may occur.

– The home power outlet for charging systems must be installed and commissioned by a qualified electrician. The electrician is responsible for full compliance with existing regulations and standards.
– Make sure that the domestic power outlet is earthed and protected from water.
– Charging systems should be used in properly earthed power grids. Operation in unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) is only possible using charging systems with deactivated protective earth conductor monitoring ⇨ *page 142*.
– If charging systems do not operate as described in the operating instructions, they must not be used. Please contact a qualified workshop.
– The electrical installation can be loaded to maximum capacity when the high-voltage battery is charged via the domestic/industrial power outlet. Audi recommends that the electrical installations used for charging be checked regularly by an electrician.
– Charging systems approved by Audi are only suitable for use with Audi vehicles. These charging systems are not approved for use with vehicles manufactured by other companies.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 360, Information on waste disposal*.

Transporting charging equipment

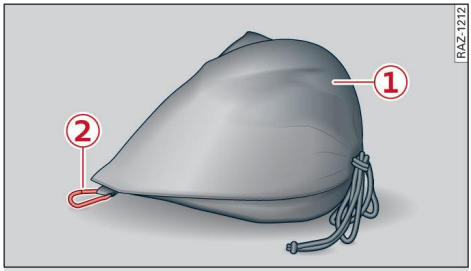


Fig. 78 Transport bag

Stowing a charging system in the transport bag

▸ Open the boot lid.
▸ Put the charging equipment in the transport bag ① and tie a knot in the bag to close it.
▸ Attach the hook ② to one of the fastening rings in the luggage compartment.

As long as a knot can be tied in the transport bag, you can transport any charging equipment in the transport bag. ▶

WARNING

Unsecured, improperly secured or incorrectly positioned vehicle charging equipment can become dislodged and injure the vehicle occupants during braking or turning manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

– The charging equipment should be stowed in the luggage compartment where it should be placed inside the transport bag or secured with a luggage net or similar.
– The charging equipment must NOT be transported in the passenger compartment.

CAUTION

Always lift or carry the Audi charging system as a unit and never by the cables.

Using a charging cable (mode 3) for public charging stations with AC power[1)]

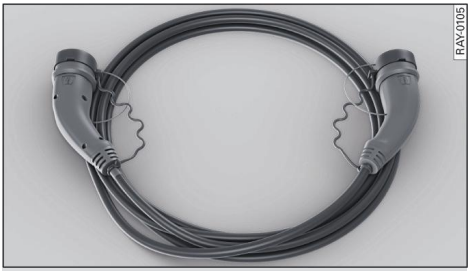


Fig. 79 Charging cable for public charging stations with AC power (example)

You can use this charging cable to charge your vehicle at public charging stations with AC power if they do not have an integrated charging cable. Please note the procedure for starting the charging cycle.

Charging with the charging cable may not be possible at charging stations which have a higher current rating than the cable rating. Please note the information and notices at the charging station.

Many of the electrical installations in Norway are designed based on different technical rules than those commonly used in Europe. You must only use a charging cable with a cross-section of 5 x 6 mm². Please note the specifications on the charging cable. Before embarking on a trip to Norway, check whether the charging cable on your vehicle is suitable for these types of charging station.

CAUTION

Do not use the charging cable as an extension cable for the Audi charging system. This will cause a charging cycle malfunction.

Using the Audi e-tron compact charging system (mode 2)

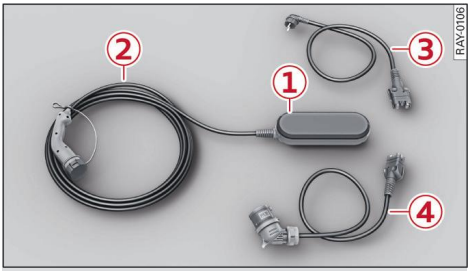


Fig. 80 Audi e-tron compact charging system: Components (example)

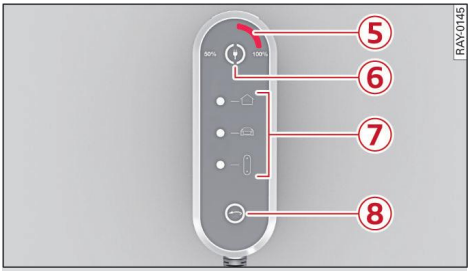


Fig. 81 Audi e-tron compact charging system: Operating unit

1) Depending on country

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 127, Safely handling the high-voltage system*.

You can use the Audi e-tron compact charging system to charge the vehicle at a domestic or industrial power outlet. The following accessories may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

① Operating unit

② Vehicle cable with vehicle charging connector

③ Mains cable with mains plug for domestic power outlets

④ Mains cable with mains plug for industrial power outlets

The vehicle cable is permanently connected to the operating unit. The mains cable is plugged into the top end of the operating unit and can be changed.

Overview of operating unit

⑤[a]	Safety warning: Only set the charging capacity to 100 % if the charging infrastructure has been checked by a qualified electrician; otherwise the charging infrastructure may be damaged e.g. by scorching ⇨ *page 127, Safely handling the high-voltage system*.	
⑥	ON/OFF button, charging capacity and LED	
⑦	Status LED:	
		Power grid/domestic connection
		Vehicle
		Control console
⑧		Reset

[a] Depending on country

Charging

Please note the procedure for starting the charging cycle.

Important: The correct mains plug must be fitted.

– Connect the mains plug to the power outlet.
– Plug the vehicle charging connector into the vehicle charging socket.
– The charging cycle starts automatically.
– After the charging cycle, unlock the vehicle and unplug the vehicle charging connector from the vehicle charging socket.

Limiting the charging capacity

You can limit the charging capacity and therefore also the charging current used. You can specify whether you want to charge at reduced (50 %) or full (100 %) capacity. Full charging capacity (100 %) achieves the shortest charging time; it should only be selected if the electrical installation has been checked by a qualified electrician. Reduced charging capacity (50 %) can reduce the load on the electrical installation and prevent it from overheating or becoming overloaded, for example if several items of electrical equipment are connected to the same circuit.

Depending on the charging system, note the following characteristics with regard to limiting the charging capacity:

– When using a domestic power outlet, the most recent setting is always stored and is called up again for the next charging cycle.
– Applies to charging system with 3.6 kW, 7.2 kW or 11 kW: When using an industrial power outlet, the most recent setting is always called up.
– Applies to charging system with 9.6 kW: When using an industrial power outlet, the charging capacity limitation is reset to 50 % when there is no longer any mains supply to the charging system (e.g. due to the mains plug being unplugged).

If the mains voltage is less than 200 V, it is only possible to charge the vehicle at a domestic power outlet if the charging capacity is set to 100 %. The charging cycle may not start if this is not the case. ▶

Before each charging cycle, you should check whether the last charging capacity setting is desired for the current charging cycle.

– To activate the charging capacity limitation, press and hold the button 6 ⇨ *Fig. 81* for at least two seconds.

The status LEDs ⌂, and will flash once in green when the charging capacity limitation has been successfully adjusted. The setting (50 % or 100 %) will be displayed on the left or right of the button.

Activating/deactivating protective earth (PE) conductor monitoring

Please read the safety information on PE conductor monitoring ⇨ ⚠.

If PE conductor monitoring has interrupted the charging cycle and the LED on the operating unit 6 ⇨ *Fig. 81* and the two status LEDs ⌂ and are lit in red, you should deactivate PE conductor monitoring as follows:

– To deactivate PE conductor monitoring, press and hold buttons 6 and 8 ⇨ *Fig. 81* simultaneously for six seconds. The status LED will flash in white while you are doing so. Release the buttons again for one second.

– Press and hold both buttons and again for six seconds. Deactivation will take place automatically after a brief interval. The LED on the operating unit 6 will pulsate in green and the two status LEDs ⌂ and will light up in yellow.

– To activate PE conductor monitoring, press and hold buttons and until the status LEDs and go out. The reset will occur automatically after a brief interval.

Status and fault indicators on the operating unit

When the power supply is connected or restored, the operating unit performs a self-test routine. All the LEDs will light up in green for two seconds if the self-test routine is successful.

LEDs	Meaning	Remedy
Lit in green ⌂ Off Off Off Off	The charging unit is ready to charge but not yet charging.	Start the charging cycle ⇨ *page 132*.
Pulsating in green ⌂ Off Off Off Off	The vehicle is being charged with PE conductor monitoring activated.	
Pulsating in green ⌂ Lit in yellow Off Off Off	The mains plug has overheated. Possible cause: the multiphase socket has been connected to a single-phase system. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power.	The fault will be cleared automatically once the mains plug has cooled down. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power until the connector has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.

LEDs	Meaning	Remedy
Pulsating in green Lit in yellow Lit in yellow Off Off	The vehicle is being charged with PE conductor monitoring deactivated.	For unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) only: No remedial measures required, the vehicle will be charged in the correct way for the power grid. For earthed networks only: Activate PE conductor monitoring ⇨ *page 142*.
Pulsating in green Off Off Lit in yellow Off	The operating unit has overheated. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power.	The fault will be cleared automatically once the operating unit has cooled down. Do not expose the operating unit to direct sunlight for long periods of time. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power until the operating unit has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in yellow Off Off Off Off	The charger is connected to the vehicle. The high-voltage battery is charged and the charging cycle was completed successfully, or the vehicle does not need to be charged.	
Lit in red Lit in yellow Off Off Off	The mains plug has overheated. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the mains plug has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Lit in red Off Off Lit in yellow Off	The operating unit has overheated. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the operating unit has cooled down. Do not expose the operating unit to direct sunlight for long periods of time. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Flashing in yellow Off Off Off	The charging infrastructure of the power grid/domestic connection is restricted. Possible cause: low voltage or poor mains frequency. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the power grid/domestic connection has stabilised. If the fault persists, you should have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.

LEDs	Meaning	Remedy
Lit in red Off Flashing in yellow Off Off	A fault has occurred in the vehicle charging system. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the vehicle charging system has stabilised. If the fault persists, you should have the vehicle checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Off Off Flashing in yellow Off	The mains or vehicle cable is defective. Possible cause: mismatch in coding resistance of mains or vehicle cable. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Have the mains or vehicle cable replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Off Lit in red Off Off	A fault has occurred in the vehicle charging system. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Stop the vehicle charging cycle and remove the vehicle cable from the vehicle charging socket. Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. Restart the charging cycle ⇨ *page 132*. If the fault persists, you should have the vehicle checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Flashing in red Off Off Off	There has been a voltage surge in the charging infrastructure of the power grid/domestic connection. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Lit in red Off Off Lit in red Off	A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Off Off Flashing in red Off	A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit (self-test failed). The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.

LEDs	Meaning	Remedy
Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Off Off	The charging infrastructure of the power grid/domestic connection is inadequate: the protective earth conductor is disconnected or not installed. The PE conductor monitoring system has interrupted the charging cycle.	For unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) only: If necessary, charge the vehicle with protective earth conductor monitoring deactivated ⇨ *page 142*. For earthed networks only: Have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. Do not use the power grid/domestic connection until the fault has been rectified.
Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Off	The indicator lamp on the reset button is defective. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Have the operating unit replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.
Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Flashing in red	The operating unit has detected a fault in the electric current. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Press the button for at least 2 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Lit in red Flashing in red Flashing in red Flashing in red Off	The charging infrastructure is wired incorrectly. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains. Have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red	A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit. Possible cause: Software error or load relay circuit error. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician.
Flashing in red Off Off Lit in red Off	A serious fault has occurred in the operating unit. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Have the operating unit replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.

LEDs	Meaning	Remedy
Off Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red Lit in red	The indicator lamp in the on/off button of the operating unit is defective. The charging cycle has been interrupted.	Have the operating unit replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership.

Technical data

The power output of the charging system may differ from the charging capacity of your vehicle. Specific factors such as fluctuations in the mains voltage may also reduce the power output of the charging system ⇨ *page 132*.

The technical data of the charging system depend on the type designation. You can find this information on the label on the back of the operating unit.

	Type designation			
	MCB36E1 A **MCB36J1 A**	**MCB72E1 A** **MCB72E2 A** **MCB72S1 A** **MCB72T1 A** **MCB72S1 C**	**MCB96J1 A** **MCB96U1 B** **MCB96U1 C**	**MCB11E3 A**
Max. power output	3.6 kW	7.2 kW	9.6 kW	11 kW
Rated current	16 A 1-phase	16 A 2-phase: MCB72E2 A	40 A 1-phase	16 A 3-phase
		32 A 1-phase: MCB72E1 A, MCB72S1 A, MCB72T1 A, MCB72S1 C		
Rated voltage	100 V – 240 V	100 V – 240 V / 400 V: MCB72E2 A	120 V / 240 V: MCB96U1 B, MCB96U1 C	100 V – 240 V / 400 V
		100 V – 240 V: MCB72E1 A, MCB72S1 A, MCB72T1 A, MCB72S1 C	200 V: MCB96J1 A	
Mains frequency	50 Hz/60 Hz	50 Hz/60 Hz	50 Hz/60 Hz	50 Hz/60 Hz
Overvoltage category (IEC 60664)	II	II	II	II
Rated short-time withstand current (EN 61439-1)	<10 kA eff.	<10 kA eff.	<10 kA eff.	<10 kA eff.
Mains plug types	CEE 230 V/16 A, 1p; CEE 230 V/32 A, 1p; CEE 400 V/16 A, 3p; CEE 400 V/32 A, 3p; NEMA 6-30; NEMA 6-50; NEMA 14-30; NEMA 14-50; NEMA 5-15; YP-41; TYPE B; TYPE E/F; TYPE G; TYPE I; TYPE J; TYPE K; TYPE L; TYPE M; TYPE N; TYPE O			

	Type designation			
	MCB36E1 A **MCB36J1 A**	**MCB72E1 A** **MCB72E2 A** **MCB72S1 A** **MCB72T1 A** **MCB72S1 C**	**MCB96J1 A** **MCB96U1 B** **MCB96U1 C**	**MCB11E3 A**
Integrated residual current device	AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA	AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA	AC: 20 mA; DC: 56 mA	AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA
Vehicle charging connector	Type 2: MCB36E1 A	Type 1: MCB72S1 A, MCB72S1 C	Type 1	Type 2
	Type 1: MCB36J1 A	Type 2: MCB72E1 A, MCB72E2 A, MCB72T1 A		
Protection class	I	I	I	I
IP degree of protection	55	55	55	55
Weight of operating unit	2.4 kg – 3.5 kg			
Dimensions of operating unit (height x width x depth)	310 mm x 105 mm x 72 mm			

WARNING

The use of the Audi e-tron compact charging system without PE conductor monitoring activated can cause short circuits, electric shocks, explosions and fires or burns. The Audi e-tron compact charging system should be used in earthed power grids. Deactivate PE conductor monitoring only in unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks). Activate PE conductor monitoring in earthed power grids.

Changing/attaching the cable for the Audi charging system (mode 2)

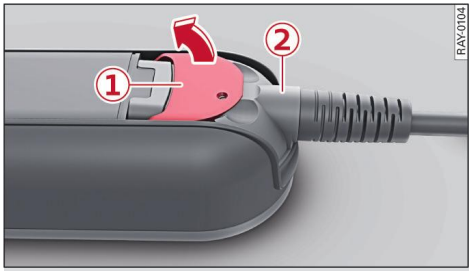


Fig. 82 Operating unit: Releasing/securing the cable

Important:

- The high-voltage battery must have finished charging.
- The vehicle charging connector must be unplugged from the vehicle charging socket.
- The mains plug must be removed from the power outlet.

Releasing the cable

- Lift the lever (1) all the way up.

- Pull the connector ② out until the first point of resistance.
- Close the lever ① until it is resting on the connector ②.
- Pull the connector ② all the way out.

Securing the cable

- Lift the lever ① slightly.
- Push the connector ② into the operating unit until the first point of resistance.
- Lift the lever ① all the way up.
- Push the connector ② all the way into the operating unit.
- Close the lever ①.

Protection against theft

To reduce the risk of the charging system and cable being stolen, you can secure the lever on the charging cable with a screw. Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with more detailed information.

Relationship between charging capacity and connector type

The mains cable with mains plug for industrial power outlets and the operating unit of the Audi charging system are specially matched. Changing the mains cable to a different type of connector can reduce the charging capacity of the entire system. Factors influencing the charging capacity here are the limited power transmission (electrical capacity) per phase and the number of phases available.

WARNING

– Please note the warnings for charging ⇨ ⚠ *in Starting the charging cycle on page 133* ⇨ ⚠ *in Ending the charging cycle on page 133*.
– Always remove the mains cable from the power outlet before changing a cable.
– Change the cable in dry environments only.
– The Audi charging system must always be used complete with the mains cable, operating unit and vehicle cable. In some countries, the total length of the mains cable, operating unit and vehicle cable are limited, e.g. to 7.5 m in Israel. Audi recommends that you only use cables approved by Audi.

Using the clip wall mount

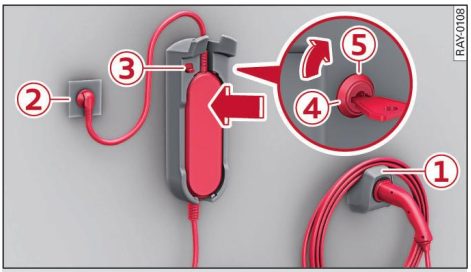


Fig. 83 Clip wall mount: Hooking in Audi charging system

Hooking in the Audi charging system

- Hook the operating unit into the retainers on the clip wall mount, first at the bottom, then at the top.
- Press the operating unit back in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *Fig. 83* so that it engages.
- Wind the length of cable you do not need around the charging connector mounting ① when you are not charging the high-voltage battery.
- Plug the mains cable into the power outlet ②.
- After charging, you can hook the vehicle charging connector into the charging connector mounting ①.

Unlocking/locking the Audi charging system

- Use the enclosed key to unlock/lock the Audi charging system as required (locked: ④, unlocked: ⑤).

Removing the Audi charging system

- Unplug the mains cable connector from the power outlet ②.
- Unwind the cable from the vehicle charging connector ①.
- To release the operating unit from the holder, press the locking mechanism ③ upwards.

WARNING

Please observe the safety information in the fitting instructions for the clip wall mount.

Towing a trailer

Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan

Introduction

If the car is supplied with a factory-fitted towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements. When towing a trailer or caravan, always observe the statutory requirements and follow the manufacturer's instructions for operation and driving.

Towing a trailer or caravan affects the energy consumption, performance and wear of the vehicle. It also requires greater concentration.

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the car is purchased, this must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer.

If a non-detachable towing bracket is retrofitted to the vehicle, it must not block the number plate or the rear lights. Observe the relevant local regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

Observe the relevant local regulations when towing.

WARNING

- Never carry passengers in a trailer – danger to life!
- Use only ball joints of the correct type approved for your vehicle. The use of unapproved ball joints can cause the trailer to be unstable or to become detached during a journey – risk of accident! Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Points to check before towing

Trailer weight

Never exceed the maximum permitted trailer weight.

If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can correspondingly climb steeper gradients.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the car's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density, so the maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by about 10 % for every further 1000 m (or part thereof). The actual trailer weight is the combined weight of the (loaded) vehicle and (loaded) trailer.

Draw bar weight

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed the maximum weight specification.

In the interests of road safety, Audi recommends that you always use the maximum draw bar weight without exceeding it. If the draw bar weight is too low, the trailer's handling will be affected.

You can determine the draw bar weight e.g. using a weighing machine, bathroom scales or a public weighing station. Audi recommends checking the draw bar weight, particularly when using twin-axle trailers. If the draw bar weight does not meet the specification, you can adjust it by distributing the load in the trailer correctly. If the draw bar weight meets the specifications, you should not change the load in the trailer.

If the maximum permitted draw bar weight cannot be obtained, the trailer should be loaded so that the draw bar weight is at least 4 % of the actual trailer weight. However, the draw bar weight must not be less than 25 kg. This applies to single-axle and twin-axle trailers with a wheelbase of less than 1.0 m.

You can find the maximum draw bar weight for your vehicle in the registration documents or in the technical data in the Owner's Manual.

Distributing the load

The vehicle's handling can be impaired if the load is poorly distributed. Load the trailer according to the following criteria as far as possible: ▶

– Objects should preferably be stowed in the luggage compartment. The vehicle load should be as heavy as possible and the trailer load as light as possible.
– Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible.
– Objects must be secured to prevent them from sliding about.
– Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted draw bar weight.

Speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. If the trailer has a stabiliser, you can drive up to 100 km/h. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

The stability of the car and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. Adjust your speed in the event of unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially on a downhill gradient.

Gradient

When driving down the start of a gradient, the trailer may begin to sway sooner than it would on a level road. Reduce your speed if the trailer starts to sway even slightly. Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating further.

Conventional power unit: Shift to a lower gear before the gradient in order to take advantage of the engine braking effect ⇨ ⚠.

Plug-in hybrid drive: Reduce your speed and use the recuperation braking effect to take the load off the brakes ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior lighting

Observe all locally applicable laws and regulations on the lighting systems for your trailer/caravan. If necessary, please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Before starting a journey, check all the trailer lights with the trailer hitched up.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the range of the headlight beam.

If the indicator lamp flashes, the turn signals are on in towing mode. If a turn signal bulb on the trailer fails in towing mode, the indicator lamp does **not** flash twice as fast to indicate the bulb failure.

Exterior mirrors

Make sure that you are able to monitor the road behind the trailer with the exterior mirrors. Use additional mirrors if necessary. Adjust the additional mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear. Please observe the relevant local regulations for attaching additional exterior mirrors.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer or caravan places a heavier load on the engine and cooling system. Please make sure that there is enough coolant in the cooling system.

Coolant temperature

Keep an eye on driver messages about the coolant temperature, especially in hot weather and when climbing long hills. Remember to shift to a higher gear in good time.

Tyres

Check the tyre pressures on the vehicle, and adjust for the “full load” conditions specified on the tyre pressure sticker. It may also be necessary to adjust the tyre pressures on the trailer according to the recommendations of the trailer manufacturer.

At low outside temperatures, fit both the vehicle and the trailer with winter tyres.

Driver assist systems

The alignment of the sensors/cameras may be altered when a trailer/rear carrier system is hitched up or unhitched.

To ensure that the driver assist systems are fully functional, you should switch the vehicle off and on after you hitch up or unhitch a trailer/rear carrier system.

Overrun brake

If your trailer is equipped with an overrun brake, it must be correctly adjusted and function correctly. When using a trailer with an overrun brake, apply the brakes gently at first and then ▶

firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.

Parking on an incline while towing

Use wheel chocks when parking on a gradient if the trailer is carrying a load. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Running the vehicle in

Avoid towing a trailer or caravan while running the vehicle in.

Inspection intervals

Audi recommends having the car serviced between the normal inspection intervals if it is used frequently for towing a trailer.

WARNING

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail.

CAUTION

Retrofitted parts, in particular attachments fitted to the ball joint of the towing bracket, can cause damage. If any damage occurs, you should have the equipment checked by a qualified workshop.

Swivelling towing bracket

Extending / retracting towing bracket

Fig. 84 Luggage compartment: Button for releasing towing bracket

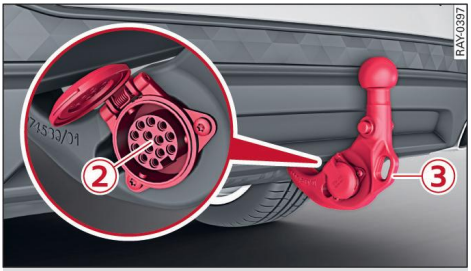


Fig. 85 Rear bumper: Connecting socket and eye for breakaway cable

The towing bracket is located on the rear bumper. It is released electrically and extended/retracted manually.

If you have not used the towing bracket for a relatively long time or have used it constantly without retracting or extending it, the swivelling movement may be stiff or the towing bracket may no longer swivel downwards automatically when the handle is operated. In this case Audi recommends that you extend and retract the towing bracket several times or loosen it by jogging it up and down repeatedly.

The button (1) is not active when the vehicle is in motion or if the boot lid is closed.

The eye (3) must only be used for securing the breakaway cable of the trailer.

Extending towing bracket

- Apply the parking brake.
- Open the boot lid.
- Press button (1) ⇨ ⚠. The towing bracket will be released. The LED will flash.
- Swivel the towing bracket out manually until it engages audibly in the operating position. The LED in the button (1) will light up permanently.
- Hitch up the trailer or the rear carrier system to the towing bracket.
- Plug the connector of the trailer or rear carrier system into the trailer socket (2). Use an adapter if necessary.
- When you hitch a trailer up to your vehicle, hook the breakaway cable into the eye (3) on the towing bracket.

When you switch the vehicle on, make sure that the instrument cluster does not display the ▶

indicator lamp or the message **Please check towing bracket**. Swivel the towing bracket in and out again, if necessary.

Retracting towing bracket

- Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the eye (3).
- Unplug the electrical connector between the vehicle and the trailer/rear carrier system ⇨ ⚠.
- Remove any adapters from the trailer socket ⇨ (!).
- Unhitch the trailer or the rear carrier system.
- Press button (1) ⇨ ⚠. The towing bracket will be released. The LED will flash.
- Swivel the towing bracket in manually until it engages audibly in the rest position. The LED in the button (1) will light up permanently.

When you switch the vehicle on, make sure that the instrument cluster does not display the indicator lamp or the message **Please check towing bracket**. Swivel the towing bracket out and in again, if necessary.

Retract the towing bracket or detach it when there are no trailers, bicycles or similar loads attached to it. This applies especially if the number plate or rear vehicle lighting is masked by the unused towing bracket. Observe the relevant local regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

WARNING

– Make sure that no people, animals or objects of any kind are in the path of the towing bracket – risk of injury!
– The towing bracket must NOT be used if it does not engage properly or if the LED flashes as this means that it is not in its end position – risk of accident and injury. Only use the towing bracket when it has swivelled out fully and engaged securely. The LED lights up to indicate this.
– Never press the button (1) if a trailer is hitched up or if a luggage rack or other accessories are mounted on the towing bracket – risk of accident!
– If any faults occur in the electrical system or in the towing bracket, safe use of the towing bracket is no longer guaranteed. Have the towing bracket inspected by a qualified workshop – risk of accident!

CAUTION

– Do NOT hold a high-pressure cleaner directly at the seal of the towing bracket or the trailer socket. This may cause damage to the seal, with the result that moisture can enter and damage the system.
– Never press the button (1) when a trailer is hitched up or if a luggage rack or other accessories are mounted on the towing bracket. The swivelling unit, accessories and parts of the vehicle could be damaged.
– If you have plugged an adapter into the trailer socket, this could damage the bumper and trailer socket when the towing bracket is retracted. Remove the adapter before retracting the towing bracket.

Information on the swivelling towing bracket

Towing bracket

Check that the ball coupling meets the relevant country-specific regulations and is not worn.

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

The ESC – in particular in conjunction with the trailer stabilisation system – makes it easier to stabilise a trailer if it starts to skid or sway. You should therefore keep the ESC switched on at all times.

Stabiliser

Swaying and pitching can be reduced by attaching an extra stabiliser to the trailer. Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a stabiliser. The stabiliser can be purchased and installed at a qualified workshop.

Clean the ball coupling before using a trailer without a stabiliser and apply multi-purpose grease to it. Repeat this application regularly if you tow a trailer frequently. ▶

Power supply

When you switch the vehicle off, the power supply to the trailer is not interrupted as long as the energy management system does not intervene.

Information on trailer stabilisation[1)]

The trailer stabilisation system, which is integrated in the electronic stabilisation control (ESC), helps to reduce the risk of the trailer skidding at speeds over approx. 65 km/h. Please refer to the description of the ESC ⇨ *page 124* for information on how the system works. Please also refer to the notes on ⇨ *page 149* and ⇨ *page 152* to ensure that the trailer stabilisation system is functional.

The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.

WARNING

- The ESC and trailer stabilisation system cannot defy the laws of physics. Always bear this in mind, especially when towing a trailer which is light in weight – risk of accident!
- It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the trailer stabilisation system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
- The trailer stabilisation system is not always able to detect if the trailer is swaying and may therefore not intervene – risk of accident! In this case, apply the vehicle's brakes and avoid unnecessary steering input.
- A trailer can still "jack-knife" on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system – risk of accident! You should always drive at a speed which is suitable for the road conditions.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity may even tip over before they start to sway sideways – risk of accident! Adjust your speed as appropriate.
- Towing a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle may result in the trailer swaying even at low speeds – risk of accident! If you need to drive with this combination, drive particularly slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.
- If you are not towing a trailer, but the trailer socket is being used (e.g. for an illuminated bicycle rack), the trailer stabilisation system may be activated automatically in extreme driving conditions.
- If the vehicle is driven with two trailers at once, the trailers may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! The vehicle must not be driven with more than one trailer.
- If the vehicle is driven with a trailer attached off-centre, the trailer may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! Accessories which are designed to attach the trailer off-centre must not be used.

Information on rear carrier systems

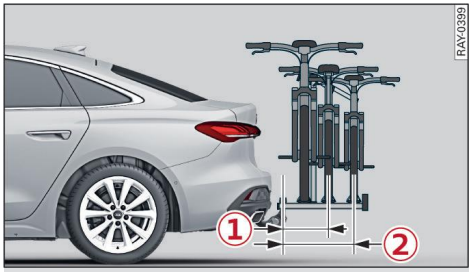


Fig. 86 Rear carrier: Maximum overhang

Rear carrier systems are systems such as bicycle racks which are mounted on the towing bracket.

Please make sure that the rear carrier system is approved for use on your vehicle.

Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a rear carrier system.

Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the rear carrier system. ▶

[1)] Not available on vehicles for some markets.

Rear carrier system load

The carrying load consists of the rear carrier system and the load transported on it. The maximum recommended carrying load may differ from the vehicle's maximum draw bar weight. The maximum draw bar weight and the maximum axle weight must not be exceeded.

The greater the distance from the towing bracket, the smaller the carrying load. For this reason, you should secure heavy objects as near as possible to the towing bracket.

Determining the maximum carrying load

Look up the draw bar weight for your vehicle in the technical data in the Owner's Manual. You can then find the carrying load in the table below. In accordance with Regulation UN-R 55, Audi recommends that you adhere to the maximum number of bicycles on the rear carrier system as follows:

Maximum draw bar weight (kg)	Maximum carrying load (kg)	Number of bicycles
50 – 74	50	2
75 upwards	75	3

Maximum overhang of the rear carrier system

The maximum overhang depends on the maximum carrying load and is as follows:

Maximum carrying load (kg)	Maximum overhang (mm)
50 – 74	500
75	700

For bicycle carrier systems with two bicycles, the maximum overhang measured from the centre of the ball coupling to the centre of the rail of the last bicycle carrier is 500 mm ①. For bicycle carrier systems with three bicycles, the maximum is 700 mm ②.

WARNING

The use of an unsuitable rear carrier system could cause severe damage to the towing bracket. The towing bracket could then break and cause an accident.

Driver messages about the swivelling towing bracket

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Please check towing bracket

A malfunction has occurred. If the message appears while the vehicle is moving, stop at the next opportunity. Swivel the towing bracket in and out again. If the message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Installation dimensions and retrofitting

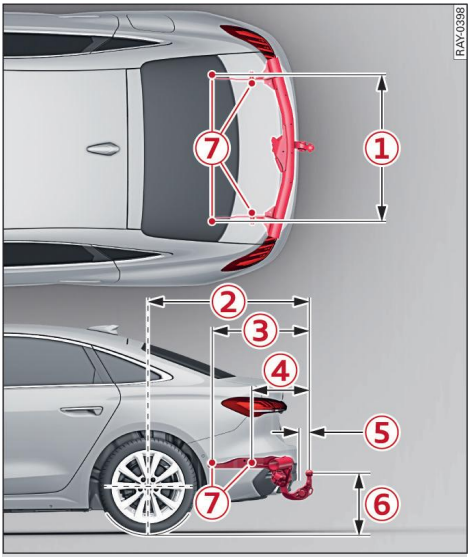


Fig. 87 Towing bracket: Installation dimensions and points

The towing bracket is bolted to the body at the securing points ⑦.

Installation dimensions (mm)	
① 1000	④ 395
② 1099 – 1106	⑤ 65 (min.)
③ 667	⑥ 350 – 420

The values given for the distance between the centre of the wheel on the rear axle and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket (2) are nominal values of the base vehicle. The dimensions may vary depending on the type of suspension in conjunction with the vehicle's equipment and the load the vehicle is carrying.

The distance between the road surface and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket (6) applies to the loading condition in the type approval according to UN-R55 (ECE). This dimension must not be smaller or larger than the value specified. The dimension may vary on vehicles categorised as M1G in the type approval.

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

Your qualified workshop will have all the details on retrofitting a towing bracket.

WARNING

– Avoid improper installation of the towing bracket – risk of accident! If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
– For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

CAUTION

– If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
– Particularly in high outside temperatures, it is not possible to drive up long steep gradients without a suitable cooling system. there is a risk of damaging the engine.

Trailer assist

Introduction

The trailer assist helps you with driving and manoeuvring when a trailer is hitched to the vehicle. The reversing camera detects the trailer angle. The system automatically learns the properties of the trailer while driving.

The trailer assist automatically steers the trailer in the desired direction when reversing and, where necessary, when making steering corrections while driving forward. You operate the accelerator and brake pedal. When reversing, the trailer assist limits the speed to between approx. 3 km/h and 8 km/h, depending on the situation. The speed cannot be increased even by pressing the accelerator further.

Audi recommends that you practise manoeuvring with the trailer assist in a quiet location (car park or low traffic area) in order to become familiar with the system and its functions.

Before every trip

– Please make sure that the electrical connector on the trailer is plugged into the socket on the vehicle, as the trailer assist will otherwise not be active.
– Whenever necessary, clean the reversing camera either manually, or by operating the rear window washer ⇨ *page 66*, or by selecting the cleaning function on the MMI ⇨ *page 219*. Please observe the notes on cleaning and care ⇨ *page 325*.

System limits

The functions of the trailer assist are limited or unavailable under the following circumstances:

– The trailer assist will be deactivated if you drive forwards faster than 10 km/h.
– The trailer assist may be unavailable for a short period after the vehicle is switched on.
– The trailer assist is not available if the trailer brake lights are defective.
– For technical reasons, trailers with LED rear lights may not always be detected by the trailer assist.
– The trailer assist may not be available on steep gradients.
– A rear carrier system is fitted to the ball head of the towing bracket.
– The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– The trailer assist cannot be used for trailers with steering axles.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
- The technology in the trailer assist cannot defy the laws of physics and works only within the limits imposed by the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the trailer assist function tempt you into taking any safety risks – this can cause accidents. The trailer assist cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.
- Unintended vehicle manoeuvres can cause serious injuries.
- Always adjust your driving style to suit the vision, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The trailer assist does not take the vehicle surroundings into account and does not detect obstacles – risk of accident! It is the driver's responsibility to judge whether the trailer can be manoeuvred safely.
- Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear – risk of accident! Always watch the area surrounding the vehicle.
- Do not allow the centre display to distract you from watching the traffic.
- The steering wheel turns by itself when you use the trailer assist. Do not reach into the path of the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- The trailer assist only controls the steering movements. As the driver you are always responsible for braking and for operating the accelerator and watching the traffic.

CAUTION

- The trailer assist cannot plan the movements necessary to manoeuvre the trailer. It merely steers the trailer in the desired direction.
- Always watch the trailer as it is moving and be ready to stop the manoeuvre if necessary to avoid damage. Even if the trailer assist is used correctly, in rare cases the trailer may still steer at an angle which deviates from the specified setting.
- As far as possible, attach the trailer draw bar at a right angle to the bumper. If the angle between the trailer and vehicle is too large, there is a risk that the vehicle will collide with the trailer.
- The distance from the ball coupling to the trailer axle must be between approximately 1.5 metres (min.) and 7 metres (max.). For multi-axle trailers, this distance is measured from the centre of the axles.

Operating the trailer assist

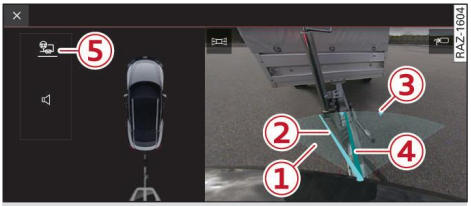


Fig. 88 Centre display: Trailer assist display

Trailer assist display

It is only possible to switch the trailer assist on/off by pressing the button (5) when the vehicle is stationary or driving forwards at no more than 10 km/h.

When you switch on the system, the display shows the picture from the reversing camera with a sector (1) and a dark indicator (4). The dark indicator shows the current orientation of the trailer. The sector indicates the possible adjustment range of the articulation angle to the desired orientation of the trailer tow bar. When reverse gear is engaged, the current articulation angle setting is indicated by a light indicator (2). The white markings (3) indicate the area in which it is possible to drive forwards with the trailer without manoeuvring any further.

Initialising the trailer

If the trailer was hitched up with a large articulation angle or if automatic initialisation has not yet been performed, it will be necessary for the system to initialise the trailer. When the vehicle is reversing, this process is indicated by a smaller sector as soon as the trailer starts moving. In addition, the centre display shows the message ▶

Drive carefully and operate brakes yourself to initialise trailer.

It is also necessary to initialise the trailer if the dark indicator does not point towards the trailer correctly during use.

To initialise the trailer, the vehicle must be slowly driven forwards in a straight line and through several corners to reduce the articulation angle. During the initialisation procedure, the system is available with limited functionality.

The initialisation process can take longer, depending on outside conditions such as poor light conditions, etc.

Driving and manoeuvring with the trailer assist

- Press the button (5).
- Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- Engage reverse gear. A short animation explaining how to use the trailer assist will start on the display.
- Drag your finger to the right or left across the display to adjust the trailer's direction of travel within the possible setting range.
- Tap twice on the display to reduce the articulation angle to zero and drive straight ahead with the trailer. If the articulation angle is wide, the system first suggests making a corrective movement forwards. In this case, the vehicle will also steer when driving forwards. If the dark indicator is within the white markings, the trailer's direction of travel can be maintained. If the indicator is outside the markings, the trailer will not drive straight ahead again until a certain distance has been travelled. In this case, it may be necessary to correct the orientation.
- Watch the road. Do not move off until the traffic situation allows you do so safely ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 156*, ⇨ (!) *in Introduction on page 156*.
- You can use the display to change the desired trailer orientation at any time while the vehicle is moving.
- Please monitor the trailer orientation on the display throughout the entire manoeuvring procedure.
- Make sure that the dark indicator is correctly aligned with the trailer orientation. It may not be possible to detect the correct steering angle in poor visibility or on heavily structured surfaces.
- Press to switch off the trailer assist.

Long trailers with a large distance between the trailer axle and the vehicle reach larger articulation angles than short trailers while in motion. They therefore react with a greater delay.

When reversing with a trailer, the articulation angle gradually changes as more distance is covered. If you want to drive in a straight line again, it is advisable to first make a forward movement in order to straighten up the trailer.

Initialising the trailer

If the trailer was hitched up with a large articulation angle or if automatic initialisation has not yet been performed, it will be necessary for the system to initialise the trailer. When the vehicle is reversing, this process is indicated by a smaller sector as soon as the trailer starts moving. In addition, the centre display shows the message **Drive carefully and operate brakes yourself to initialise trailer**.

It is also necessary to initialise the trailer if the dark indicator does not point towards the trailer correctly during use.

To initialise the trailer, the vehicle must be slowly driven forwards in a straight line and through several corners to reduce the articulation angle. During the initialisation procedure, the system is available with limited functionality.

The initialisation process can take longer, depending on outside conditions such as poor light conditions, etc.

Selecting the view

- Press the corresponding button to switch between the standard and panoramic views. On vehicles with surround view cameras, the other views are not available while the trailer assist is active. ▶

Automatic safety brake

The trailer assist can initiate an automatic safety brake application in certain situations. In this case, the parking brake will be applied. The parking brake will be released automatically when you drive forwards. To continue reversing, you must first release the parking brake manually and deactivate the system using the button.

The driver cannot override the safety brake application.

If you try to continue reversing by releasing the parking brake manually after the first safety brake application, the brakes will be applied again.

The trailer assist can initiate a safety brake application in the following situations:

– If the driver intervenes in the steering.
– If the steering angle is too large.
– If a malfunction is detected.
– If a rear carrier is attached.

Driver messages about the trailer assist

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the trailer assist functions are unavailable or restricted. A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. Check that the electrical connector on the trailer is plugged into the socket on the vehicle and that the reversing camera is clean ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

General information on assist systems

Overview of assist systems

Overview of warning systems

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle:

– The **manual speed warning** issues a warning when a set speed is exceeded ⇨ *page 167*.
– The **traffic sign-based speed warning** issues a warning when a speed limit that has been detected is exceeded ⇨ *page 203*.
– The **trailer-specific speed warning** displays trailer-specific speed limits and takes them into account ⇨ *page 204*.
– The **distance warning** issues a warning if the distance to the vehicle in front is insufficient ⇨ *page 167*.
– The **side assist** function uses a warning signal on the exterior mirror to warn you of road users approaching from behind and vehicles in the blind spot when you are changing lane ⇨ *page 168*.
– The **exit warning system** can recognise traffic approaching from behind and warn you as you get out of the vehicle ⇨ *page 170*.
– The **fatigue warning** indicates whether stopping to rest is recommended ⇨ *page 171*.
– The **distraction warning** warns you when the system detects that you are distracted from the road ⇨ *page 172*.

Overview of lane assist systems

Depending on the country and the equipment fitted, your vehicle may have different lane assist systems.

Unlike the lane guidance function, which continuously keeps the vehicle in the centre of its lane with brief steering inputs when you are driving, the lane departure warning only provides a warning and intervenes just before you inadvertently drift out of the lane.

– The **lane departure warning** can warn you that the vehicle is about to leave the lane and may indicate this by issuing corrective steering input and vibrating the steering wheel ⇨ *page 174*.
– The **lane guidance** function helps you keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane by assisting with the steering ⇨ *page 176*.
– The **assisted lane change** function can direct the vehicle into an adjacent lane ⇨ *page 179*.

Overview of cruise control systems

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle:

– LIM The **speed limiter** helps you avoid exceeding a specific speed that you have set ⇨ *page 181*.
– LIM AUTO The **predictive speed limiter** automatically adapts the vehicle's speed to recognised speed limits ⇨ *page 181*.
– The **adaptive cruise control** function assists you by controlling the road speed and maintaining a set distance to the vehicle in front. The system can accelerate and brake when it detects a vehicle in front. The system can also brake the vehicle to a standstill in congested traffic and traffic jams and may drive off again automatically depending on how long the vehicle remains stationary ⇨ *page 184*.
– The **adaptive cruise assist** combines the predictive cruise control and the lane guidance function with the functions of the adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 194*.
– The **predictive cruise control** function can adjust the set speed according to the environment in which you are driving (e.g. according to speed limits or the road ahead) ⇨ *page 191*.

Overview of systems for braking and taking evasive action

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle: ▶

8B1012720AG

– The **active front assist** function can take action to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users in certain situations ⇨ *page 196*.
– The **rear turn assist** warns you of traffic approaching from the rear when you are turning off ⇨ *page 200*.
– The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you about traffic approaching from either side while you are reversing or leaving a parking space ⇨ *page 220*.
– The **emergency assist** identifies if the driver is inactive. The system issues a warning in such cases and, if necessary, takes over operation of the vehicle to bring it automatically to a standstill in the same lane ⇨ *page 195*.

Overview of other assist systems

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle:

– The **predictive efficiency messages (efficiency assist)** help you to adapt your driving to the route ahead to reduce the vehicle's consumption ⇨ *page 202*.
– The **traffic light information** displays speed recommendations for reaching a series of green lights or the waiting time at the next traffic light ⇨ *page 208*.
– The **camera-based traffic sign recognition** system shows traffic signs which have been detected ⇨ *page 203*.

Overview of parking aid systems

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle:

– When you are parking, the **parking aid with distance display** warns you acoustically and visually about obstacles detected ⇨ *page 212*.
– The **rear emergency brake assist** brakes if you are reversing and it detects pedestrians behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 219*.
– The **reversing camera** displays a picture of the area behind the vehicle captured by the camera. Orientation lines in the image assist you when parking and manoeuvring ⇨ *page 214*.
– The **surround view cameras** are an extension of the reversing camera; they provide various views of the area around the vehicle to help you when parking and manoeuvring ⇨ *page 214*.
– The **kerb warning** provides a visual warning with several stages when a wheel comes within a critical distance of a kerb or another low object, and can therefore help prevent damage to the wheel or rim ⇨ *page 222*.
– The **manoeuvre assist** provides support in tight and complex manoeuvring situations and helps prevent damage to the vehicle or surrounding objects through braking interventions ⇨ *page 223*.

To familiarise yourself with the systems, Audi recommends that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.

Overview of assisted parking systems

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following assist systems may be installed in the vehicle:

– The **parking space search** helps you find suitable parking spaces for the assisted parking functions ⇨ *page 227*.
– The **park assist** enables assisted parking while the driver is in the vehicle and assists with entering and leaving parking spaces ⇨ *page 230*.
– **Remote-controlled parking** extends the park assist to enable the driver to operate it remotely from outside the vehicle using a mobile device ⇨ *page 233*.
– **Trained parking** expands the benefits of the assisted parking systems by allowing frequent parking manoeuvres to be learnt and stored. The vehicle can then reproduce these manoeuvres autonomously ⇨ *page 239*.
– The **reversing assist** provides support when reversing out of narrow parking spaces, garages or tracks. It continuously stores the last path travelled forwards over a certain distance so that the same path can be followed when reversing if desired ⇨ *page 237*. ▶

– The **trailer assist** helps you when driving and manoeuvring by steering the trailer in the desired direction when reversing and, where necessary, when making steering corrections while driving forward ⇨ *page 155*.

To familiarise yourself with the systems, Audi recommends that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.

Safety precautions and system limits of assist systems

Safety information on the assist systems

Please note the safety precautions for the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– As the driver, you always have full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. The assist systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. Always devote your full attention to the road and the traffic situation, and be prepared to intervene at any time.
– Only use the assist systems in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– The assist systems are only able to react as intended when the sensors and cameras function without restrictions. Please observe the notes on the sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 162*.

Further information on assist systems

– Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations, particularly with regard to the driver's responsibilities, as well as the permitted driving speeds, parking positions, position of the wheels, distance between vehicles, forming a lane for emergency vehicles, etc. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– You can cancel the steering/braking input from the system by firmly applying the brakes yourself, pressing the accelerator firmly, turning the steering wheel or deactivating the assistance system in question.
– Always check the current settings of the assist systems before setting off. The settings might have been changed by switching the vehicle off or altered by someone else.

System limits of the assist systems

Please note the system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– The assist systems cannot overcome the laws of physics; in some situations it may not be possible to prevent a collision.
– It is possible that the warnings, notifications or warning lamps may not be displayed or activated in time/at the appropriate time, e.g. if a vehicle is approaching very quickly.
– The corrective steering/braking input from the assist systems may not be sufficient in some cases, or there may be no input from the systems at all. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

Further information on the system limits of the assist systems

– The technology which enables the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings is subject to certain limitations; as a result, the systems may not warn the driver or intervene in time/at the appropriate time. In addition, it is possible that the assist systems may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and give a warning or intervene unexpectedly.
– Poor road conditions caused by inclement weather and non-standard road conditions, such off-road terrain, unpaved or gravelly roads, or roads with heavy cambers or deep ▶

ruts, may prevent the system from functioning as expected.
– The systems may not function as expected in unpredictable traffic situations such as in case of restricted vision at steep hill crests or valleys, at roundabouts, at toll gates or when changing from driving on the right to driving on the left.
– The systems may not function as expected in unpredictable traffic situations such as in turning lanes, at blind exits, in roadwork areas, at intersections or in city traffic.
– Poor light or visibility (for instance at night or when entering a tunnel), or glare from reflecting objects, etc. may restrict the function of the sensors and cameras.
– The ability of the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings can be affected, for example, by vehicles travelling in front, rain, snow, heavy road spray or adverse light.
– The sensors, the camera behind the windscreen and the surround view cameras must have an unobstructed view. Make sure that they are clean and kept free of dirt, snow, ice, external fogging and other deposits. Otherwise, the functions of the associated systems may be impaired. The windscreen can also be cleaned with the windscreen wiper.
– The sensors, the camera behind the windscreen and the surround view cameras must not be covered up, e.g. by accessories, stickers, decals or paint. No objects must protrude into the range of vision of the sensors or cameras. Otherwise, the functions of the associated systems may be impaired.
– External ultrasonic sources, such as from other vehicles, may interfere with the sensors.
– In towing mode, some assist systems may be restricted or unavailable, or may not react as usual. Please refer to the notes on towing a trailer ⇨ *page 149*.
– The function that detects the driver's hands on the steering wheel may be limited if you are wearing gloves. The steering assist systems may prompt you to take over the steering more frequently as a result.
– Equipment or accessories fitted on the steering wheel may restrict the function of the steering assist systems. In addition, the frequency with which the steering assist systems prompt you to take over the steering may differ.

Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings

Areas covered by sensors and cameras

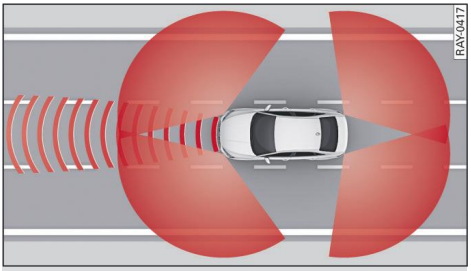


Fig. 89 Areas covered by the sensors

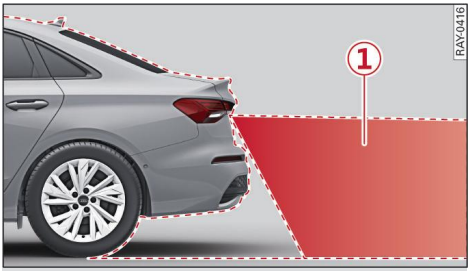


Fig. 90 Area covered by reversing camera

The assist systems evaluate the data from different sensors and cameras installed in the vehicle. Do not use the assist systems if the area around the sensors and cameras or the underbody has been damaged. This can impair the function of the sensors and cameras or cause malfunctions. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

Radar sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the entire area surrounding the vehicle can be detected ⇨ *Fig. 89*.

The radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. ▶

Ultrasonic sensors

The ultrasonic sensors detect the area surrounding the vehicle at close range. The sensors may be fitted at the rear, front and side, depending on the vehicle's equipment. The range depends on the location in which the ultrasonic sensors are fitted. The side zone is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the vehicle off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, the side zone is not shown.

Reversing camera/surround view cameras

Only use the camera image on the display to assist you if the picture is clear and discernible. Please also note that the view on the display is enlarged and distorted. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately.

The reversing camera is only able to detect the area shown in red ① ⇨ *Fig. 90*. Only this area is shown on the centre display ⇨ ⚠.

Further information

- Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras: System issues may occur if the exterior mirrors are not folded out completely. Make sure that the exterior mirrors are fully folded out while you are driving.
- Applies to: vehicles with electric folding exterior mirrors: System limits may occur when manually adjusting the exterior mirrors. The exterior mirrors must only be folded in/out electrically.
- When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.

Further information on the areas covered by the sensors

The areas covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 89* and cameras ⇨ *Fig. 90* are examples and do not represent the range to scale.

WARNING

- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.
- Sensors may be subject to physical system limits. External sources of interference, such as from other vehicles, may impair the function of the sensors. As a result, the assist systems may be restricted or may not function as expected.

CAUTION

- Some objects may disappear from the sensors' field of vision as the vehicle approaches, even if they were originally detected by the system.
- In some cases, the sensors and cameras may only have a limited capacity to detect or display certain objects:
  - Objects positioned above the area covered by the sensors and cameras, such as the bumpers of parked cars, partially opened garage doors or suspended objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Narrow objects, such as chains, trees, posts or fences
  - Protruding objects, such as trailer draw bars
  - Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabrics

Positions of sensors and cameras

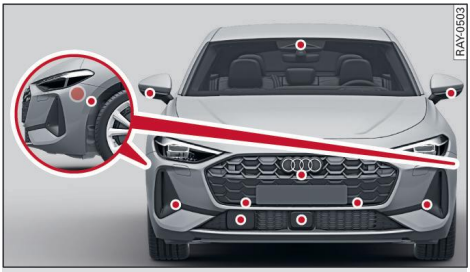


Fig. 91 Front area: Sensors and cameras

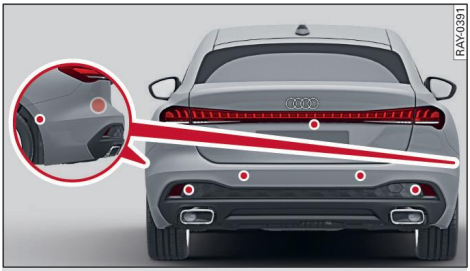


Fig. 92 Rear area: Sensors and cameras

Front area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

– Camera behind the windscreen
– Surround view cameras on the exterior mirrors
– Surround view camera at the front in the radiator grille
– Ultrasonic sensors at the front and sides of the vehicle
– Radar sensors at the front corners of the vehicle
– Radar sensors at the front at the bottom of the radiator grille

Rear area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

– Reversing camera in the boot lid
– Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
– Ultrasonic sensors at the rear and sides of the vehicle

Further information

– The positions of some sensors may differ slightly depending on the vehicle's equipment.
– Some of the sensors are installed underneath parts of the vehicle and cannot be seen from outside.

Driver assist menu

Calling up driver assist menu

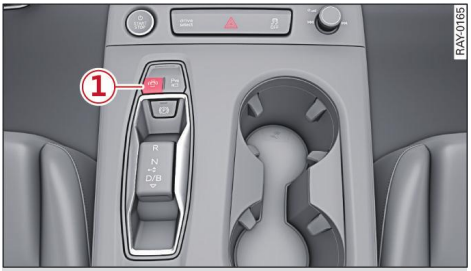


Fig. 93 Centre console: Button for driver assist systems

You can switch various assist functions on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Driver assist** menu. The available settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

▸ Press the button 1, or
▸ Open the quick access bar on the centre display and press , or
▸ Select: > **Driver assist**.

Press / to switch the desired systems on/off or press > to adjust the individual settings.

The symbol ON shows whether a system will be switched on automatically or reset to the required standard values the next time the vehicle is started.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

General driver assist settings

Information about automatically reset driver assist settings

When you start the vehicle, information is shown on all systems that have been reset automatically to the required standard values since the last time the vehicle was used. The message gives you the option to restore the previous settings.

You can set whether this information should be displayed directly when the vehicle is started in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

Resetting driver assist settings

You can reset all the driver assist settings to the factory settings at the same time under in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

WARNING

Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 23*.

General driver messages on driver assist systems

Driver assist systems: currently restricted. The systems are updated regularly in the warning memory

Driver assist systems: restricted in this country. See warning memory

Driver assist systems: restricted due to towing mode. See warning memory

Driver assist systems: restricted. Driver status cannot be estimated with camera. See warning memory

If this message appears, one or more driver assist systems are restricted or unavailable. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. Please note the information and adapt your driving style accordingly.

Information on the driver availability camera[1)]

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, your vehicle may be fitted with a technical function to determine driver availability. Driver availability is determined using an infrared camera in the steering column. One of the factors that the camera checks is the driver's seating position.

If the driver availability camera detects that the driver is inactive, warnings or interventions from other systems such as the emergency assist or the fatigue warning may be triggered. If the driver availability camera is deactivated, it cannot trigger any warnings or interventions from other systems.

You can switch the driver availability camera on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

System limits

The functions of the driver availability camera may be restricted or temporarily unavailable in certain situations:

– If the driver availability camera is misted up, dirty or damaged.
– If the driver availability camera is dazzled, e.g. due to sunlight.
– If you have to move your head or change your line of sight several times due to the driving situation (e.g. on a motorway slip road or at an intersection).
– If you obstruct the camera's view (e.g. when turning the steering wheel all the way to the left or right).
– If you are wearing certain items such as a peaked cap, scarf or glasses (especially sunglasses that exceed a certain tint level or IR-blocking glasses).
– If you are in an unsuitable seating position. Please therefore observe the information on the correct seating position. ▶

[1)] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

– If you tilt your head or look down. The system may perceive this as your eyes being closed.
– If you have a physical impairment (e.g. an eye movement disorder).
– If you have unique facial features.

Calling up the parking aid menu

Fig. 94 Centre console: Button for park assist systems

You can switch various parking functions on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Parking aid** menu. The available settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

▸ Press the button (1) in the centre console or select reverse gear.
▸ Press on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

Press / to switch the desired systems on/off or press > to adjust the individual settings.

In some countries, the parking aid menu cannot be called up when reverse gear is selected.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Warning systems

Speed warning

Introduction

The speed warning function helps you to keep the vehicle below a pre-set maximum speed. To do this, a warning threshold can be set on the centre display.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, for example.

Please bear in mind that, even with the speed warning function, it is still important to keep a check on the car's speed with the speedometer and to observe the relevant country-specific speed limit regulations.

On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function also warns you when you reach a factory-set warning threshold. This warning threshold cannot be changed or switched off.

Setting the speed warning function

You can switch the manual speed warning on/off and set a custom warning threshold in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

Driver messages about the speed warning function

If is shown along with a driver message and a tone sounds, the stored maximum speed has been exceeded. The message disappears as soon as the speed drops back below the stored maximum speed.

Distance warning

Using the distance warning

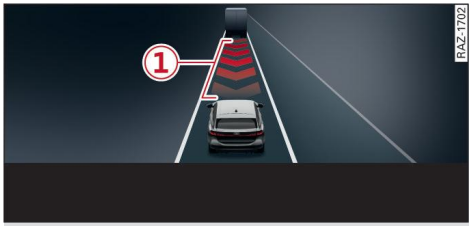


Fig. 95 Instrument cluster: Distance warning with surroundings shown

This function measures the distance to the vehicle in front in time units at speeds above approximately 65 km/h when the adaptive cruise assist is not controlling the vehicle's speed/distance. The symbol draws your attention to the danger if the vehicle goes continuously below the warning threshold. If the display with surroundings is selected in the instrument cluster, graphic (1) will also appear. The warnings may be accompanied by further visual signals, depending on the situation.

Adjusting distance warning settings

You can switch the distance warning on/off or adjust the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

System limits

The distance may be below the warning threshold for a short time when overtaking or approaching another vehicle quickly from behind. In this case, no warning will be given. A warning is only given if the distance is below the threshold for an extended period of time.

Further information

As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driver messages about the distance warning

If is displayed in the event of a fault, the distance warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

If and a driver message about the active front assist are displayed in the event of a fault, the distance warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Side assist

Using the side assist

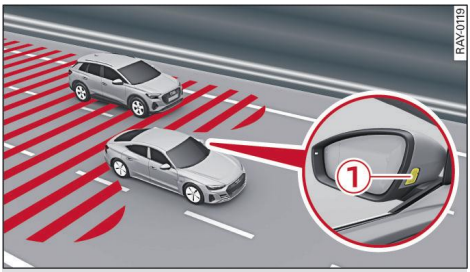


Fig. 96 Driving situation and warning signal on exterior mirror

Fig. 97 Instrument cluster: Display with surroundings shown

Introduction

The side assist function monitors the blind spot and the traffic behind your vehicle in the neighbouring lanes and helps you when changing lane. If the system detects an approaching object which it judges to be critical, the warning signal (1) lights up on the exterior mirror on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

Driving situations

– Your vehicle is being overtaken by another vehicle. The faster this vehicle approaches from behind, the earlier the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.
– There are vehicles travelling at a similar speed in the next lane. The warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror by the time the detected object is in your blind spot.
– You are overtaking another vehicle slowly. If the speed differential between the two vehicles is not greater than approx. 15 km/h, the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.

Information mode

If you have not yet operated a turn signal, the system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical at speeds of above approx. 10 km/h.

The system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical by lighting up the warning signal (1) on the exterior mirror on the appropriate side.

The intensity of the warning signal in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

Warning mode

As soon as you activate a turn signal, the system warns you of objects which it judges to be critical by flashing the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, if other driver assist systems detect that you are in danger of leaving your lane, the warning signal may flash and a tone may sound to warn you of objects which the system judges to be critical, even if you have not activated a turn signal. The system may initiate a corrective steering input as an ▶

additional warning ⇨ *page 174, Lane departure warning*.

You can switch the warning tone for the side assist on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

Instrument cluster display

In addition to the warning signal on the exterior mirror, a graphic for the side assist (information and warning level) is shown in the instrument cluster ⇨ *Fig. 97*. The symbol ② is shown in grey at the information level and red at the warning level.

The display with surroundings only appears if it was selected in the instrument cluster.

System limits

The side assist is active at speeds of approx. walking pace and above.

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 164, Fig. 92*. The sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations it is possible that the system may react to vehicles in your own lane or two lanes away, or to objects at the edge of the lane. The warning signal then lights up even though there are no vehicles in the critical area. Such situations may include:

– When driving at the edge of your own lane
– When driving in narrow lanes
– When driving through a corner
– If there are high barriers next to the lane
– When driving through roadworks

Information on the side assist

– The warning signals on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.
– The systems are not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the systems may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 96* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The warning signal may not light up in time or may not light up at all if other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly.

Adjusting the side assist settings

You can switch the side assist on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

The warning signals light up briefly each time the side assist is switched on to indicate that the system is activated.

You can adjust the brightness in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*. Always adjust the brightness with the side assist function switched on so that you can monitor the selected setting in the warning signals on the exterior mirrors. Please adjust the brightness of the warning signal for the information mode so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. Because the display brightness is automatically adjusted in accordance with the ambient light level, it is possible that the display may already have been automatically adjusted to the lowest or highest setting.

Driver messages about the side assist

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the side assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area around the ▶

sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 164, Fig. 92*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Exit warning system

Using the exit warning system

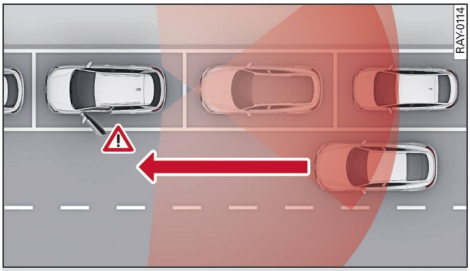


Fig. 98 Detected traffic approaching from behind

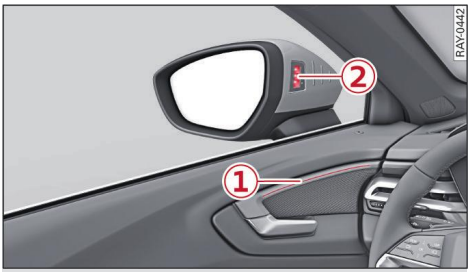


Fig. 99 Front door: Warning strip

Introduction

The exit warning system can recognise other road users approaching from behind (within certain system limits) and warn you as you get out of the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 98*. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

Display and warnings

If transmission position P is selected and a road user judged by the system to be critical is approaching, the warning strip ① and the warning signal on the exterior mirror ② will light up on that side of the vehicle. At the same time, the door may be slightly delayed in opening.

When the door is opened, the warning signals for the relevant side of the vehicle will flash and a warning tone will sound. The warning signals will flash and a warning tone will sound if road users judged by the system to be critical approach when the door is already open. The warning signals will then remain lit until the critical situation is over.

Switching the exit warning system on/off

– Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to switch the exit warning system off in the **Driver assist** or **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 164*.
– Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to switch the exit warning system's warning tone off in the **Driver assist** or **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

Information on the exit warning system

– The exit warning system can remain available for approximately three minutes after unlocking the vehicle and opening the door or after switching off the vehicle. After this period, the warning signals will light up briefly while the system is deactivated.
– The warning signals light up briefly each time the exit warning system is switched on to indicate that the system is activated.
– The system is not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the system may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 98* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The exit warning system cannot replace the full concentration of the occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for their own safety and ▶

the safety of other road users when opening the doors and leaving the vehicle.
– The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly.
– The exit warning system does not react to stationary objects.
– The exit warning does not react if the vehicle is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the vehicles in front and behind.

Driver messages about the exit warning system

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the exit warning system functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area around the sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 164, Fig. 92*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Fatigue warning

Introduction

Within the system limits, the fatigue warning informs the driver whether they need to take a break.

Once the vehicle is moving, the fatigue warning continuously analyses the driving behaviour in order to estimate whether the driver is fatigued. The result is compared continuously with the current driving behaviour.

Depending on the country, a driver availability camera may also detect the direction in which the driver is looking while driving.

If the system has detected a low level of fatigue, it will recommend a break via a display in the instrument cluster at speeds of 65 km/h and above. If severe fatigue is detected, a tone will also sound.

If it has been detected that the driver is fatigued based on their eyes being closed, the emergency assist is activated on vehicles which have this function ⇨ *page 195*.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Never drive when you are tired – risk of accident! On long journeys, make sure to take adequate breaks at regular intervals. As the driver, you are always responsible for ensuring that you are fit to drive.

Overview of fatigue warning displays

The following displays appear in the instrument cluster:

Display	Description
	The system has detected a low level of fatigue.
	The system has detected a high level of fatigue. In addition, a tone will sound.

System limits of the fatigue warning

The system may misinterpret the driving behaviour in certain driving situations, such as the following:

– You are driving at a speed below approx. 60 km/h.
– You are driving at a speed above approx. 130 km/h.
– You are driving on winding roads.
– You are driving on a surface which is in poor condition.
– You are driving through roadworks.
– You are driving in unfavourable weather conditions.
– You have a dynamic driving style.
– You are distracted.

– You are towing a heavy or long trailer.
– You have activated lane guidance.
– You are falling asleep or into a microsleep.
– The driver availability camera is not available in all countries and its functions are restricted in some countries.

In certain situations, the system may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and inappropriately recommend a break.

Resetting the system

The system is automatically reset in the following situations:

– You switch the vehicle off and leave it switched off for a certain amount of time.
– You unfasten the driver's seat belt and open the driver's door.

Setting the fatigue warning

You can switch the fatigue warning and the driver availability camera on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*. If the fatigue warning is switched off, certain systems (such as the emergency assist) may be restricted or may not be triggered in certain situations.

A message is shown in the instrument cluster when the fatigue warning is switched off.

If you switch the system off, it will be switched on again the next time you switch on the ignition.

Driver messages about the fatigue warning

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the fatigue warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Distraction warning

Introduction

Within the limitations of the system, the distraction warning warns you when the system identifies that you are distracted from the road.

The system registers when you perform tasks while driving that distract you from the road, such as adjusting the electrically adjustable exterior mirrors. [1)]

Depending on the country, a driver availability camera may also detect the direction in which you are looking and the direction in which your head is facing while driving.

Above a certain low vehicle speed, if the system detects a low level of distraction, a display will appear in the instrument cluster to remind you to concentrate on the road. If the system detects a high level of distraction, a warning tone will also sound.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Overview of distraction warning displays

The following displays appear in the instrument cluster:

Display	Description
	The system has detected a low level of distraction.
	The system has detected a high level of distraction. In addition, a tone will sound.

[1)] Whether the distraction warning is available depends on the software version and the country.

System limits of the distraction warning

In some cases, the system may be limited or not function at all:

– You are driving at a speed below approx. 20 km/h.
– You are severely distracted by external factors (such as the traffic situation).
– You are severely distracted by operating devices which are not connected to the vehicle (e.g. mobile devices).
– The driver availability camera is not available in all countries and its functions are restricted in some countries.

Setting the distraction warning

You can switch the distraction warning and the driver availability camera on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

A message is shown in the instrument cluster when the distraction warning is switched off.

If you switch the system off, it will be switched on again the next time you switch on the ignition.

Driver messages about the distraction warning

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the distraction warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

8B1012720AG

Lane assist systems

Lane departure warning

Introduction

Depending on the country and the equipment fitted, your vehicle may have different lane assist systems. Unlike the lane guidance function, which continuously keeps the vehicle in the centre of its lane with steering inputs when you are driving, the lane departure warning only provides a warning and intervenes just before you inadvertently drift out of the lane.

The **lane departure warning** detects lane markings within certain limits imposed by the system. If you approach one of the detected lane markings, the system can react to warn you that the vehicle might be about to cross one of the markings. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the system may warn you with a corrective steering input, steering wheel vibration and a visual warning.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the lane departure warning

Fig. 100 Control lever: Button for lane departure warning and lane guidance

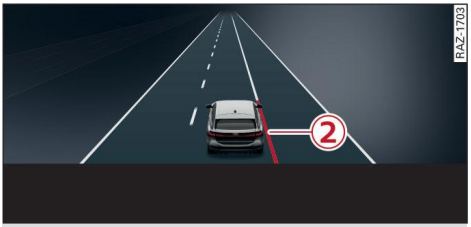


Fig. 101 Instrument cluster: Lane departure warning with surroundings shown

Switching the lane departure warning on/off

- You can switch the lane departure warning on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*, or
- Press and hold the button (1) on the control lever until the corresponding signal comes on in the instrument cluster.

If you press the button (1) on the control lever briefly, this operates the lane guidance ⇨ *page 176*.

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Overview of displays and warnings

Display	Meaning
	The lane departure warning system is switched on but not ready to give warnings on the corresponding side.
	The lane departure warning system is switched on and ready to give warnings on the corresponding side.
	The lane departure warning system warns you on the corresponding side before you cross the lane demarcation.
Off	The lane departure warning system is switched off[a]. A driver message is also displayed.

[a] The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.

In addition, corrective steering inputs are indicated in the instrument cluster by a red line (2) on ▶

the corresponding side in the display with surroundings shown. The display with surroundings only appears if it was selected in the instrument cluster.

Steering wheel vibration

The steering wheel may vibrate to warn you if the detected lane demarcations are crossed.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can switch steering wheel vibration on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

Steering interventions

You may be warned by a corrective steering intervention if the detected lane demarcations are crossed.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can adjust the corrective steering interventions in the **Driver assist** menu [1)2)] ⇨ *page 164*. If **Reduced** is selected, steering interventions are only performed when the vehicle crosses solid lane demarcations. If **Normal** is selected, steering interventions are performed when the vehicle crosses any kind of lane demarcation.

Response when turn signals are on[1)]

Applies to vehicles without side assist: The system does not warn you if you operate the turn signal before crossing a lane demarcation. In this case, it assumes that you intend to change lanes.

Applies to vehicles with side assist: If you operate the turn signal while the lane departure warning is active, the steering will be corrected noticeably just before you cross the lane demarcation if the side assist detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle and judges the situation to be critical. This intervention is intended to keep the vehicle in the lane.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
- The system initiates a corrective steering input to warn you that the vehicle is about to leave the lane. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep in the lane. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times.
- The lane departure warning is not designed to avoid collisions with physical lane delineators, such as concrete barriers.
- In certain situations, e.g. during heavy braking, the system may not correct the steering. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

System limits and restrictions of the lane departure warning

The steering will not be corrected and the steering wheel will not vibrate if the system detects a situation where it is clear that an overtaking manoeuvre is intended.

If lights up, the lane departure warning function is switched on but not ready to give warnings. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:

- The system works at speeds of approx. 65 km/h[3)] and above. It is not available at very high speeds.
- The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in roadworks or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The bend is too tight.
- The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
- The turn signal was activated.
- The ESC is restricted or switched off.

1) Depends on country/equipment fitted in the vehicle

2) The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

3) 55 km/h in certain countries

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Take over steering prompts from the lane departure warning

No steering activity detected

If no steering activity is detected, you will be warned by acoustic and visual signals to take over the steering. Actively take over the steering immediately and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are ready to steer at all times.

If you do not take over the steering, the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇨ *page 195*.

Drive in lane centre

If the lane departure warning system has to intervene for a long time, a message will appear asking you to drive in the centre of the lane.

Further information

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

The prompts to take control may be accompanied by further acoustic and visual signals, depending on the situation.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driver messages about the lane departure warning

If or [1] is displayed in the event of a fault, the lane departure warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

The symbol may also appear if the lane departure warning is switched on but not ready to give warnings.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If is displayed and the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Lane guidance

Introduction

Depending on the country and the equipment fitted, your vehicle may have different lane assist systems. In contrast to the lane departure warning, which only warns you and intervenes shortly before the vehicle accidentally leaves the lane, the lane guidance function provides continuous steering support to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane.

Within certain system limits, the **lane guidance** function makes steering inputs which help you keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

[1] The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.

Using lane guidance

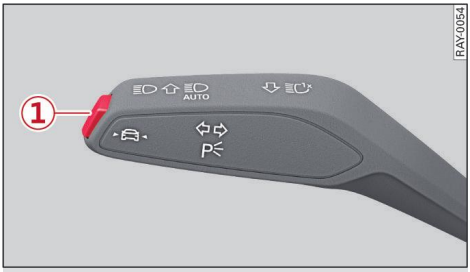


Fig. 102 Control lever: Button for lane guidance and lane departure warning

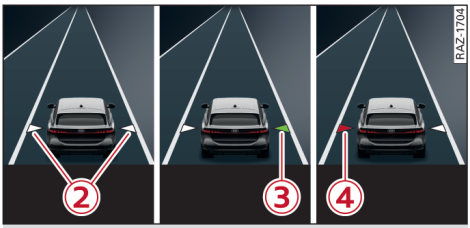


Fig. 103 Instrument cluster: Lane guidance with surroundings shown

Switching lane guidance on/off

Important: The adaptive cruise control must be switched on ⇨ *page 186*.

▸ To switch lane guidance on/off, press the button ① on the control lever briefly.

Linking lane guidance to the adaptive cruise assist

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can link activation/deactivation of the lane guidance to the activation/deactivation of the adaptive cruise assist in the **Driver assist** menu.

Link switched on: Lane guidance is switched on/off in combination with the activation/deactivation of the adaptive cruise assist.

Link switched off: Lane guidance can be switched on/off independently of the adaptive cruise assist.

Setting the behaviour of the lane guidance

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can adjust the degree of the steering interventions from gentle to centred in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

Adjusting the position maintained by the lane guidance

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can adjust the position maintained by the lane guidance within the lane if desired[1]. This makes it possible to control the path of the vehicle precisely.

▸ To temporarily adjust the position maintained by the lane guidance within the lane, steer gently in the desired direction for a few seconds.

The programmed position will be reset depending on the situation, e.g. if you steer back into the middle of the lane or due to tight bends.

Overview of displays

Display with surroundings shown	Warning and indicator lamps	Meaning
② White triangles		The lane guidance is switched on but not active on the corresponding side.
③ Green triangles		The lane guidance is active on the corresponding side.
④ Red triangles		Actively take over the steering immediately. The system has reached its limits ⇨ *page 178*.
-		Actively take over the steering immediately. No steering activity has been detected ⇨ *page 178*.
-		

▶

[1] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

The display with surroundings only appears if it was selected in the instrument cluster.

Further information

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Audi recommends that you use the lane guidance on major roads only.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The lane guidance serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle, especially with regard to steering. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times.

System limits and restrictions of the lane guidance

If lights up in white, lane guidance is switched on but not active on the corresponding side. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur, for example:
– The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in roadworks or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– The bend is too tight.
– The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
– The turn signal was activated.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Take over steering prompts from the lane guidance function

System limit reached

If lights up in red, a tone sounds and an animated warning appears, you must take over the steering. A system limit been reached, for example because the system's steering power is insufficient in tight bends. The system may no longer be active after a short time and may only be available again later.

No steering activity detected

If or lights up and a corresponding message appears, actively take over the steering immediately. The prompt to take control may be accompanied by an animated warning and additional acoustic and visual signals, depending on the situation. Insufficient steering activity has been detected. Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations. If you do not take over the steering, lane guidance will be stopped and the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇨ *page 195*.

Further information

The prompts to take control may be accompanied by further acoustic and visual signals, depending on the situation.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driver messages about the lane guidance function

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the lane guidance function is unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The ▶

weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Assisted lane change

Introduction

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the assisted lane change function can direct the vehicle into an adjacent lane.

In addition to the sensors for the adaptive cruise assist, the system uses the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle, the parking sensors and the cameras ⇨ *page 162, Fig. 89*.

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the assisted lane change

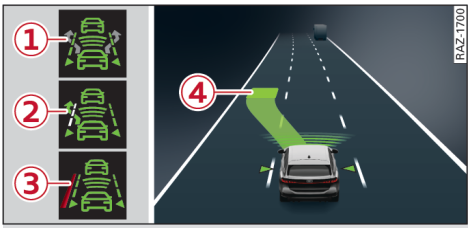


Fig. 104 Instrument cluster: Assisted lane change display

Display overview

The driving situation and the availability on the relevant side are displayed on the instrument cluster and the head-up display. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

① Grey arrow – The system has not detected any obstacles in the area covered by the sensors. The assisted lane change can be started.

② Green arrow – An assisted lane change is being performed.

③ Red line – The assisted lane change has been cancelled. Actively take over the steering immediately.

④ Expected path of the active assisted lane change.

– An assisted lane change is being performed.

/ – Actively take over the steering immediately. The assisted lane change has been cancelled.

Important

- The assisted lane change function must be switched on in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.
- Certain assist systems must be switched on.
- The adaptive cruise assist must be actively controlling the vehicle and lane guidance must be switched on.
- The navigation system has detected a motorway or similar road. The map material for the navigation system must be updated regularly.
- The vehicle surroundings must have been detected sufficiently.

Starting an assisted lane change

When the requirements are met, the availability of the assisted lane change function is automatically shown by an arrow ① in the instrument cluster.

- To start an assisted lane change, activate the turn signal in the required direction ⇨ ⚠.

Symbol ②/④ will appear.

Manual cancellation

The assisted lane change can be cancelled manually at any time:

- Press the brake pedal, or
- Move the steering wheel by hand, or
- Activate the turn signal in the opposite direction.

Automatic cancellation

The assisted lane change is cancelled automatically under the following circumstances:

- If the vehicle speed becomes too low or too high
- If an object has been detected or the lane is not available
- If the adaptive cruise assist and lane guidance are no longer actively controlling the vehicle
- If the hazard warning lights are switched on
- If the system requirements are no longer met, e.g. the vehicle's surroundings are not detected sufficiently

System limits

– The system works at speeds of approx. 65 km/h and above. It is not available at very high speeds.
– The system is not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the systems may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings when you are using the assisted lane change function. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care – risk of accident!
– The assisted lane change serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the lane change and for steering the vehicle.

Take over steering prompt for the assisted lane change

If the symbol or and a corresponding message appear, actively take over the steering immediately. The assisted lane change has been cancelled automatically or manually.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driver messages about the assisted lane change function

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Speed assist systems

Speed regulation systems

Introduction

The speed regulation systems consist of the speed limiter and the predictive speed limiter.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
- The speed regulation systems are designed to assist the driver. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle; this applies in particular to braking, regulating the speed and maintaining an appropriate distance to other vehicles.
- When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the speed regulation systems. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the set speed in such situations.

CAUTION

- Conventional power unit: Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and select a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and use the recuperation braking effect ⇨ *page 106*. This will reduce the load on the brakes.

Information on the speed limiter

The speed limiter helps you to avoid exceeding a speed that you have set. The speed can be set to approx. 20 km/h and above. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed. If the accelerator is not pressed, the system will not accelerate the vehicle.

Information on the predictive speed limiter

Information on use

Important: **Adaptation to speed limits when speed limiter active** must be switched on in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*. The map material on the navigation system must be updated regularly to ensure the system can function without limitations ⇨ *page 262*.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the predictive speed limiter expands the speed limiter function by taking into account speed limits identified by the system on the route being driven. The set speed is adjusted to the speed limit identified by the system. The system uses the traffic sign recognition function and the data from the navigation system as reference. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed.

Information on applying a speed limit manually or automatically

Speed limits detected by the system can be applied manually or automatically to limit the vehicle's speed. If you want the speed limits to be applied automatically, activate **Apply without confirmation** in the **Adaptation to speed limits when speed limiter active** menu.

Further information

It is always the driver's responsibility to keep within the speed limit.

Whenever you switch on the vehicle and subsequently drive onto a motorway with no speed limit, the system initially limits the speed to 130 km/h[1]. If you select a new set speed manually while driving on a road section with no speed limit, the setting is stored and subsequently applied on the next road section with no speed limit. ▶

[1] May vary in different countries.

When entering and exiting motorways, the system briefly switches to the manual speed limiter.

While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.

The cruising speed is adjusted on the speedometer when a speed limit is detected even when the predictive speed limiter is not regulating the speed.

System limits

The system only responds to traffic signs specifying a speed limit. The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. In certain circumstances, the maximum permissible speed may be exceeded while the predictive speed limiter is limiting the current road speed.

If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition or if the map material on the navigation system is out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.

The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify km/h or mph, depending on the country.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Overview of speed regulation system displays

Warning/indicator lamps on the speedometer and driver messages indicate the driving situation and settings. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

Display	Description
LIM	The speed limiter is switched on but is not activated.
LIM AUTO	The predictive speed limiter is switched on but is not activated.
LIM	The speed limiter is switched on and is actively limiting the vehicle to the set speed.
LIM AUTO	The predictive speed limiter is switched on and is actively limiting the vehicle to the set speed.
LIM !	The set speed has been exceeded; the driver is temporarily overriding the limit.
LIM AUTO !	The cruising speed has been exceeded; the driver is temporarily overriding the limit.

Information is also provided in the head-up display.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the speed regulation systems

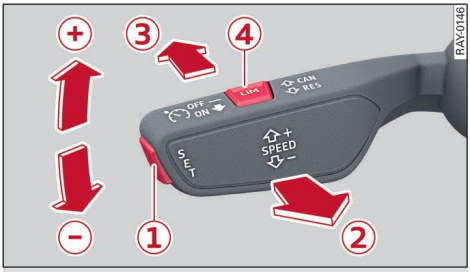


Fig. 105 Control lever: Switching the system on

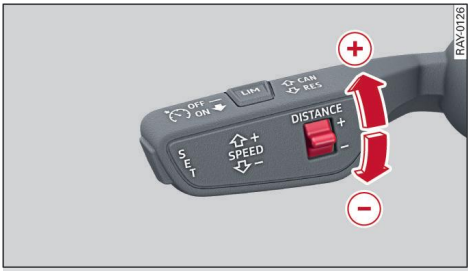


Fig. 106 Control lever: Deactivating the distance regulating function

Switching the system on/off

- Pull the control lever towards you to position ② until it engages to switch the system on.
- Pull the control lever towards you to position ③ until it engages to switch the system off. The indicator lamp will disappear and the set speed will be deleted.

Selecting the speed regulation system

- Press the LIM button ④ to switch between the adaptive cruise control and the speed limiter.

Setting the speed and activating the regulating function

When you switch on the system, you can set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the regulating function.

- Press the SET button ① on the control lever.

Setting a new speed

Important: The system must be switched on.

- To increase or reduce the set speed in small steps, briefly push the control lever one level upwards or downwards to position ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *Fig. 105*.
- To increase or reduce the set speed in larger steps, briefly push the control lever two levels upwards or downwards to position ⊕/⊖.
- To increase or reduce the set speed continuously, push the control lever one or two levels upwards or downwards to position ⊕/⊖ and hold it there.

Pre-selecting a speed

You can pre-select the speed even when the speed regulation systems are inactive.

- Press the control lever towards ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *Fig. 105*.
- To activate the preset speed, pull the lever towards you to position ②.

Temporarily overriding the preset speed

Important: The system must be switched on and the stored preset speed must be activated.

- To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator past the point of resistance (kick-down feature).
- To reactivate the preset speed, pull the control lever towards you to position ②.

The stored preset speed or the speed limit currently detected will be reactivated automatically as soon as the road speed drops below the preset speed.

Applying detected speed limits

Important: The speed limiter must be switched on. The option to apply speed limits automatically must have been deactivated in the menu.

When a speed limit is detected, it is shown in the display next to the RES symbol.

- To apply a detected speed limit, pull the lever towards you to position ②.

The detected speed limit and the RES symbol will disappear after a short time. The detected speed limit can then no longer be applied. ▶

Interrupting the regulating function temporarily

Important: The system must be switched on and the stored preset speed must be activated.

▸ Push the control lever to position ③ (click stop not engaged).

If you deactivate the system briefly, the preset speed will remain stored.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The speed regulation systems may be switched off automatically if a fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while they are activated.
– Only accelerate quickly or use the kick-down feature when the visibility and weather conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you do so safely.

Driver messages about the cruise control systems

If LIM is displayed in the event of a fault, the corresponding cruise control systems are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the systems later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

LIM Speed limiter: function to use speed limit currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The predictive speed limiter function is temporarily unavailable. This is the case, for example, if the speed limit is below the minimum speed which can be set or if the function is not available in the country where you are currently driving. The speed will be limited to the speed which you have set manually.

Adaptive cruise control

Introduction

The **adaptive cruise control** assists you while driving by controlling the vehicle's speed within certain limits imposed by the system. If a vehicle is detected in front, the adaptive cruise control can brake and accelerate the vehicle and maintain the set distance to the vehicle in front as consistently as possible within certain limits imposed by the system.

In **congested traffic and traffic jams**, the system can brake down to a standstill and move off again automatically under certain conditions.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the **predictive cruise control** can adjust the cruising speed in response to events.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the **lane guidance** can provide assistance.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the **assisted lane change** function can direct the vehicle into an adjacent lane.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

System limits of the adaptive cruise control

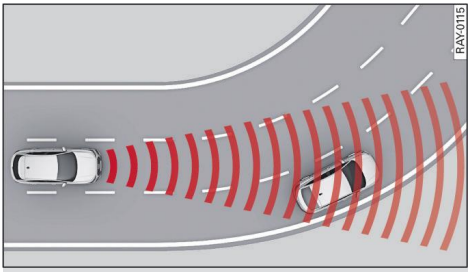


Fig. 107 Example: Driving into a bend

In some driving situations, the adaptive cruise control functions are restricted and you may need to intervene by, for example, braking the vehicle yourself:

– When driving into a bend ⇨ *Fig. 107* and driving out of a bend, the system may react to a vehicle travelling in the next lane and therefore brake the vehicle. You can override this by accelerating briefly.
– The system operates on the basis of information gathered from various sensors and cameras. Vehicles cannot be detected until they are within range and inside the sensors' field of vision.
– In tight bends, a vehicle driving ahead which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise control may no longer be recognised, and the system may accelerate unexpectedly as a result.
– The system will not react to stationary vehicles in the same lane if the system assumes that you can easily steer to avoid the stationary vehicle.
– The system does not react to pedestrians, animals or crossing or oncoming traffic.
– The system cannot react to stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam, particularly at high speeds.
– The ability of the system to detect vehicles in front is limited when they are too close, travelling out of line, or moving into your lane.
– Objects that are not clearly discernible, e.g. a motorcycle or cyclist travelling in front of you and vehicles with high ground clearance or a protruding load, are often identified late or are not detected at all.
– The system is switched off/cannot be switched on when the maximum possible road gradient for safe operation has been exceeded.
– The regulating function of the adaptive cruise control is only available when the ESC and traction control system have been switched on and are fully functional. Switch the systems on beforehand if necessary.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Overview of displays for the adaptive cruise control

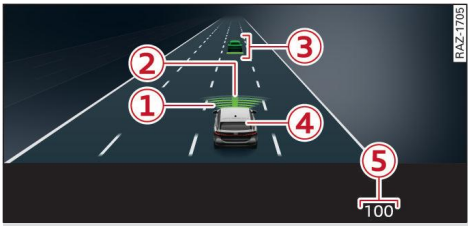


Fig. 108 Instrument cluster: Display with surroundings shown

The driving situation and the settings are displayed in the instrument cluster and on the head-up display. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

Display with surroundings shown

The display with surroundings only appears if it was selected in the instrument cluster.

① Display for active distance regulating function
② A vehicle in front has been detected. The green marking points towards the vehicle based on which the system is currently regulating.
③ Vehicle based on which system is regulating (highlighted)
④ Own vehicle
⑤ Set speed ▶

Warning and indicator lamps

– The speed/distance regulating function is active. No vehicle has been detected in front. The set speed will be maintained.

– The speed/distance regulating function is active. A vehicle in front has been detected. The system is regulating the speed to maintain a constant distance to the vehicle in front, and will accelerate and brake the vehicle automatically.

– The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is **not ready to drive off**. A vehicle in front has been detected. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.

– The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is **not ready to drive off**. No vehicle has been detected in front. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.

RES – The vehicle has been stationary for too long and is not ready to drive off. The symbol and a message indicate that it is possible to re-activate the period during which the vehicle is ready to drive off.

– You must intervene. The take over braking prompt or the safe start monitor is issuing a warning.

– The speed/distance regulating function is being overridden temporarily or has been interrupted briefly.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the adaptive cruise control

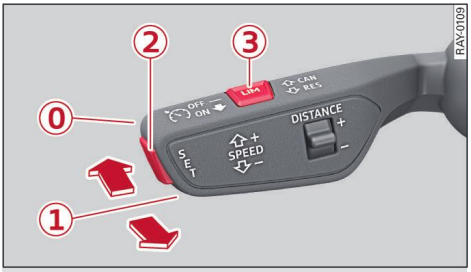


Fig. 109 Control lever: Operating the adaptive cruise control

Fig. 110 Control lever: Setting a new speed

⓪ If the control lever is engaged in this position, the system is switched off.

① If the control lever is engaged in this position, the system is switched on.

② SET Set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the cruise control.

③ LIM Switch between the speed limiter and the adaptive cruise control.

Switching on

▸ To switch the adaptive cruise control on, pull the lever towards you to position ① until it engages.

Setting the speed and activating the regulating function

When you switch on the system, you can set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the regulating function:

▸ Press the SET button ②. The set speed will be shown ⑤ ⇨ *page 185, Fig. 108*.

▸ If the vehicle is stationary, you should also keep the brake pedal depressed to store the speed. ▶

If the system has detected a vehicle in front, it will regulate your vehicle's speed to maintain a constant distance to the vehicle in front, and will accelerate and brake the vehicle automatically within the limits imposed by the system.

If the system has not detected a vehicle in front, the set speed will be maintained as consistently as possible.

You can set any speed between 20 km/h and the maximum of the available speed range [1]. If you store the current speed while travelling at a speed which is below the minimum speed which can actually be set, the minimum speed will be set as the cruising speed. If no vehicles have been detected in front, the vehicle will automatically accelerate up to this speed.

Interrupting the regulating function temporarily

The regulating function can be interrupted at any time.

- While driving or when stationary: Push the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow **CAN**, or
- While driving: Press the brake pedal.

Reactivating the regulating function

Once a speed has been set, it can be activated again after the regulating function has been paused.

- To reactivate the regulating function, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow **RES**.
- If the vehicle is stationary, you should also keep the brake pedal depressed to reactivate the regulating function.

Temporarily overriding the preset speed

- To override the regulating function temporarily in order to accelerate, press the accelerator.

The distance regulating function is not active.

Changing the set speed

- To change the set speed in small steps, briefly push the lever one level upwards or downwards towards (+)/(−).
- To change the set speed in larger steps, briefly push the lever two levels upwards or downwards towards (+)/(−).
- To change the set speed continuously, push the lever one or two levels upwards or downwards towards (+)/(−) and hold the lever until the desired speed is set.

Applies to vehicles with predictive cruise control: The cruising speed can be adapted in anticipation of events ⇨ *page 191*.

Pre-selecting a speed

You can pre-select the speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is inactive, by briefly pushing the lever in the appropriate direction (+)/(−). To activate the pre-selected speed, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow **RES**.

Switching off

You can switch off the adaptive cruise control if you will not be using it for an extended period of time.

- Push the lever away from you to position (0) until it engages.

Further information

– If the speed limiter is selected after the vehicle is switched on, the adaptive cruise control must have been selected beforehand. Press the LIM button (3) to select the adaptive cruise control.
– The speed setting is deleted for safety reasons when you switch off the vehicle or the adaptive cruise control.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

[1] Depends on country and engine type

– The adaptive cruise control serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering, driving off and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
– Only activate the adaptive cruise control when the visibility and weather conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you do so safely.
– Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.
– When you take a turn-off or drive along a motorway exit lane, please temporarily switch off the adaptive cruise control. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.

Take over braking prompt from the adaptive cruise control

If the system's braking performance is not sufficient, a message will appear instructing you to take over. In addition, / will light up. Apply the brakes to maintain a sufficient distance to the vehicle in front ⇨ ⚠!

The take over prompt may be accompanied by further acoustic and visual warning signals, depending on the situation.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The adaptive cruise control serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

Setting the distance regulating function

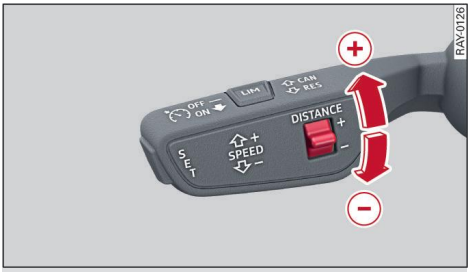


Fig. 111 Control lever: Setting the distance

When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise control matches your speed to that vehicle by applying the brakes within the limits imposed by the system. It then maintains a constant set distance. If the vehicle in front accelerates, the adaptive cruise control will also accelerate up to the target speed you have specified.

▸ To display the current distance setting, briefly press the rocker switch.
▸ To change the set distance by one level, briefly press the rocker switch towards ⊕/⊖ again.

When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Setting the distance changes the gap between your vehicle and the one ahead. The newly set distance will be displayed briefly. The higher the speed, the higher the distance. The following distances can be set:

Symbol	Time-based distance	Distance at 100 km/h
1	approx. 1 second	approx. 28 metres
2	approx. 1.3 seconds	approx. 36 metres
3	approx. 1.8 seconds (generally recommended)	approx. 50 metres

Symbol	Time-based distance	Distance at 100 km/h
4	approx. 2.4 seconds	approx. 67 metres
5	approx. 3.6 seconds	approx. 100 metres

The actual distance maintained by the adaptive cruise control may be longer or shorter, depending on the traffic situation and the driving style of the driver in front.

If the hazard alert function has detected a hazard, the system can automatically increase the distance.

Driving characteristics during assisted driving

The driving characteristics of the adaptive cruise control and the haptic feedback of the lane guidance vary depending on the vehicle's equipment and depend on:

– The set distance, or
– The selected Audi drive select mode, or
– The individual settings related to the driving characteristics in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

Store last distance

In the **Driver assist** menu, you can set ⇨ *page 164* whether you require the most recently set distance to be stored. If the distance is not stored, the distance 3 is automatically selected as the default setting every time the vehicle is switched on.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driving in congested traffic

Stopping with the adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control also helps you when driving in congested traffic. If a vehicle in front stops, the system applies the brakes (within the limits imposed by the system) and holds the vehicle at a standstill.

Driving off with the adaptive cruise control[1)]

When a message indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive off is shown on the display and the vehicle in front drives off, your vehicle will start moving ⇨ ⚠. The remaining time may be shown by the symbol.

If you have switched on the driver availability camera in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*, the period during which the vehicle is ready to drive off can be extended if the camera detects that you are alert.

If your vehicle has been stopped for too long, it will no longer move off automatically for safety reasons. A driver message will inform you that the vehicle is no longer ready to drive off and the symbol in front of the vehicle 1 will go out ⇨ *page 185, Fig. 108*.

▸ You can extend or re-activate the period in which the vehicle is ready to drive off automatically for a short time by pulling the lever towards you briefly in the direction of the arrow **RES** ⇨ *page 186, Fig. 109*.
▸ To set the vehicle in motion again immediately, tap the accelerator with your foot.

The RES symbol and a message indicate that it is possible to re-activate the period during which the vehicle is ready to drive off.

Safe start monitor

The vehicle may start moving even if it detects certain obstacles while doing so ⇨ ⚠. Various feedback will draw your attention to the danger if an obstacle is detected.

The or warning lamp will flash and the message **Warning: obstacle!** will appear. In addition, a tone will sound. Your vehicle will then set off more slowly. This can happen in certain situations, even if there appears to be no obstacle.

▸ If necessary, press the brake pedal to slow down. ▶

1) Not available on vehicles for some markets.

Further information

For safety reasons, the adaptive cruise control is activated only if

– the driver's seat belt is fastened,
– all the doors and the bonnet are closed,
– the vehicle has not been stopped for too long.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– When the message indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive off [1] is shown, your vehicle will start moving even if there is an obstacle between your vehicle and the vehicle in front. Always make sure that there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle in front – risk of accident!

Additional functions of the adaptive cruise control

Important: The regulating function of the adaptive cruise control must be activated for all additional functions that depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Overriding the cruise control or distance regulating function

▸ To briefly override the adaptive cruise control, pull and hold the lever ⇨ *page 186, Fig. 109* towards you in the direction of the arrow **RES**.

If a vehicle is detected in front: The distance is reduced to a closer distance than the one set for a brief period within the limits imposed by the system. This makes it easier to merge into another lane due to your lane ending, for example.

If there is no vehicle in front: The vehicle accelerates faster and the cruising speed is overridden.

The current set speed may also be exceeded. The distance regulating function remains active.

Response when turn signals are on (to move into a slower lane)[1][2]

If you operate the turn signal to move into a slower lane, for example, the system's regulating function can be extended to the adjacent lane. When the function is activated, the adaptive cruise control reduces your vehicle's speed so that you can filter into the adjacent lane behind the next vehicle more easily ⇨ ⚠.

Important: The activated system must have detected a motorway, the speed difference between the vehicles must be sufficiently small and there must be a sufficient distance between them. The traffic in which the vehicles are travelling must be flowing evenly.

▸ To activate the regulating function, operate the turn signal in the direction of the lane which you intend to move into.
▸ To stop the regulating function after a short time, switch the turn signal off again. If you press the accelerator pedal, the regulating function will be stopped immediately.

The distance to the vehicle in front in your lane will continue to be regulated within the limits of the system.

Response when turn signals are on (to overtake)

If you operate the turn signal and the adaptive cruise control concludes that you are intending to perform an overtaking manoeuvre, the system can accelerate before you change lane and reduce the distance to the vehicle ahead. This happens automatically if you are driving behind another vehicle and activate the turn signal to overtake.

Overtake prevention[3]

The adaptive cruise control can adjust the speed to avoid overtaking on the right/left[3]. The ▸

[1] Not available on vehicles for some markets.
[2] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.
[3] Depending on country

vehicle in the adjacent lane that the system is reacting to is marked in the display with surroundings. The display with surroundings only appears if it was selected in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The additional functions are designed to assist the driver. As the driver, when you use the functions you still maintain full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to changing lane, braking, controlling the vehicle's speed and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

Driver messages about the adaptive cruise control

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the adaptive cruise control functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Predictive cruise control

Introduction

The predictive cruise control adapts the cruising speed of the adaptive cruise assist to recognised speed limits and the road layout ahead.

After regulation for such events is completed, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates back up to the generally applicable speed limit or the recommended speed for the road in question.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the system can access data from the navigation system, from the camera behind the windscreen and from the radar sensors.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the predictive cruise control

Important

– At least one predictive cruise control function must be switched on in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.
– The adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating the vehicle's speed ⇨ *page 186*.
– The map material on the navigation system must be updated regularly to ensure the system can function without limitations ⇨ *page 262*.
– For certain regulating functions, the MMI must be connected to the internet.

Event symbols

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, event symbols may indicate what the predictive cruise control is reacting to:

Symbol	Description
30	Speed limit: The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.
	Speed limit no longer applies
	Bend
	Slip road
	Exit
	Intersection

8B1012720AG

Symbol	Description
	Roundabout
	Speed bump or uneven surface
	Give way[a)]
	Stop sign with detected stop line. The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.
	If the symbol appears in green and white, a stop sign has been detected but no stop line has been recognised. You must apply the brakes yourself ⇨ ⚠.

a) The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

In addition, the area between the vehicle and the event ahead in the instrument cluster may be shown in green.

Manual or automatic adaptation to speed limits

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can select ⇨ *page 164* whether adaptation to speed limits should be performed automatically or whether the driver must confirm this manually for each event in the **Driver assist** menu.

– To confirm adaptation to a detected speed limit and accept it manually, pull the control lever ⇨ *page 186, Fig. 109* towards you briefly in the direction of the arrow **RES**.

Overriding the predictive control

You can override the predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator. In addition, the control lever ⇨ *page 186, Fig. 109* can be used to adapt the speed limit control response.

The predictive control is interrupted if you make a significant change to the speed limit control response. The adaptive cruise assist then regulates the speed to match the manually set value.

System limits

– Within the limits imposed by the system, it may occasionally not be possible to react to certain speed limits.
– Certain regulating functions are not available in certain driving situations or at high speeds.
– The system does not give way to priority traffic and does not react to traffic lights – risk of accident!

Further information

– When using the predictive control, the actual road speed may be above or below the maximum speed limit. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep within the speed limit.
– The actual traffic signs and traffic lights on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The set speed is adjusted when a speed limit is detected even when the adaptive cruise assist is not actively regulating the speed.
– Depending on vehicle's equipment, the recuperation function may cause the actual road speed to occasionally exceed or fall below the set speed.
– The system's control response depends on the driving characteristics set for the adaptive cruise assist and/or (on vehicles with Audi drive select) the selected mode.
– After the vehicle is switched on, a speed of 130 km/h[1)] is set automatically when the vehicle is first driven onto a motorway or similar road, provided that no speed limits are detected and you have not set a different cruising speed.
– If a speed above 130 km/h[1)] has been set by the driver on motorways or similar roads, the vehicle will accelerate back up to this set speed after regulation for a specific event has been completed.
– The system will only regulate the speed at motorway junctions or on slip roads if these are part of the route set in the route guidance. ▶

1) Depending on country

– If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition or if the map material on the navigation system is incorrect or out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.
– While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The predictive control serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle, especially with regard to braking and observing right of way rules.
– Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the predictive control. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care – risk of accident!
– The speed at which the system drives the vehicle through a corner may not correspond to your own driving style or ambient conditions. To avoid a risk of accident, apply the brakes manually as necessary, and reduce the speed setting in **Adaptation to route ahead**.

Adjusting the predictive cruise control

You can switch the predictive cruise control on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

Adaptation to speed limits

The adaptation according to speed limits can be switched on or off. The optional control setting **Adjust with tolerance** can also be applied. In this case, the actual speed can be above or below the preset speed briefly for increased efficiency. This may result in a delay in observing the speed limit.

Adaptation to route ahead

The adaptation according to the route ahead can be switched on or off. This setting affects the handling characteristics of the predictive control and you can also set how fast the vehicle will drive through corners.

Adaptation to right of way

The regulation for right of way that takes e.g. detected stop signs into account, can be switched on/off.

Adaptation to uneven surfaces

Regulation of the speed when speed bumps and uneven surfaces are detected can be switched on/off.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Combined assist systems

Adaptive cruise assist

Introduction

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the adaptive cruise assist[1)] combines the predictive cruise control ⇨ *page 191* and the lane guidance function ⇨ *page 176* with the functions of the adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 184*.

The displays for the availability and status are the same as those for the individual systems. Please note the corresponding descriptions and system limits.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
- The adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering, driving off and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
- Only switch on the adaptive cruise assist in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- When you take a turn-off or drive along a motorway exit lane, please temporarily switch off the adaptive cruise assist. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.

Linking lane guidance to the adaptive cruise assist

You can link activation of the lane guidance to the activation/deactivation of the adaptive cruise assist in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 194*.

Link switched on: Lane guidance is switched on/off in combination with the activation/deactivation of the adaptive cruise assist.

Link switched off: Lane guidance can be switched on/off independently of the adaptive cruise assist.

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driver messages about the adaptive cruise assist

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the adaptive cruise assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

1) The name of the system may vary depending on the vehicle's equipment.

Systems for braking and taking evasive action

Emergency assist

Introduction

The emergency assist can detect if the driver is inactive within certain system limits. In such cases, the system is activated automatically. The driver is prompted to take control of the vehicle by visual, acoustic and haptic measures. If the driver does not take control, the system takes over operation of the vehicle within the limits imposed by the system to bring it to a standstill in the same lane.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
- The emergency assist is a system which is designed to help (in an emergency only) by taking control of the vehicle and bringing it to a stop. If the system is activated at an undesirable time, you can cancel the emergency assist.
- The emergency assist is not designed to avoid collisions with physical lane delineators, such as concrete barriers.

Measures and availability of the emergency assist

Measures implemented by the emergency assist

The vehicle can intervene within the limits of the system. Only some of the measures may be activated depending on the hazard situation detected and the vehicle equipment. Some measures may be modified or skipped. The following measures may be implemented in stages:

- Visual and acoustic warnings
- Support with controlling the vehicle through distance regulation and lane guidance
- Gradual reduction in vehicle speed
- Infotainment volume reduction
- Seat belt jolt
- Brake jolt
- Hazard warning lights are activated
- Protective measures of the proactive occupant protection system are triggered
- The brakes are applied and the vehicle is brought to a standstill
- The vehicle's horn sounds repeatedly

As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the parking brake is applied, transmission position P is selected, the doors are unlocked and the interior lights are switched on. A few seconds after the vehicle has stopped, an emergency call[1] will be placed if necessary.

Availability of the emergency assist

- The emergency assist is available automatically, irrespective of speed, when it is switched on and lane guidance is active.
- When lane guidance is not active, the emergency assist is available at speeds above approx. 65 km/h.
- The emergency assist is available at low speeds when the fatigue warning[1] and the driver availability camera[1] are switched on.

System limits

The emergency assist may be restricted or unavailable in the following situations:

- If any of the requirements for the adaptive cruise control, lane guidance or lane departure warning are no longer met.
- If the driver availability camera functions are restricted or it is not available.
- After the emergency assist is activated, you must wait for a short period of time before the system becomes available again.

Display overview

If the system detects that the driver is inactive, it issues a warning in the form of the symbol and a corresponding driver message. ▶

[1] This function is not available on all models or in all countries.

The symbol shown by the emergency assist indicates that the distance regulation is active and the system is intervening in the braking.

The symbol shown by the emergency assist indicates that the distance regulation and lane guidance are active and the system is intervening in the braking.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the emergency assist

Automatic activation

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the emergency assist is activated automatically if it detects that the driver is inactive.

If the vehicle is being driven manually without any assist systems that intervene in the steering, the time that passes before the driver is identified as inactive can be adjusted via the sensitivity setting. The sensitivity can be adjusted in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*. Low sensitivity results in the emergency assist being activated later if the vehicle is being driven manually without any assist systems that intervene in the steering.

Cancelling the emergency assist

Some of the possible ways to cancel the emergency assist are:

– Moving the steering wheel, or
– Applying the brake pedal, or
– Pressing the accelerator firmly.

When the vehicle is stationary, the emergency assist can be cancelled by moving out of transmission position P or by releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 117*.

If you cancel the intervention by the system, will light up and a corresponding message will appear.

Switching on/off

You can switch the emergency assist on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

If you switch the system off, will light up and a corresponding message will appear.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driver messages about the emergency assist

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the emergency assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Check whether the issue still occurs the next time you switch on the vehicle.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Active front assist

Introduction

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the active front assist can identify if there is a danger of collision and initiate appropriate safety measures to avoid a collision occurring. You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the active front assist intervenes.

In certain situations, functions of the proactive occupant protection system may also be triggered.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Functions of the active front assist

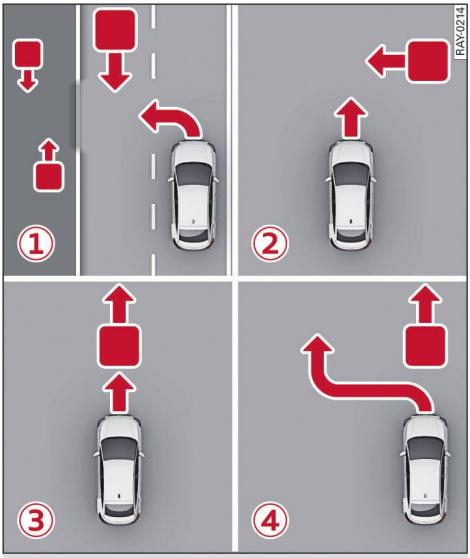


Fig. 112 Functions of the active front assist (examples)

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the active front assist can initiate appropriate safety measures to avoid a collision occurring in the following situations:

① **You are turning off and an object comes towards you or crosses the road into which you are turning**

The system may intervene when turning off as soon as the vehicle is moving.

If you are travelling at a speed of up to approx. 30 km/h, the system can detect and react to the following objects:

– Oncoming vehicles in the opposite lane.
– Road users crossing the road (e.g. pedestrians or cyclists).

② **An object crosses your vehicle's path**

The system may intervene when crossing objects are detected as soon as the vehicle is moving.

Depending on the speed of your vehicle specified below, the system can detect and react to the following objects:

– Up to approx. 65 km/h: vehicles crossing the road.
– Up to approx. 85 km/h: road users crossing the road (e.g. pedestrians or cyclists).

③ **You are driving towards an object in front of you in your lane**

The system may intervene when objects are detected in your lane from speeds of approx. 5 km/h.

Depending on the speed of your vehicle specified below, the system can detect and react to the following objects:

– Up to approx. 120 km/h: stationary or moving cyclists and pedestrians.
– Up to approx. 250 km/h: stationary vehicles and vehicles that are moving slowly or braking heavily.

④ **You must take evasive action to avoid an object in your lane**

The assistance when avoiding a collision is activated at speeds above approx. 30 km/h.

Depending on the speed of your vehicle specified below, the system can detect and assist you in avoiding the following objects:

– Up to approx. 85 km/h: stationary or pedestrians/cyclists moving along the road.
– Up to approx. 150 km/h: stationary vehicles and vehicles that are moving slowly or braking heavily.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

System limits of the active front assist

The active front assist may be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:

– In tight corners or during dynamic manoeuvres.
– If the vehicle is in towing a trailer.
– If the vehicle is reversing.
– If the brake lights are faulty.
– If there is a fault in the airbag control unit.
– If the sensors or the front camera are faulty.
– If there is a fault in the ESC or if the ESC is restricted/deactivated.
– If the vehicle towing another vehicle ▶

– In transmission position P.
– If there is a fault in the steering system.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The protection provided by the active front assist is still subject to the prevailing physical limits. It is a driver assist function and cannot prevent a collision in every situation. The driver must always intervene personally. It is always the driver's responsibility to brake in good time. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
– Among other things, the active front assist does not react to animals and objects such as walls, poles, fences, railbound vehicles and waste containers.
– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– If the system intervenes, there is a risk of injury, especially if occupants are not sitting in the correct position or not wearing a seat belt. Ensure that all occupants have their seat belts fastened correctly and are seated properly as described in this manual ⇨ *page 69*.
– If the brakes are applied automatically when towing a trailer, the behaviour of the trailer under braking may be different than usual. The reaction of the active front assist may be restricted or the system may be unavailable if the vehicle is towing a heavy load.

Overview of measures to avoid a collision

Only some of the measures may be activated depending on the hazard situation detected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.

The active front assist functions are unavailable if appears on the centre display, e.g. if braking intervention has temporarily been deactivated.

Visual warnings

Depending on the measure initiated and the hazard situation, a symbol and a corresponding driver messages may appear in the instrument cluster.

The symbol appears if one of the following measures is initiated:
– Collision warning
– Brake jolt
– Automatic brake pressure increase
– Automatic braking

The symbol appears when the swerve support / automatic emergency steering is active.

Cross-traffic information

If road users crossing the vehicle's path are detected, the symbol appears on the instrument cluster and (if fitted) on the head-up display. If the parking aid is activated, the symbol also appears on the centre display.

Collision warning

If a potential collision risk is detected, you will be informed of this risk by a visual and acoustic warning.

Brake jolt

In the event of an impending collision, an acute warning may also be given in the form of a brake jolt. You may need to take evasive action or brake hard to avoid a collision.

Automatic brake pressure increase

If you do not brake hard enough in the event of an impending collision, the brake pressure may be increased automatically in certain situations.

Automatic braking

The system can, subject to general system limits, apply the brakes heavily in order to avoid a collision or reduce the impact of a potential collision. If the system brakes the vehicle to a stop, the vehicle will then be held at a standstill. If the vehicle cannot be held at a standstill, a driver message will appear and you must take control of the vehicle. ▶

Automatic emergency steering

If the system detects that a frontal collision may be about to occur, the vehicle can initiate an evasive manoeuvre within its own lanes provided that the space required for the manoeuvre is not blocked. During the evasive manoeuvre, steering intervention is performed automatically and the brakes may also be applied depending on the situation. In addition, a warning tone sounds and a display appears in the dash panel insert. The driver is responsible for controlling the vehicle for the entire duration of the evasive manoeuvre.

Swerve support

If you take action to avoid an obstacle following an acute warning, the swerve support will assist you when you are steering the vehicle. As long as you are steering actively, the function brakes individual wheels and applies a small steering impulse to stabilise and, if necessary, correct the evasive manoeuvre. The driver is responsible for controlling the vehicle for the entire duration of the evasive manoeuvre.

Using the active front assist

Overriding the active front assist

You can cancel collision avoidance measures initiated by the system by pressing the accelerator firmly or steering.

Adjusting the active front assist settings

You can switch the active front assist and some of the measures for avoiding a collision on/off and adjust the settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

If the system is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch the vehicle on.

If the system is switched off, the indicator lamp will light up and a message will appear.

The active front assist may intervene during an assisted parking manoeuvre, even if the active front assist was switched off previously. If the active front assist is switched off, it will remain switched off after an assisted parking manoeuvre.

Dealing with undesired system interventions

Undesired system interventions may occur in particular situations.

Audi recommends switching off the active front assist in the following situations:

– If you are using the vehicle away from public roads.
– If the vehicle is being towed away or loaded onto a transporter or similar.
– After an impact on components around the radar sensors, e.g. if the front of the vehicle has been damaged in an accident.
– If the radar sensors or the camera are faulty or the windscreen is damaged in the area around the camera's field of vision.
– If the system is triggered at an undesirable time on several occasions.

WARNING

Undesired system interventions may result in an accident. Do not use the system in situations where undesired system interventions may occur.

Driver messages about the active front assist

When the vehicle is started, the indicator lamp / lights up to indicate that the system is only available with restrictions. The indicator lamp will go out as soon as the system is available without restrictions.

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the active front assist and the distance warning are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*.

If the message is still displayed when you switch the vehicle back on, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

8B1012720AG

Rear turn assist

Using the rear turn assist

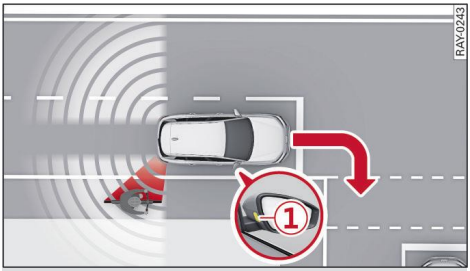


Fig. 113 Driving situation and warning signal on exterior mirror

Introduction

The rear turn assist monitors the blind spot and the traffic behind your vehicle in the neighbouring lanes and helps you when turning off. If the system detects an approaching object which it judges to be critical, the warning signal (1) lights up on the exterior mirror on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

Driving situations

– Your vehicle is being overtaken by another vehicle. The faster this vehicle approaches from behind, the earlier the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.
– There are vehicles travelling at a similar speed in the next lane. The warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror by the time the detected object is in your blind spot.
– You are overtaking another vehicle slowly. If the speed differential between the two vehicles is not greater than approx. 15 km/h, the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.
– The traffic in the neighbouring lane is monitored while you are driving out of a parallel parking space with a turn signal switched on. If an object approaches, the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror. If the risk of a collision increases, the system may initiate emergency braking.

Information mode

When you switch a turn signal on, the system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical by activating the warning signal (1) on the corresponding exterior mirror.

The intensity of the warning signal in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

Warning mode

As soon as you activate a turn signal, the system warns you of objects which it judges to be critical and with which the collision risk is increasing by flashing the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror. A warning tone will sound if the situation becomes more critical. The system may also jolt the brakes or initiate emergency braking as an additional warning.

Instrument cluster display

In addition to the warning signal on the exterior mirror, a graphic for the rear turn assist (information and warning level) is shown in the instrument cluster. The symbol is shown in grey at the information level and red at the warning level.

Switching the rear turn assist on/off

You can switch the rear turn assist on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

System limits

The rear turn assist is active at speeds of up to approx. 60 km/h when a turn signal is on.

The system is not available at very low speeds.

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 164*. The sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations it is possible that the system may react to vehicles in your own lane or two lanes away, or to objects at the edge of the lane. The warning signal then lights up even though there are no vehicles in the critical area. Such situations may include:

– When driving at the edge of your own lane
– When driving in narrow lanes
– When driving through a corner
– If there are high barriers next to the lane
– When driving through roadworks ▶

Information on the rear turn assist

– The warning signals on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *page 168, Fig. 96* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The warning signal may not light up in time or may not light up at all if other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly.
– The rear turn assist does not react to people. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.

Driver messages about the rear turn assist

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear turn assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Further assist systems

Predictive efficiency messages

Introduction

The predictive efficiency messages can help you to anticipate the driving route and adopt an economical driving style. Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the system can access data from the navigation system, from the camera behind the windscreen and from the radar sensors.

When you have switched on automatic recuperation and you take your foot off the accelerator, the efficiency assist controls the recuperation and coasting phases depending on the situation and the vehicle's equipment.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using predictive efficiency messages

Important

– The adaptive cruise control or the adaptive cruise assist must not be regulating the speed.
– The remaining route must be long enough for the system to react to the event.

Display[1)]

The symbol appears in the instrument cluster display and on the head-up display as soon as the efficiency assist recommends that you take your foot off the accelerator.

In driving program S and on vehicles with Audi drive select, the type of information displayed may vary depending on the transmission position and on the driving mode currently selected.

On vehicles with Audi drive select, more messages are shown in the **efficiency** mode.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, event symbols may indicate which event the function is reacting to:

Symbol	Description
30	Speed limit: The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.
	Bend
	Exit: The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.
	Intersection
	Roundabout
%	Gradient
	Vehicle ahead

Switching the predictive efficiency messages on/off

You can switch the predictive messages on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

System limits

– The functions depend on how up-to-date the navigation data are and the area detected by the camera.
– The speed must be at least 30 km/h.
– Certain functions are not available when you leave the road area mapped on the navigation system.

Further information

– The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country. ▶

[1)] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

– If a route has been planned on vehicles with a navigation system, that route will be used as reference for the tips given. If no route has been entered, the system uses an assumed route plan to predict the situation ahead.
– The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the efficiency assist. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
– In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes – risk of accident!

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Introduction

The traffic sign recognition system displays traffic signs detected by the camera behind the windscreen in the instrument cluster and the head-up display. Data from the navigation system are also factored into the information displayed.

The traffic sign recognition system only informs and warns you of speed limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, additional driver assist systems may adjust the vehicle's speed.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Traffic sign recognition display

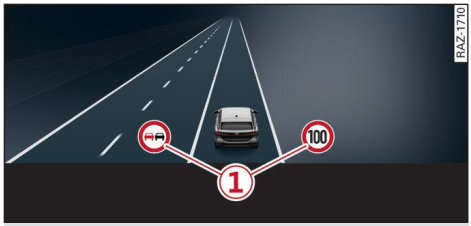


Fig. 114 Instrument cluster: Traffic sign recognition

Traffic signs ① which currently apply are shown in the instrument cluster.

In cases where the system is able to detect particular types of restrictions, these are displayed under the following conditions:

	A temporary speed limit for wet weather is detected and the vehicle sensors, e.g. the rain sensor, detect that the limit actually applies.
	A temporary speed limit for fog is detected and the camera behind the windscreen detects that the limit actually applies.
	A speed limit applying at certain times of day has been detected and corresponds to the time displayed in the instrument cluster.
	The vehicle is towing a trailer and the **Trailer-specific speed limits** option is activated on the centre display. In this case, traffic signs applying to vehicles towing trailers are displayed. This only applies to factory-fitted towing brackets.

The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. The number displayed may represent mph or km/h, depending on the country.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

System limits of the traffic sign recognition

The traffic sign recognition function is subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the situations such as the following:

– The traffic sign recognition system is not available in all countries.
– The display/availability of certain traffic signs may be restricted in some countries.
– If the vehicle speed is too high.
– If the traffic signs are partially or completely obscured, e.g. by trees, snow, mud or other vehicles.
– If traffic signs deviate from the standard appearance.
– If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
– If matrix traffic signs are mounted on overhead gantries.
– If traffic signs or routes have changed and the navigation data are out of date.
– If speed stickers on slow-moving vehicles (such as heavy goods vehicles) are detected.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Under adverse conditions, the traffic sign recognition system may misinterpret or fail to detect traffic signs. It is therefore possible that the speed limit display may occasionally be unavailable or even incorrect – risk of accident! It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.

Setting the traffic sign recognition

Traffic sign-based speed warning

You can switch the visual and acoustic speed warnings on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*. If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button accordingly, press the ✳ button on the multi-function steering wheel to deactivate the acoustic speed warnings.

Depending on the country, speed warnings are either reset to the default setting or the last setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Warning threshold if a speed is exceeded (km/h) – You can set a custom warning threshold in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*. During any period in which you exceed the warning threshold, the speed limit currently detected will be shown on the display with an exclamation mark and will flash continuously. Depending on the setting, a warning tone may also sound briefly. Depending on the country, the value set is either stored after a restart or reset to the default setting if a warning threshold of 5 km/h or 10 km/h was previously selected.

Warning tone when speed is exceeded – You can activate/deactivate the acoustic warning which is issued when a specific speed is exceeded in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*. Depending on the country, the setting is either reset to the default or the last setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Tone when speed limit changes – You can activate/deactivate an acoustic warning which is issued when a speed limit changes in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*. The most recent setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Settings related to towing a trailer[1)]

You can switch the trailer-specific speed warning on/off and adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*. The following settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle and only apply to factory-fitted towing brackets.

Available settings:

Trailer-specific speed limits

Important: The automatic trailer recognition must be activated. ▶

[1)] Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

You can display speed limits which apply specifically to vehicles towing a trailer.

Maximum trailer speed setting (km/h)

You can set the maximum speed permitted for your type of trailer. The setting is adjusted when you are driving in a country where a different maximum speed is permitted for the trailer. You must set the appropriate value when you first drive in the country in question.

Driver messages about the traffic sign recognition

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the camera-based traffic sign recognition functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message may appear for some of the displays indicating the cause and possible remedy or changes made based on the speed warning. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or the camera behind the windscreen may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the camera and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Hazard alerts

Introduction

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, your vehicle may be able to receive, send and display hazard alerts. The hazard alerts function can inform you about hazards such as accidents or breakdowns on your route or in the vicinity of your vehicle. If a vehicle ahead of you detects a hazard, this hazard alert is sent to your vehicle via the internet and displayed in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when hazard alerts are displayed. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Overview of hazard alert displays

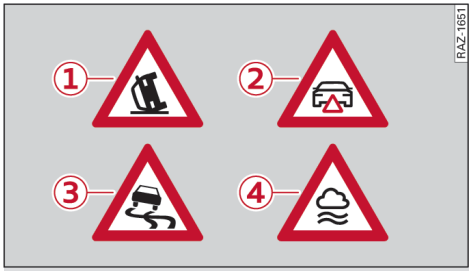


Fig. 115 Warning symbols shown by the hazard alerts function

The warning symbols shown by the hazard alerts function inform you about different hazards in the vicinity of your vehicle.

	Meaning
1	Accident: This hazard alert warns you about a vehicle that has been involved in an accident.
2	Breakdown: This hazard alert warns you about a vehicle that has broken down.
3	Skidding risk: This hazard alert warns you about slippery or icy conditions, for example.
4	Poor visibility: This hazard alert warns you about poor visibility due to fog or heavy rain, for example.

Depending on the vehicle speed, the type of road and the hazard, only the most important information may be displayed.

When route guidance is active, hazards on your route are displayed on the map as coloured warning symbols. Hazards that are not on your route are displayed as greyed-out warning symbols. All ▶

hazards are displayed in colour on the map when route guidance is not active.

System limits of hazard alerts

The hazard alerts function is subject to system limits. Unrestricted use cannot be guaranteed in all traffic situations and driving modes. Availability depends on a number of factors including:

– The vehicles ahead of you are equipped with the technology to send hazard alerts.
– The vehicles ahead of you have detected a hazard.
– The hazard alerts are correctly transferred to your vehicle from the third party.

Example causes of undetected hazards:

– Accident: The vehicle did not make an emergency call.
– Breakdown: The vehicle's hazard warning lights were not switched on.
– Skidding risk: Vehicles travelling ahead did not identify reduced friction between the tyres and the road.
– Poor visibility: The rear fog light or wipers were not activated on vehicles travelling ahead.

Using hazard alerts

The hazard alerts are shown in the instrument cluster, on the centre display and (if fitted) on the head-up display.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

Hazard alerts in the instrument cluster

Depending on the hazard alert received, a notification may be displayed in the instrument cluster for several seconds.

▸ To hide the notification, press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel.

Hazard alerts on the head-up display

Important: Hazard alerts must have been switched on as display content in the head-up display ⇨ *page 29*.

Depending on the hazard alert received, it will be shown in a notification on the head-up display for a few seconds.

▸ To hide the notification, press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel.

Hazard alerts on the centre display

Hazards caused by accidents, breakdowns and skidding risks are displayed on the map.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Navigation**.
▸ Press on a warning symbol in the map to view detailed information about the hazard alert.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Proactive occupant protection

Introduction

Within certain limits imposed by the system, the proactive occupant protection can identify critical driving situations and initiate appropriate safety measures to protect the vehicle occupants.

When the system initiates occupant protection measures, the symbol appears in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the head-up display.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The protection provided by the proactive occupant protection is still subject to the prevailing physical limits. It is a driver assist function and cannot prevent a collision on its own. The driver must always intervene personally. It is always the driver's responsibility to brake in good time. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!

Proactive occupant protection functions

The proactive occupant protection system consists of several functions which are able to react to different situations within the system limits by implementing measures to protect the vehicle occupants.

Proactive occupant protection

The main proactive occupant protection function reacts in critical situations, e.g. if the vehicle understeers or oversteers, during preventative/emergency braking with the electromechanical parking brake or in the event of a minor collision. The system is able to react at speeds from approx. 30 km/h.

Proactive occupant protection, front

The front proactive occupant protection function reacts when a collision is likely to occur at the front of the vehicle. The system is able to react at speeds from approx. 15 km/h.

Proactive occupant protection, rear

The rear proactive occupant protection function reacts when a rear collision is likely to be caused by the vehicle behind. The system is able to react at speeds up to approx. 250 km/h.

Proactive occupant protection, side

The side proactive occupant protection function reacts when a collision is likely to be caused by a vehicle crossing in front of the vehicle or a vehicle coming from the side. The system is able to react at speeds up to approx. 250 km/h when driving forwards and approx. 20 km/h when reversing.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

System limits of the proactive occupant protection system

The proactive occupant protection functions may be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:

– If the occupants are not wearing seat belts.
– If the vehicle is reversing.
– If there is a fault in the airbag control unit.
– If there is a fault in the active front assist.
– If there is a fault in the side assist function.
– If there is a fault in the ESC or if the ESC is restricted/deactivated.
– If the vehicle is in towing a trailer.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The rear and side proactive occupant protection functions do not react to people, animals and objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

Overview of measures implemented by the proactive occupant protection system

Only some of the occupant protection functions may be activated depending on the hazard situation and the Audi drive select mode selected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.

Depending on the vehicle's speed and equipment, the following measures may be initiated in certain situations:

– Visual and acoustic warnings.
– The hazard warning lights will be activated[1].
– Reversible seat belt tensioners.
– The windows will be closed.
– Adjustment of the seats.

[1] Depending on country

Driver messages about the proactive occupant protection system

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the proactive occupant protection functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*.

An Audi drive select mode might be selected that limits the functions of the proactive occupant protection system. Select a different Audi drive select mode if desired.

If the message is still displayed when you switch the vehicle back on, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Traffic light information

Introduction

Within the system limits, the traffic light information function helps to reduce stop-start traffic and improve the flow of traffic. For this purpose, you are shown the ideal speed at which to travel so that you reach the next set of traffic lights when they are green.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
- Never allow the displayed traffic light information to distract your attention from the road – risk of accident! Always monitor the distance to other vehicles and the area around the vehicle. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
- Never allow the traffic light information displayed to lead you to disregard traffic regulations or take risks – risk of accident! It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.

Overview of traffic light information displays

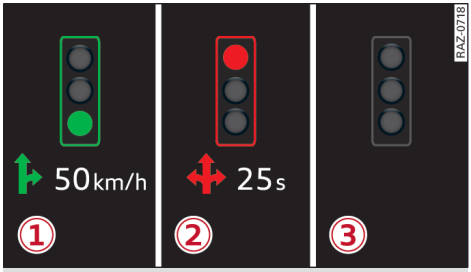


Fig. 116 Instrument cluster: Traffic light information display

The traffic light information function tells you the speed at which you need to travel to reach the next traffic light on green ①. It also informs you how long you will be waiting at the next red light ②. The traffic light information is shown in the instrument cluster and head-up display as soon as traffic light data is available. If certain system limits are reached, the speed recommendation or the waiting time at a red traffic light cannot be shown and a grey traffic light symbol ③ is shown instead. This is the case if the distance to the traffic light is less than 30 metres, for example.

System limits of the traffic light information function

The traffic light information function is subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

- If the current speed limit is being exceeded.
- If the vehicle is travelling below a specific speed.
- If the next traffic light is less than approx. 30 m away.
- If the waiting time at a red light is less than four seconds.
- If no traffic light data are available. ▶

– If the map material on the navigation system or the navigation data being used are out of date.
– If emergency or public transport vehicles override the regular traffic light cycle.
– If traffic lights are being serviced.
– If the data connection has been interrupted.
– If the privacy settings in your vehicle are incompatible.
– If the licence for the traffic light information function has expired.

Information on the traffic light information

The traffic light information is available only in a small number of selected cities and not in all areas.

Some traffic lights can react to different traffic situations. In this case, the traffic light information display may change abruptly.

If the map material on the navigation system is out of date, the information on the display may be implausible or incorrect, or the data may not be shown at all.

The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Whether or not you use the traffic light information, it is vital to check the road speed with the speedometer and to stay within the maximum speed limit.

The measurement units and language settings shown in the display are based on the MMI system settings.

Switching the traffic light information on/off

You can switch the **traffic light information** on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

Lap timer

Information on the lap timer

You can use the lap timer to record and evaluate lap times. Up to 99 lap times can be recorded.

Completed laps are listed in the lap statistics. The fastest and slowest times and the average lap time from all completed laps are also shown.

You can call up information from the on-board computer while the stopwatch of the lap timer is running.

WARNING

Please direct your full attention to the road at all times. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the lap timer functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – risk of accident!

Using the lap timer

Calling up the lap timer

The lap timer is displayed in one of the left tabs in the instrument cluster.

▸ Press the ▭ / ▭ button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until S content is displayed.
▸ Scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel until **Lap times** is displayed.
▸ To confirm the selection, press the left thumbwheel. Information is also provided in the head-up display.

Recording lap times

▸ To start the lap timer manually, select **Start lap 1**.
▸ To start the lap timer automatically when you drive off, select **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off**.
▸ To time another lap after completing a lap, select **New lap**. The next lap time starts running immediately.

When you finish a lap, the lap time is compared with the best lap and the difference is indicated by a – or +. Deviations may occur in the differences calculated by the system due to rounding. ▸

Interrupting the lap timer (pause) and displaying split times

- To pause the lap timer, select **Pause**.
- To start the lap timer again, select **Resume**.
- To display a split time, select **Split time**. The current lap time continues running in the meantime.
- To display the current lap time again, select **Back - select OK**.

Cancelling lap times

- Select **Cancel lap**. The lap time is deleted and is not included in the statistics.

Resetting the lap timer

- Select **Reset lap timer**.

Exiting the lap timer

- Select **Back** to exit the lap timer.

Calling up the lap statistics

Important: At least two laps must already have been recorded.

- To call up the lap statistics, select **Lap statistics**.

The number of laps so far, the fastest lap +, the slowest lap – and the average time (avg.) are displayed.

- To scroll through the list of individual lap times, select **Show all laps**.
- To reset the lap statistics, select **Reset statistics**.

Electronic toll collection system

Introduction

You can use the electronic toll collection system (ETC) to pay for tolls due on particular routes with a registered ETC card. When the vehicle passes a toll station, the toll due is shown on the centre display and, depending on the settings, may also be spoken aloud.

Setting up

Registration

The ETC will be registered by your qualified workshop when you take receipt of the vehicle.

You can view the data required for registration.

- Select: > **ETC** > **Hardware information**.

If the vehicle's number plate is changed, the ETC must be re-registered.

Activation/deactivation

The ETC card reader is located in the glove box.

- To activate the ETC, insert the ETC card chip-first into the slot in the ETC card reader. The ETC symbol will appear in the status bar on the centre display if the data have been read correctly.
- To deactivate the ETC, press the eject button on the ETC card reader and remove the ETC card. The NO ETC symbol will appear in the status bar on the centre display.

Changing the settings for the electronic toll collection system

You can switch certain functions of the ETC on/off.

- Select: > **ETC** > **Settings**.

Probe data upload

The function that sends vehicle and position data that is required for discounts to tolls can be switched on/off. We strongly recommend that you switch this function on.

Displaying toll payment history

You can display the most recent toll payments (up to 100 payments).

- Select: > **ETC** > **Payment history**.

Troubleshooting for the electronic toll collection system

Troubleshooting options are given below. ▶

Subject	Advice
Error code 2 or 3 is shown.	Contact the ETC card provider.
Error code 5 is shown.	Check that the ETC card is inserted in the ETC card reader correctly. If the fault persists, contact a qualified workshop.
Other error codes are shown.	Follow the instructions given by the system.

Parking systems
Parking aids with distance display

Introduction

Parking aids help you when parking and manoeuvring the vehicle. If an obstacle is detected by the ultrasonic sensors on the vehicle ⇨ *page 162, Fig. 89*, you are informed of this by visual and acoustic warnings.

The following parking aids may be available, depending on the vehicle's equipment:

– The **rear parking aid** only provides warnings about obstacles in the area behind the vehicle.
– The **parking aid plus** warns you about obstacles in front of, behind and beside the vehicle.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Parking aid displays and warnings

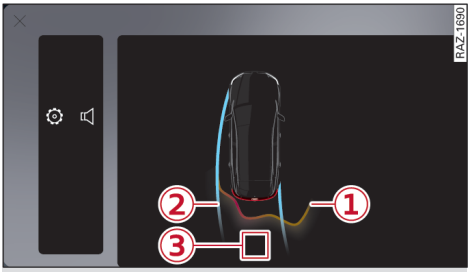


Fig. 117 Centre display: Parking aid with distance display

Displays

① The coloured distance display shows you the distance to detected obstacles. The coloured distance display approaches the vehicle as the distance from the vehicle to the obstacle gets shorter. If the distance to the obstacle is too short, the distance display turns red. Do not continue driving forwards/reversing ⇨ ⓘ.

② The light blue lines indicate the anticipated path of the vehicle, depending on the steering wheel angle.

③ The numerical distance display shows the distance to the obstacle as a numerical value. If an obstacle in the vehicle's path is less than 30 cm away, **Stop** is displayed. Do not continue driving forwards/reversing.

There is no side distance warning (depending on the vehicle's equipment) or rear distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the front or rear of the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle[1]. A continuous warning tone will also sound if there is an obstacle less than approx. 20 cm from the side of the vehicle. Do not continue driving forwards/reversing.

The volume of the warning signals will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is within the range where a continuous tone sounds). As soon as the distance to the obstacle changes, the tone sounds again. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.

– To switch off the acoustic warnings for the parking manoeuvre, press 🔇 on the centre display. In some countries, the acoustic signals are reactivated after the transmission position is changed or the next time the parking aid is activated. ▶

[1] The distance may vary on vehicles fitted with a towing bracket.

You can adjust the volume of the acoustic warnings and the entertainment fader for parking individually in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 166*.

Further information

– The side zone is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the vehicle off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, the side zone is not shown.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Sensors have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

– Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
– Applies to vehicles with assisted parking functions: If you use the assisted parking functions to park in short parking spaces, the parking aid warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 20 cm away from the obstacle[1]. Stop moving immediately.

Using the parking aid with distance display

Fig. 118 Centre console: Button for park assist systems

Activating/deactivating manually

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

Important: The vehicle must be travelling at under approx. 10 km/h. On some equipment versions, the system can also be activated at higher speeds.

▸ Press the button 1 in the centre console[2].

Automatic activation when reversing

▸ Engage reverse gear with the drive system switched on. The system is activated automatically.

Automatic activation for the front

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

The parking aid is activated automatically if the vehicle approaches an obstacle when driving forwards at under approximately 10 km/h and automatic activation for the front is switched on in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 166*. The acoustic signals are not emitted until the obstacle is well within range of the sensors.

Automatic deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when you drive forwards at over approx. 10 km/h. ▶

[1] The distance may vary on vehicles fitted with a towing bracket.

[2] Depending on the country and the transmission position selected, it may not be possible to deactivate the system.

Requirements for automatic reactivation

If the parking aid is deactivated, it is only reactivated automatically if one of the following conditions has been met:

– The vehicle is driven faster than 10 km/h.
– The vehicle is switched off and on again.
– The parking brake is applied and released again.
– Transmission position P is selected and then another position is selected.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Sensors have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

Fault notifications about the parking aids

If appears, the sensor in the corresponding area or the loudspeaker is faulty. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

If appears, the parking aid is not available because the vehicle is travelling too fast.

If is shown on the centre display, the corresponding ultrasonic sensor is iced up or dirty. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*.

If a pink or black surface is displayed instead of the parking aid in the event of a fault, the system is briefly unavailable.

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the parking aid functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Reversing camera/ surround view cameras

Introduction

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, a reversing camera or multiple surround view cameras may be available:

– The **reversing camera** assists you by displaying orientation lines when you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.
– The **surround view cameras** additionally provide a wide range of views showing the area around the vehicle; these can be selected as preferred.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

Display overview of reversing camera and surround view cameras

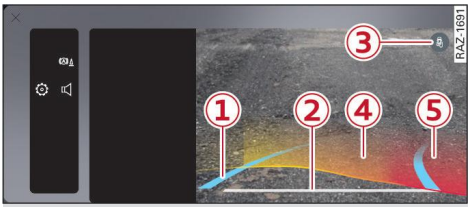


Fig. 119 Centre display: Display overview of cameras

The displays depend on the vehicle's equipment and the camera view selected.

① The light blue lines indicate the anticipated path of the vehicle, depending on the steering wheel angle ⇨ ⓘ. The lines help you to estimate the space required for parking and manoeuvring.

② You should stop reversing at the latest when the white line is bordering on an obstacle.

③ Vehicles with surround view cameras: To display/hide the coloured distance display, press ③[1].

4/5 Vehicles with surround view cameras: The coloured distance display shows you the distance to detected obstacles. The coloured distance display approaches the vehicle as the distance from the vehicle to the obstacle gets shorter. The light blue lines are shortened accordingly. If the distance to the obstacle is too short, the distance display turns red. Do not continue driving forwards/reversing.

In addition to the reversing camera/surround view cameras, the displays and warnings from the parking aid also provide assistance during parking and manoeuvring.

Further information

– There is no side distance warning (depending on the vehicle's equipment) or rear distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

– Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: When the coloured distance display is shown, the light blue lines are shortened based on the obstacles which are detected. This can cause the lines to be temporarily hidden in the corner areas while you are driving past an obstacle. Hiding the coloured distance display enables the lines to be shown in the original length.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

CAUTION

– When you are reversing, the light blue orientation lines ① show the path of the rear end of the vehicle if you were to reverse using the current steering angle. Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear. Please make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the exterior mirror or the corner of the vehicle does not collide with an obstacle.

– When you are driving forwards, the light blue orientation lines show the path of the front end of the vehicle if you were to drive forwards using the current steering angle. When you steer into a corner, the rear end of the vehicle moves more tightly around the corner than the front end. Please make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the side of the vehicle does not collide with an obstacle.

– Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

– Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is ▶

[1] Availability depends on the country and the transmission position selected

completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

Camera views of surround view cameras

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, it may be possible to select the following camera views:

Camera view	Description
Rear view	This view helps you make the most of the space behind the vehicle when manoeuvring. The image from the reversing camera is displayed.
Corner view (rear)	This view can be helpful when driving out of narrow parking spaces or out of an exit onto an obscured road. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area behind the vehicle. To switch between the panoramic and standard views, press ⟷.
Front view	This view helps you make the most of the space in front of the vehicle when manoeuvring.
Corner view (front)	This view makes it easier to leave narrow parking spaces and to drive out of exits and intersections where your view is restricted. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area in front of the vehicle.
Overhead view	This view helps you to manoeuvre and position the vehicle precisely. The overhead view is composed from the camera pictures. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system ⇨ ⚠.
3D overhead view	This view allows you to view the area around the vehicle while parking or manoeuvring. The view of the area around the vehicle is generated using camera images and data from the sensors. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system ⇨ ⚠.
Front tyres	This view helps you monitor the steering angle and the distance from the front tyres to the kerb while you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.
Rear tyres	This view helps you monitor the distance from the rear tyres to the kerb while you are parking and manoeuvring the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The overhead camera view and 3D overhead camera view are generated using the individual camera images. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.

Activating/deactivating the cameras

Fig. 120 Centre console: Button for park assist systems ▶

Activating/deactivating manually

▸ Press the button ① in the centre console[1].

The system can be activated at low speeds, for example when manoeuvring.

On some equipment versions, the system can also be activated at higher speeds.

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the drive system is switched on and reverse gear is selected.

Automatic deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically as soon as the vehicle exceeds a certain speed when driving forwards.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the surround view cameras

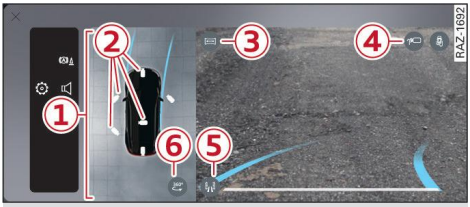


Fig. 121 Centre display: Using the surround view cameras

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, it may be possible to select the following functions:

① Press anywhere in area ① to temporarily display the selection points for the different camera views ②.

② Pressing on the selection points or the area around the vehicle will select the corresponding camera view[2]. The views can also be selected for selection points which have been hidden again.

③ – Switch between panoramic and standard views.

④ – Start camera cleaning manually.

⑤ – Activate car wash function. This view can be helpful when driving into a car wash and positioning the front wheels in the rails of the car wash. This function can only be selected in **Camera view: Front** and **Camera view: Front corner**.

⑥ – **Camera view: 3D surroundings** is selected.

– The transparency function is activated. The vehicle is shown as transparent to enable you to see obstacles behind or to the side of the vehicle. This function can only be selected in the **Camera view: 3D surroundings**.

Controlling the camera views

The camera views can be controlled via the touch display. In some views, you can move the displayed area or zoom in/out.

The **Camera view: 3D surroundings** can also be tilted and rotated.

Automatic camera mode[2]

The automatic camera mode can automatically switch the view and zoom in on certain areas when an obstacle has been detected close to the vehicle.

You can switch the automatic camera mode on/off in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 166*.

Shortcuts

– To centre the view, tap twice on the camera picture of the 3D surroundings camera view.
– To switch quickly between the standard view and the panoramic view (e.g. from *front* to *front corner*), double tap on the picture of the front/rear camera view or pinch/pull the camera view with two fingers.

[1] Depending on the country and the transmission position selected, it may not be possible to deactivate the system.

[2] Availability depends on the country and the transmission position selected.

Further information

– Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras: System issues may occur if the exterior mirrors are not folded out completely. Make sure that the exterior mirrors are fully folded out while you are driving.
– Applies to: vehicles with electric folding exterior mirrors: System limits may occur when manually adjusting the exterior mirrors. The exterior mirrors must only be folded in/out electrically.
– Depending on the selected transmission position, the system will switch between specific views automatically. If you change the view manually, the system will temporarily stop switching between views automatically.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

CAUTION

Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

Fault notifications about the cameras

If /// is displayed and the corresponding display area is not available, the camera will not be available on the corresponding side. The exterior mirrors may have been retracted electrically or one of the doors or the boot lid may be open.

If appears, a system fault has occurred and the corresponding display area is not available. The camera in this area has malfunctioned.

If a symbol remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Calling up the trailer view

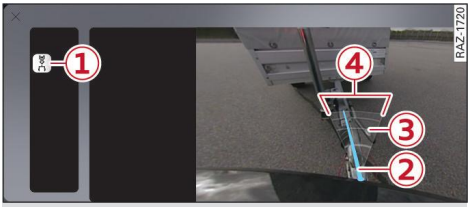


Fig. 122 Centre display: Trailer view

The trailer view helps you to position the vehicle in front of a trailer.

Calling up the trailer view

Important: The reversing camera or surround view cameras must be activated.

▸ Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: Switch to the **Camera view: rear**.
▸ Select (1) on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

Displays

(2) The blue orientation line indicates the anticipated path of the vehicle's towing bracket.
(3) You can use the white markings to estimate the distance to the trailer hitch. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 30 cm.
(4) The width of the area represents the maximum angle to which the steering wheel can be turned.

Further information

– There is no side distance warning (depending on the vehicle's equipment) or rear distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. ▶

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

Activating the reversing camera cleaning function

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the reversing camera cleaning function can be initiated automatically or manually.

You can switch on the function to automatically clean the camera when dirt is detected in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 166*.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, cleaning of the reversing camera can also be initiated manually:

▸ Move the wiper lever into the position for cleaning the rear window [1], or
▸ With the parking aid active and the rear view selected, select on the centre display. You may need to press the button multiple times until there is enough washer fluid on the camera.

If the washer fluid is empty, the rear lid is open, temperatures are low or the vehicle is travelling at a high speed, the function may not be available.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Rear emergency brake assist[2]

Introduction[2]

The rear emergency brake assist brakes if you are reversing and it detects pedestrians behind the vehicle within the system limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the system uses cameras and ultrasonic sensors.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the rear emergency brake assist[2]

Activating

▸ Engage reverse gear with the drive system switched on. The system is activated automatically.

Automatic braking

– If an obstacle is detected, the vehicle may perform automatic braking to prevent a possible collision or reduce the speed at which the impact takes place. This intervention is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the centre display. The symbol will appear. You must actively take over the braking immediately.
– You can override the automatic braking by briefly pressing the accelerator firmly. After you ▶

[1] Depends on equipment
[2] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

override the system, it will no longer be active for a few seconds.

Temporary deactivation

– To temporarily deactivate all interventions/ warnings, press ② ⇨ *page 221, Fig. 124* on the centre display and confirm the deactivation.

The symbol will be displayed.

If automatic braking is temporarily deactivated, it will be activated again automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches a particular speed or the next time the vehicle is driven in reverse gear.

Switching the rear emergency brake assist on/off

You can switch the rear emergency brake assist on/off in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 166*.

System limits

– The system is available when driving in reverse gear up to a speed of approx. 10 km/h.
– The system can only react to pedestrians.
– The system is not available at very low speeds.
– A short distance must have been driven in reverse gear before the system can intervene.
– In certain situations, further interventions can only be performed after automatic braking after the vehicle has been reversed a few metres.
– The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– The system is not available if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The system is not available when the boot lid is open.
– The system is not available when the camera is being cleaned.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

Driver messages about the rear emergency brake assist

If is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear emergency brake assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Rear cross-traffic assist

Introduction

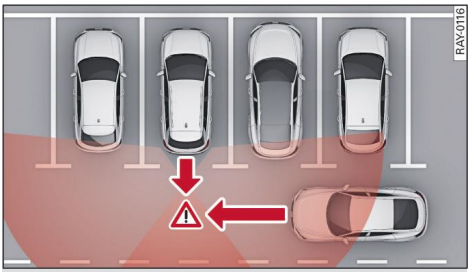


Fig. 123 Areas covered by sensors for rear cross-traffic assist

The rear cross-traffic assist uses the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle to monitor the area behind and to the side of the vehicle. The system can detect moving objects, such as cars, as they approach the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 123*. ▶

When driving out of a parking space, you are assisted by the centre display (1) and various warnings.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the rear cross-traffic assist

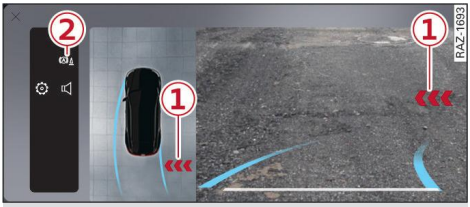


Fig. 124 Centre display: Rear cross-traffic assist display

Activating

▸ Engage reverse gear with the drive system switched on. The system is activated automatically.

Displays, warnings and braking

– **Display**: The arrows (1) only appear when the parking aid is activated. On vehicles with surround view cameras, the arrows only appear for camera views **Camera view: rear** and **Camera view: rear corner**. The arrows indicate the direction from which the intersecting traffic is approaching. The appearance of the display varies, depending on the level of danger.
– **Acoustic warnings**: A tone may sound continuously as an additional acoustic signal when you are reversing.
– **Active braking intervention**: If you do not react to a warning, a braking intervention may prevent a possible collision or reduce the speed at which the impact takes place. The active braking intervention can be switched off/on in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

The acoustic warning signals and the active braking intervention only occur while you are reversing.

The areas covered by the sensors ⇨ *page 220, Fig. 123* are examples and do not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

Deactivating the active braking intervention temporarily

– To temporarily deactivate all interventions/warnings, press (2) on the centre display and confirm the deactivation.

The symbol will be displayed.

If the braking intervention function has been deactivated temporarily, it will be activated again automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches a specific speed.

Switching the rear cross-traffic assist on/off

You can switch the rear cross-traffic assist on/off in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 166*.

System limits

– The system is available when driving in reverse gear up to a speed of approx. 10 km/h.
– The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– If the rear cross-traffic assist gives an acoustic warning signal, the parking aid may no longer be able to warn you audibly of obstacles it has detected.
– The system is not available if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely ▸

on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.
– The rear cross-traffic assist cannot warn you of all approaching objects or very slow or stationary objects. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
– The system may not react in time or may not react at all if other objects are approaching very quickly.
– The rear cross-traffic assist does not react if the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside or is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the surrounding vehicles.

Driver messages about the rear cross-traffic assist

If , or is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear cross-traffic assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area around the sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 164, Fig. 92*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Kerb warning

Introduction

The kerb warning provides assistance when parking and helps prevent damage to the wheels and rims. The system warns you when there is a risk of a collision between the wheel and low objects such as kerbs. If the vehicle sensors detect that the wheel is within a critical distance of a low object, visual and acoustic warnings are issued to make you aware of this.

The kerb warning is activated automatically when the parking aid is active.

The surround view cameras and ultrasonic sensors are used to detect the vehicle surroundings.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the kerb warning

Display overview

– A wheel highlighted in red indicates that the distance between the wheel and a low object is critical.
– A crossed-out wheel indicates that the kerb warning is inactive on that entire side of the vehicle.

System limits

– The system is available when driving up to a speed of approx. 10 km/h.
– The system may be restricted or may not function as expected when it is dark.
– The system is not available when certain other assist systems are switched on or assisted parking systems are being used.
– The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– The system is not available if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

CAUTION

Ensure sufficient clearance between the wheels and the kerb to prevent damage to the rims.

Activating/deactivating the kerb warning

Activating/deactivating automatically

The kerb warning is activated or deactivated automatically when the parking aid is activated or deactivated.

Activating/deactivating manually

▸ Press the button in the centre console.

If you have deactivated the kerb warning manually, it will be activated again automatically the next time you activate the parking aid.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driver messages about the kerb warning

If or is displayed along with a driver message about the kerb warning in the event of a fault, the kerb warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

The driver message may indicate the cause and what action should be taken. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Manoeuvre assist

Introduction

The manoeuvre assist helps you manoeuvre and park the vehicle. In the event of an impending collision with another object, the system intervenes, within certain system limits, and attempts to prevent a collision by braking the vehicle.

The manoeuvre assist is activated automatically when the parking aid is activated by pressing the button or by selecting reverse gear.

The surround view cameras and ultrasonic sensors are used to detect the vehicle surroundings.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Using the manoeuvre assist

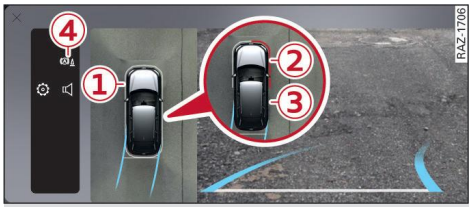


Fig. 125 Centre display: Manoeuvre assist

Display overview

The symbols and indicators ① – ③ show the status and availability of the manoeuvre assist.

① The white border indicates availability in this area.

② The red border indicates a braking intervention.

③ A missing border indicates an inactive area (partial availability).

If no border is shown around the vehicle, the manoeuvre assist is unavailable.

Automatic braking

The vehicle can be braked automatically if a potential collision with a static object is impending. If the vehicle has been braked to a standstill, the message **Manoeuvre assist: vehicle has been braked. Obstacle detected** will appear in the instrument cluster and you must take control of the vehicle.

If you continue driving towards an obstacle after the vehicle has been stopped, the system automatically deactivates the manoeuvre assist temporarily. The system is reactivated after you have driven a few metres.

You can adjust the braking intervention in the **Parking aid** menu to make braking more gentle ▶

and less abrupt ⇨ *page 166*. As a result, the system will apply the brakes earlier when the distance to the obstacle is greater, thereby making the braking process smoother.

System limits

– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is intervening, is restricted or has been deactivated, or if a fault has occurred.
– Objects that are too low may not be detected by the system, e.g. kerbs.
– The system is available when driving up to a speed of approx. 10 km/h.
– The systems are not available when certain other assist systems are switched on or assisted parking systems are being used.
– The system is not available if the driver's seat belt is not fastened.
– The system is only partially available if towing mode is detected. The white frame is not displayed in the areas which are inactive. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The manoeuvre assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for braking and steering and for preventing collisions.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

Activating/deactivating the manoeuvre assist

Activating automatically when reversing

▸ Engage reverse gear with the drive system switched on. The manoeuvre assist will be activated automatically and will remain active when you are reversing and driving forwards.

Activating manually when driving forwards

The manoeuvre assist must be activated manually if you are driving forwards.

Important: The vehicle must be travelling at under approx. 10 km/h.

▸ Press the button in the centre console. If the parking aid is already active, press the button in the centre console twice.

When the manoeuvre assist is active, a border is shown around the vehicle on the centre display.

Temporary deactivation

You can temporarily deactivate the manoeuvre assist for the current parking manoeuvre. If the manoeuvre assist has been deactivated temporarily, it will automatically be reactivated the next time the parking aid is activated.

▸ To temporarily deactivate all interventions/warnings, press (4) ⇨ *page 223, Fig. 125* on the centre display and confirm the deactivation. The symbol will be displayed.
▸ If the manoeuvre assist has been temporarily deactivated, you can activate it again by pressing on the centre display. The symbol will be displayed.

Switching the manoeuvre assist off/on

You can switch the manoeuvre assist on/off in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 166*. ▸

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driver messages about the manoeuvre assist

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the manoeuvre assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Assisted parking systems

Assistance driving into a parking space

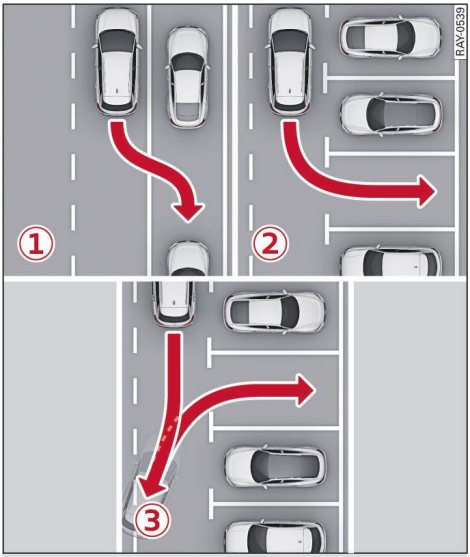


Fig. 126 Overview of parking options

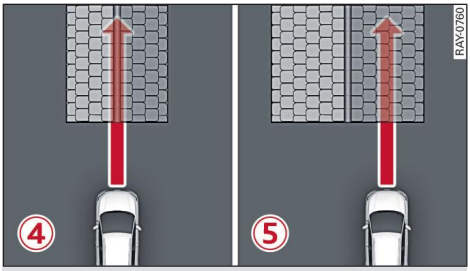


Fig. 127 Overview of parking options for garages

The following parking options may be available to you depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle and when the system is activated:

– After the parking space search function has been activated ① – ③ and ④ – ⑤.
– Completing a parking manoeuvre with the assisted parking system ① – ② ⇨ *page 229*.

Options for driving into a parking space

① Reversing into parallel parking spaces
② Reversing into perpendicular parking spaces and, depending on the vehicle's equipment, diagonal parking spaces
③ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces[1)]
④ Single garages[2)]
⑤ Garages for multiple cars[2)]

Parking options ① – ③ are only available if you have driven far enough past the parking space.

Further information

– When using remote-controlled parking to park in garages[3)], you must stop the vehicle straight in front of the garage. The best results will be achieved if you stop your vehicle as far in line as possible with the garage.
– Depending on the vehicle's equipment, assisted parking may also be possible in parking spaces where only the lines marking the parking space have been detected. The system only requires other vehicles to be detected as boundaries if the lines marking the parking space are inadequate or the surface is unsuitable.

1) Depends on country/equipment fitted in the vehicle
2) Only remote-controlled parking
3) The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

Assistance driving out of a parking space

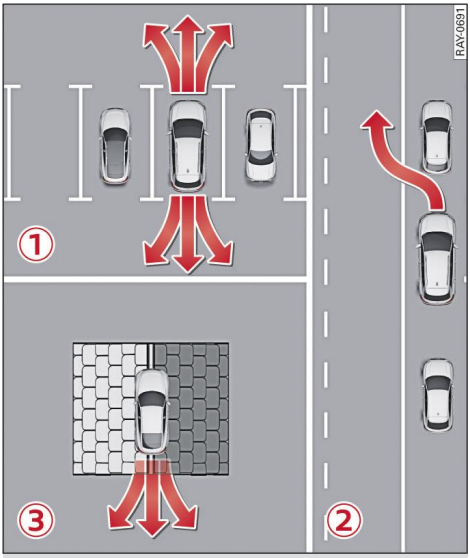


Fig. 128 Overview of options for driving out of a parking space

The following options for driving out of a parking space may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

1. Driving out of perpendicular parking spaces[1)]
2. Driving out of parallel parking spaces
3. Driving out of garages[2)]

System limits of the assisted parking systems

The assisted parking systems may be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:

– The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) must not be switched off while the assisted parking systems are in use. The active system will be interrupted if the ESC intervenes.
– The systems are not available when certain other assist systems are switched on.
– Assisted parking cannot be used in combination with the parking systems to park the vehicle on tight bends.
– Objects which mark the edges of the parking space (e.g. bollards) may be misinterpreted by the system. Take control of the vehicle and perform the parking manoeuvre manually if the vehicle is not fully inside the parking space or if the vehicle attempts to drive beyond the edge of the parking space.
– The systems are restricted or unavailable if the vehicle detects that a trailer is being towed. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
– When parking on a slope, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move unexpectedly.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Finding a parking space for which you can use the assisted parking systems

Introduction

The parking space search function helps you find suitable parking spaces. To do this, parking spaces are measured using ultrasonic sensors fitted on the sides of the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, additional sensors and cameras improve the measurement.

Once a parking space has been found, the assisted parking systems provide assistance with parking while the driver monitors the area around the vehicle with the help of the parking ▶

1) Depending on the vehicle's equipment, this may only be available for remote-controlled parking.

2) Only remote-controlled parking

aids and cameras (depending on the vehicle's equipment).

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Activating the parking space search

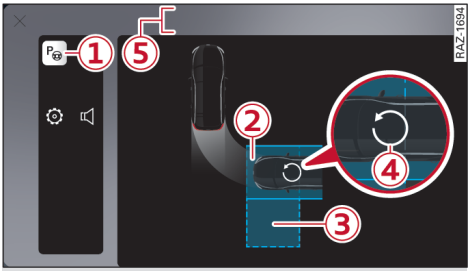


Fig. 129 Centre display: Parking space search activated

① Activate the parking space search
② Intended parking space
③ Switch between parallel and perpendicular parking
④ Switch between driving forwards and reversing into a perpendicular parking space[1)]
⑤ Area where system messages are displayed

Activating the parking space search

- To activate the parking space search, press P ① on the centre display while the parking aid is switched on. The display for the parking space search appears and the symbol indicates that a parking space search is active.
- Drive slowly forwards past the line of parked cars. For the best parking result, you should maintain a distance of approx. 1 metre to the row of parked cars.

The parking space search looks for a suitable parking space on both sides of the road simultaneously.

The system also searches for suitable parking spaces in the background even when the parking space search function is not activated if you do not drive past the spaces too fast. This means that you can also activate the system if you have already driven past a suitable parking space.

Automatic display of parking space search

If you have switched on the automatic display of the parking space search in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 166*, you can switch directly to the parking space search display, for example if you have driven past a detected parking space.

- Brake to a standstill.
- Press the button in the centre console or select reverse gear. The detected parking space will appear on the centre display and you can start the parking manoeuvre.

Selecting a parking space and a parking option

When the system finds one or more parking spaces which might be long/wide enough for your vehicle, the system displays these spaces ②.

The following symbols may also be shown:

- **P**: The vehicle is in the ideal starting position and you must brake to a standstill.
- **P ↑**: The vehicle must be driven further in the direction indicated by the arrow to reach the ideal starting position. Only drive further if there are no obstacles in the vehicle's path.

If the vehicle is stationary and there are further parking options in addition to the selected parking space ②, you can change the selection manually:

- Select a different parking space or a different parking option ③ on the centre display.
- Switch between driving forwards and reversing into a parking space ④ if necessary.[1)]

Starting the parking manoeuvre

Important: The parking space must be indicated with a **P** on the centre display, the vehicle must be stationary and the brake pedal must be pressed. ▶

[1)] Depends on country/equipment fitted in the vehicle

- Check that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle ⇨ (!).

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle and the regulations in your country, you can start the assisted parking manoeuvre with the following systems:

- In the vehicle: Assisted parking.
- Outside the vehicle: Remote-controlled parking using a mobile device.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

Even parking spaces which the system has identified as being suitable may not have been detected correctly. It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a parking space shown in the display is suitable for the vehicle.

Completing a parking manoeuvre into a measured space with the assisted parking system

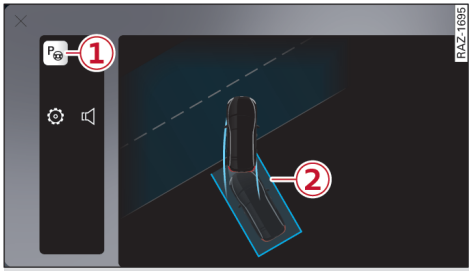


Fig. 130 Centre display: Display showing a parking space into which you have started driving

Important: The parking space must have been measured by the vehicle. This requires you to have driven far enough past the parking space.

If you have started reversing into a parking space and the vehicle is far enough in the parking space, the system can help complete the parking manoeuvre:

- Brake the vehicle to a standstill, if you have not already done so.
- Press the button in the centre console.
- To activate assisted parking, press (1) on the centre display while the parking aid is switched on. An image representing your parking space (2) and a corresponding driver message will appear on the centre display.
- To start the assisted parking manoeuvre, take your hands off the steering wheel and press Start on the centre display.

Assisted parking ⇨ *page 230*.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driving into and out of parking spaces with the park assist plus

Introduction

The assisted parking systems enable assisted parking and help you to enter and leave parking spaces. The systems take over the steering, acceleration, braking and gear changes while the driver monitors the area around the vehicle.

Only use the assisted parking systems when the country-specific regulations permit it. Use may be restricted or prohibited in certain countries. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations. Depending on the country, the systems may be deactivated due to a comparison with a country list. Data are not transmitted to Audi.

System limits

– Please note the system limits of the assisted parking systems ⇨ *page 227*.

Manoeuvring area

The vehicle may swing out during the parking manoeuvre ⇨ ⚠. A driver message may appear if there are obstacles within the manoeuvring area which may impede the parking manoeuvre or constitute a risk (e.g. on the other side of the road). Try driving further forwards and closer to the row of parked cars, as appropriate.

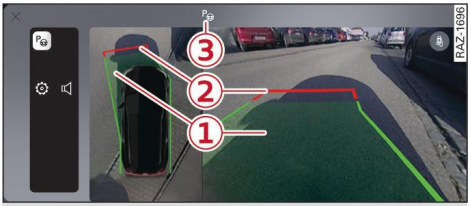
WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
– Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
– The vehicle may swing out during the parking manoeuvre. The driver maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

– To avoid damage, do not use the assisted parking systems if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle or if snow chains are fitted.
– In certain situations, the assisted parking systems will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take control in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims; alternatively, you can abort the manoeuvre.
– Certain conditions in and around the parking space (e.g. objects such as trees, posts or road surfaces such as loose gravel, snow or ice) can cause unexpected results when parking.
– When parking the vehicle in a space where there is no kerb, maintain a distance of at least 50 cm to walls and buildings to avoid any damage to the vehicle.
– The assisted parking systems must not be used when the vehicle is towing a trailer or a rear carrier system is fitted.

Assisted parking



Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras
Fig. 131 Centre display: Image showing assisted parking

Manoeuvring into a parking space

Important: A suitable parking option must have been found and selected. The vehicle must be ▶

stationary to begin with and the brake must be applied.

- Take your hands off the steering wheel and press Start on the centre display.
- Watch the road. When the road is clear, release the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠. P on the centre display indicates that assisted parking is active and in control of the vehicle.
- You can reduce the speed specified by the system at any time by pressing the brake pedal lightly.
- In unclear situations, abort the parking manoeuvre by braking the vehicle firmly to a standstill or moving the steering wheel. For example, you should do so if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle is getting very close to an obstacle.

Stopping the assisted parking ⇨ *page 232*.

Display overview

The current driving manoeuvre and the status of the assisted parking system are shown on the centre display:

1. Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: Path to be travelled by the vehicle during the current parking manoeuvre.
2. Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: Final position of the current parking manoeuvre/direction change.
3. P – Assisted parking is active.

End of parking manoeuvre

The parking manoeuvre ends automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches its final position in the parking space. When a parking manoeuvre has been completed successfully using the assisted parking system, the parking lock will be engaged and the parking brake will be applied.

Further information

– The display shows an enlarged and distorted view. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately. This applies in particular to objects which are not touching the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle or the rear end of a truck. In such cases, drive with particular care and monitor the distance yourself if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– When assisted parking systems are active, you should only release the brake pedal if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel – risk of accident!
– The assisted parking systems serve as driver assist functions. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space with the help of assisted parking systems. If you reach between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning, there is a risk of injuring your fingers or hands.

Driving out of a parking space

Manoeuvring out of a parking space

If the vehicle is parked, you can use the assisted parking systems to drive out of the parking space.

- Start the vehicle.
- Press the button in the centre console.
- Press P on the centre display with the parking aid activated.
- Wait until a message appears on the centre display requesting you to specify the direction in which you wish to leave the space; this is needed to start the manoeuvre.
- Select a direction in which it is possible to leave the space on the centre display ⇨ (!).
- Press the button on the centre display to start manoeuvring out of the parking space.
- Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- Watch the road. When the road is clear, release the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠. P on the centre display ▶

indicates that assisted parking is active and in control of the vehicle.

▸ You can reduce the speed specified by the system at any time by pressing the brake pedal lightly.

The manoeuvre is complete when a message appears indicating that you should take control of the vehicle. Take over the steering ⇨ (!).

Stopping the assisted parking ⇨ *page 232*.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– When assisted parking systems are active, you should only release the brake pedal if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel – risk of accident!
– The assisted parking systems serve as driver assist functions. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space with the help of assisted parking systems. If you reach between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning, there is a risk of injuring your fingers or hands.

CAUTION

– When selecting the direction in which you wish to leave the parking space, pay attention to obstacles and only select a direction where the path is clear.
– Before pressing the accelerator, take over the steering as soon as you are requested to do so after the system has completed the last manoeuvre to ensure the steering wheel remains at the specified angle and does not return to the central position.

Stopping/cancelling assisted parking

Stopping the system manually

You can stop assisted parking at any time by braking the vehicle gently to a standstill and briefly remaining stationary. To continue the manoeuvre, press the button on the centre display and release the brake pedal.

Automatic stopping or cancellation

Assisted parking stops or is cancelled automatically under the following circumstances:

– If you switch off the system
– If you press the brake pedal firmly
– If you press the accelerator
– If you change the transmission position
– If you apply the parking brake
– If you move the steering wheel by hand
– If the system limit for the maximum number of parking movements has been exceeded
– If a vehicle door is opened
– If the time limit has been exceeded
– If an obstacle is detected
– If the ESC intervenes.

The P OFF or P OFF symbol will appear. A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays.

If the parking manoeuvre is cancelled automatically, you must take full control of the vehicle.

You can resume the parking manoeuvre in some situations. Please note the messages on the centre display. If applicable, press the button to continue or press P on the centre display.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driver messages about assisted parking

If P OFF, P or P lights up, assisted parking is unavailable or restricted and you must actively apply the brakes yourself if necessary.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. ▶

To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Remote-controlled parking

Introduction

The remote-controlled parking function allows you to use a mobile device to drive the vehicle into or out of a parking space while you are outside the vehicle. You must keep the vehicle key and the mobile device on your person to do so. The system takes over the steering, gear changes, acceleration and braking, as well as locking the vehicle, while you operate the vehicle remotely and monitor the area around the vehicle.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
- Remote-controlled parking serves merely as a driver assist function. As the driver you are always responsible for driving the vehicle, manoeuvring and stopping.
- The vehicle may swing out during the manoeuvre. The driver maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
- Only use the function in areas with adequate ventilation – risk of poisoning!
- Risk of accident if insufficient attention is paid to the area around the vehicle. The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone. Operate the function in the proximity of the vehicle. Make sure you have a good view of your vehicle and its surroundings. Do not let yourself be distracted.
- Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Danger of fatal injury to any persons – especially children – locked inside the vehicle. The vehicle is locked when the remote-controlled parking function is in use. Before and after using the remote-controlled parking function, always make sure that no persons are inside the vehicle and observe the instructions for the safelock ⇨ *page 40*.
- Risk of accident due to problems occurring when operating the myAudi app. Do not exit the app during the parking manoeuvre, and make sure that the app is not forced into the background by answering incoming calls or similar. Please observe the operating instructions provided by the manufacturer of your mobile device.
- There is a risk of accident if the connection is interrupted. In certain cases, the connection between the mobile device and the vehicle may be interrupted e.g. by other transmitters or if the device is too far from the vehicle. Make sure that you have an adequate connection and, if in any doubt, perform the parking manoeuvre in the usual way from inside the vehicle.
- Risk of accident if any notifications, sounds or vibrations are disabled. The myAudi app can only warn you of any dangers detected if you have made sure that your mobile device allows all notifications, sounds and vibrations from the myAudi app.
- There is a risk of accident if incompatible mobile devices are used. As soon as a functional restriction is shown, it is possible that e.g. the vehicle's speed of reaction will be impaired due to a reduced speed of transmission.

CAUTION

- To avoid damage, do not use remote-controlled parking if you are transporting ▶

objects which project beyond the vehicle or if snow chains are fitted.
– In certain situations, the remote-controlled parking will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. Please ensure the wheels and tyres on your vehicle are undamaged. Take control of the vehicle or stop the parking manoeuvre.
– When parking the vehicle in a space where there is no kerb, maintain a distance of at least 50 cm to walls and buildings to avoid any damage to the vehicle.

Further information on remote-controlled parking

Only use remote-controlled parking when the country-specific regulations permit it. The use of the system may be restricted or prohibited in certain countries. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations. Depending on the country, the system may be deactivated due to a comparison with a country list. Data are not transmitted to Audi.

The person using the mobile device for remote-controlled parking is considered as the driver of the vehicle and an active road user. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations for using remote-controlled parking.

Always make sure that you are not putting any other persons at risk when using remote-controlled parking. We recommend that you try out the remote-controlled parking function in a quiet location such as a car park.

Your mobile device should be sufficiently charged. If necessary, charge the mobile device before starting your journey.

The latest, unmodified versions of the myAudi app and the operating system must be installed on your mobile device.

Do not use the remote-controlled parking function on devices which are damaged or impaired in any way. Only use operating systems approved by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Always check access to your vehicle when using remote-controlled parking. Ensure that nobody can access your vehicle and that the vehicle is locked once parked. Take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Setting up remote-controlled parking

Before using this system for the first time, the following steps must be performed:

▸ Create a myAudi account by registering in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com, depending on the country you are in.
▸ Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.
▸ Specify the key user ⇨ *page 34*.
▸ Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access data.

Device compatibility

The mobile device is checked at the start of a parking manoeuvre. If any form of incompatibility is detected, this is shown in the myAudi app. Audi advises against using the function if any form of incompatibility is detected ⇨ ⚠.

You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth. It is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of mobile device. Availability depends on a number of factors including:

– Brand and version of the mobile device
– Version of the operating system on the mobile device
– Software version of the app in use
– Individual settings on the mobile device

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– There is a risk of accident if incompatible mobile devices are used. As soon as a functional restriction is shown, it is possible that e.g. the vehicle's speed of reaction will be ▸

impaired due to a reduced speed of transmission.

Using the myAudi app to drive into a space

Important

- Set-up must have been performed.
- You must be logged in with your myAudi user ID in the vehicle.
- Bluetooth must be activated on the mobile device and on the MMI.
- A suitable parking option must have been found and selected.
- The vehicle must be stationary to begin with.

Preparing the vehicle

- To park the vehicle remotely, press on the centre display.
- If you have already started driving into a parking space using an assist system, you can continue the parking manoeuvre using remote-controlled parking. Press on the centre display.
- Get out of the vehicle with the drive system active; take the vehicle key with you. Always carry both the vehicle key and the mobile device on your person throughout the entire remote-controlled parking manoeuvre.
- Make sure that all doors and the boot lid are closed.

Starting the parking manoeuvre

- Start the myAudi app promptly; otherwise the function will be cancelled.
- Watch the road. If the traffic situation permits, park your vehicle in the parking space using your mobile device ⇨ ⚠. The vehicle key and the mobile device must be in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle.
- In unclear situations, stop the parking manoeuvre using the mobile device by releasing the button in the app or by opening one of the doors. For example, you should do so if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle is getting very close to an obstacle.
- To resume the parking manoeuvre, start the parking manoeuvre again using the mobile device. The rest of the parking manoeuvre is then re-calculated based on the vehicle's position.

Stopping remote-controlled parking ⇨ *page 236*

Manoeuvre interrupted unexpectedly

- If the manoeuvre is interrupted unexpectedly due to the vehicle key, move to a different location with the mobile device and vehicle key and continue the manoeuvre.

End of parking manoeuvre

The parking manoeuvre ends automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches its final position in the parking space. When a parking manoeuvre has been completed successfully, the parking lock is engaged, the parking brake is applied and the vehicle is switched off. Additionally, the vehicle is locked.

Correcting the parking position

The vehicle's final position in the parking space can be corrected remotely with the myAudi app after the parking manoeuvre has been completed.

Further information

– When using remote-controlled parking to park in garages, you must stop the vehicle straight in front of the garage. The best results will be achieved if you stop your vehicle as far in line as possible with the garage.

System limits

The remote-controlled parking function may be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:

– The parking manoeuvre can only be started if the vehicle key is outside the vehicle after the vehicle has been prepared. Always carry both the vehicle key and the mobile device on your person throughout the entire remote-controlled parking manoeuvre.
– If another vehicle key is located in the vehicle or nearby.
– Please note the system limits of the assisted parking systems ⇨ *page 227*.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Risk of accident if insufficient attention is paid to the area around the vehicle. Only use your mobile device to park the vehicle if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.

Using the myAudi app to drive out of a space

Starting a manoeuvre

▸ Start the myAudi app.
▸ Start the vehicle in the myAudi app promptly. The vehicle key and mobile device must be in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle when you switch the vehicle on.
▸ Start the manoeuvre promptly with your mobile device; otherwise the function will be cancelled.
▸ Watch the road. If the traffic situation permits, drive your vehicle out of the parking space using your mobile device ⇨ ⚠. The vehicle key and the mobile device must be in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle when using remote-controlled parking.
▸ In unclear situations, stop the manoeuvre using the mobile device by releasing the button in the app or by opening one of the doors. For example, you should do so if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle is getting very close to an obstacle.
▸ To resume the manoeuvre, start it again using the mobile device. The rest of the manoeuvre is then re-calculated based on the vehicle's position.

Stopping remote-controlled parking ⇨ *page 236*

Manoeuvre interrupted unexpectedly

▸ If the manoeuvre is interrupted unexpectedly due to the vehicle key, move to a different location with the mobile device and vehicle key and continue the manoeuvre.

End of manoeuvre

The manoeuvre is over when the maximum distance has been covered or no more manoeuvring is necessary in order to drive out of the space. Unlock and take control of the vehicle.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Risk of accident if insufficient attention is paid to the area around the vehicle. Only use your mobile device to park the vehicle if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.

Stopping/cancelling remote-controlled parking

Stopping the system manually

▸ To stop the vehicle, you can briefly interrupt remote-controlled parking with your mobile device at any time by releasing the button in the app.

You can also cancel the parking manoeuvre with the vehicle key and bring the vehicle to a halt immediately by pressing any button on the vehicle key. You should therefore always carry the vehicle key with you during remote-controlled parking.

Automatic stopping or cancellation

Remote-controlled parking stops or is cancelled automatically under the following circumstances:

– If the myAudi app is not started promptly after you get out of the vehicle
– If the Bluetooth connection has been interrupted
– If the vehicle is not within range of the mobile device
– If you switch off the system ▸

– If the system limit for the maximum number of parking movements has been exceeded
– If the time limit has been exceeded
– If an obstacle is detected
– If the ESC intervenes.

Taking over the parking manoeuvre

When the parking manoeuvre is stopped, the vehicle is brought to a halt and transmission position P is engaged. Take control of the vehicle, complete the parking manoeuvre manually and park the vehicle safely. You can also restart the entire parking manoeuvre from inside the vehicle.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Risk of accident if insufficient attention is paid to the area around the vehicle. Only use your mobile device to park the vehicle if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.

Driver messages about remote-controlled parking

If , P or P lights up, remote-controlled parking is unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Reversing assist

Introduction

The reversing assist provides support when reversing out of narrow parking spaces, garages or tracks. The system continuously stores the last path travelled forwards over a certain distance so that the same path can be followed when reversing if desired. The system takes over the steering, acceleration and braking while the driver monitors the area around the vehicle.

If the system detects objects, pedestrians or other road users, it can react within the system limits by braking. If the obstacle is only present temporarily, the vehicle will continue driving once it is gone.

The surround view cameras and ultrasonic sensors are used to detect the vehicle surroundings.

System limits

– Please note the system limits of the assisted parking systems ⇨ *page 227*.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
– Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
– The vehicle may swing out during the manoeuvre. The driver maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

– To avoid damage, do not use the reversing assist if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle or if snow chains are fitted.
– The reversing assist must not be used when the vehicle is towing a trailer or a rear carrier system is fitted.

Using the reversing assist

Activating the reversing assist

Important: You must have already driven forwards a few metres at low speed and the system must have been able to record the vehicle's path.

- Brake the vehicle to a standstill, if you have not already done so.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Press the / button on the centre display to activate the reversing assist.
- To start driving with the reversing assist, take your hands off the steering wheel and press Start on the centre display.
- Watch the road. When the road is clear, release the brake pedal ⇨ . / on the centre display indicates that the reversing assist is active and in control of the vehicle.

The vehicle takes control of the steering and the vehicle speed and automatically reverses along the last path travelled. While the vehicle is driving along this path, the remaining recorded distance is shown on the centre display. In addition, the vehicle's path for the current parking manoeuvre is shown in green. The final position of the recorded manoeuvre is indicated by a red line.

- Depending on vehicle's equipment, you can reduce the speed specified by the system at any time by pressing the brake pedal lightly.

If obstacles are detected in the vehicle's path, the brakes will be applied. If the obstacle is only present temporarily, the vehicle will continue driving once it is gone.

End of manoeuvre

The manoeuvre ends automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches the recorded final position. When a manoeuvre has been completed successfully using the reversing assist, the parking lock is engaged and the parking brake is applied.

If the vehicle reaches the desired position before the end of the manoeuvre, you can cancel the reversing assist ⇨ *page 239*.

Further information

– The path recorded by the function is limited to a short distance.
– Some objects (e.g. barriers or garage doors) may be interpreted incorrectly by the system. Take control of the vehicle if necessary ⇨ *page 239*.
– The display shows an enlarged and distorted view. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately. This applies in particular to objects which are not touching the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle or the rear end of a truck. In such cases, drive with particular care and monitor the distance yourself if necessary.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– When the reversing assist is active, you should only release the brake pedal if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel – risk of accident!
– The reversing assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when using with the reversing assist. If you reach between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning, there is a risk of injuring your fingers or hands.

Stopping/cancelling the reversing assist

Stopping the system manually

You can stop the reversing assist at any time by braking the vehicle gently to a standstill. To continue the manoeuvre, press the button on the centre display and release the brake pedal.

Automatic stopping or cancellation

The reversing assist is stopped or cancelled automatically under the following circumstances:

– If you switch off the system
– If you press the accelerator
– If you change the transmission position
– If you apply the parking brake
– If you move the steering wheel by hand
– If a vehicle door is opened
– If the time limit has been exceeded
– If an obstacle is detected
– If the ESC intervenes
– If cross-traffic is detected
– If the route deviates too far from the recorded path

The / or / symbol will appear. A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays.

If the manoeuvre is cancelled automatically, you must take full control of the vehicle.

You can resume the manoeuvre in some situations. Please note the messages on the centre display. If applicable, press the button to continue or press / on the centre display.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

Driver messages about the reversing assist

If / , / or / lights up, the reversing assist is unavailable or restricted and you must actively apply the brakes yourself if necessary.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Trained parking

Introduction

Trained parking expands the benefits of the assisted parking systems by allowing frequent parking manoeuvres to be learnt and stored. If the system recognises the surroundings and a stored parking manoeuvre, it can reproduce the manoeuvre autonomously. The driver can have the vehicle perform the parking manoeuvre while sitting inside the vehicle or by operating it via remote control[1].

System limits

Please note the system limits of the assisted parking systems ⇨ *page 227*.

Further information

Only use trained parking when the country-specific regulations permit it. The use of the system may be restricted or prohibited in certain countries. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.

[1] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available.

– The vehicle may swing out during the manoeuvre. The driver maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.

Training the vehicle to perform a parking manoeuvre

Training the vehicle to perform a parking manoeuvre

- Drive to any starting point.
- Brake to a standstill.
- Press on the centre display with the parking aid activated.
- Start recording a new manoeuvre by pressing the corresponding button on the centre display.
- Park the vehicle manually in your chosen parking space.

appears on the centre display while the system is learning the manoeuvre that you are performing. The speed is limited while the parking manoeuvre is being recorded.

As soon as the parking manoeuvre is stored, the learning process for trained parking is complete.

Storing a parking manoeuvre

The parking manoeuvre can only be stored when the vehicle is stationary. It is not possible to store the parking manoeuvre while reverse gear is engaged.

- Press the corresponding button on the centre display to store the parking manoeuvre.
- Select an appropriate name for your parking manoeuvre (e.g. work).

The recording is complete once it has been stored and is then available for use with the trained parking function.

Managing parking manoeuvres

- To change the name of a parking manoeuvre, press and hold the manoeuvre and select .
- To delete a parking manoeuvre, press and hold the parking manoeuvre and select .

Further information

– You can store up to five parking manoeuvres. You can only store one parking manoeuvre in the immediate vicinity of a learnt parking manoeuvre. If several parking manoeuvres with the same name are stored, a number will appear next to the symbol.
– A parking manoeuvre that has been stored for entering a parking space cannot be used to leave the same parking space. Parking manoeuvres for leaving spaces must be trained separately.

Using trained parking

Activating trained parking

Important: You must be in the immediate vicinity of a learnt parking manoeuvre.

- To activate the system, press while the parking aid is switched on.
- Select one of the highlighted parking manoeuvres.
- Drive to the starting point of the stored parking manoeuvre and brake the vehicle to a standstill.
- Press the corresponding button on the centre display to start the learnt parking manoeuvre.
- It is not possible to select a recording for trained parking if there is no parking space nearby.

A message appears in the centre display if a learnt parking manoeuvre is detected in the vicinity of the vehicle. You can start the system as soon as you reach the starting point or the path of a learnt parking manoeuvre.

Using a learnt parking manoeuvre to enter/leave a parking space

Important: You must be in the immediate vicinity of a learnt parking manoeuvre.

- Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- When the road is clear, release the brake pedal ⇨ . The symbol indicates that the system is active and has taken control of the vehicle.
- In unclear situations, abort the parking manoeuvre by braking the vehicle firmly to a standstill or moving the steering wheel.

▸ When a learnt parking manoeuvre is being performed, the distance to the end position is shown on the centre display.

Starting a learnt parking manoeuvre remotely[1)]

Important: You must be in the immediate vicinity of a learnt parking manoeuvre.

You can also start a learnt parking manoeuvre remotely.

▸ Select a recorded manoeuvre and bring the vehicle to a standstill at the starting point.
▸ Select the button ⇨ *page 233*.

System interventions during the parking manoeuvre

Within the system limits, the system can react to detected obstacles, pedestrians and other road users by swerving or braking.

The interventions are only available inside the area of the recorded parking manoeuvre.

WARNING

– Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 161* to ⇨ *page 163*.
– Only use the system if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel – risk of accident!
– Trained parking serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when using trained parking. If you reach between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning, there is a risk of injuring your fingers or hands.

Stopping/cancelling trained parking

Stopping the system manually

You can stop trained parking at any time by braking the vehicle gently to a standstill and briefly remaining stationary. To continue the manoeuvre, press the button on the centre display and release the brake pedal.

Automatic stopping or cancellation

Trained parking stops or is cancelled automatically under the following circumstances:

– If you switch off the system
– If you press the accelerator
– If you apply the parking brake
– If you move the steering wheel by hand
– If the system limit for the maximum number of parking movements has been exceeded
– If a vehicle door is opened
– If the time limit has been exceeded
– If an obstacle is detected
– If there is a fault in a participating system, e.g. the parking aid
– If the vehicle deviates too far from the recorded path
– If the ESC intervenes
– If cross-traffic is detected

The or symbol will appear. A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays.

If the parking manoeuvre is cancelled automatically, you must take full control of the vehicle.

You can resume the parking manoeuvre in some situations. Please note the messages on the centre display. If applicable, press the button on the centre display to continue.

Driver messages about trained parking

If , or lights up, trained parking is unavailable and you must actively apply the brakes yourself if necessary. ▸

[1)] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To view further information, open the notification centre on the centre display. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 164*. Try switching on the system later or after the vehicle is next switched on.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Telephone

Introduction

You can connect your mobile phone via the mobile phone interface and use it conveniently via the MMI. You can connect up to two mobile phones (e.g. your business phone and personal phone). You can then be reached inside the vehicle on both mobile phones.

Functions depend on the country, the vehicle equipment, the mobile phone used and its operating system and are not available on all displays.

WARNING

- According to health organisations, mobile phones may interfere with the function of pacemakers. A minimum distance of 20 cm between the mobile phone aerial and the pacemaker should therefore be maintained.
  - Do not carry a mobile phone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - If you suspect interference, switch the mobile phone off immediately.
- Your mobile phone operates via radio waves. It is therefore not possible to guarantee a connection under all circumstances. Do not rely solely on your mobile phone when vital communication is required (e.g. in a medical emergency).
- Always follow the directions of the emergency operators when making an emergency call and do not end the call before you are requested to do so.
- The Audi assistant must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice may change in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!
- There is a risk of explosion at filling stations and at fuel and chemical storage and transport facilities. Remember that these areas may not always be adequately marked. Such areas also include places where fumes (e.g. propane or fuel vapours coming out of vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (e.g. from flour, wood or metal) could accumulate in the air. This warning also applies to all other places where you would normally switch off the engine or your mobile phone; make sure to switch your mobile phone off in these places.
- Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 23*.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Calling up the telephone

Calling up the telephone on the MMI

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Telephone**.

Calling up the telephone on the instrument cluster

▸ Press the ▭ / ▭ button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until telephone content is displayed.

Connecting a mobile phone

▸ Connect your mobile phone to the MMI in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 280*.
▸ Make sure that the phone function of the mobile phone is set to be used after connecting.

If you granted access to your contacts during the connection procedure, these will be shown automatically on the MMI after connecting successfully.

Depending on the mobile phone, you can use the handsfree system after connecting successfully. Your phone calls will be made via the aerial of your mobile phone.

If a connected mobile phone has a voice control feature, you can control your mobile phone using the external voice control system.

8B1012720AG

Overview of telephone symbols

Depending on the country, the vehicle equipment, the mobile phone used and its operating system, the following symbols may be available on the MMI:

Symbol	Description
SOS	Select the emergency number from the list. The call will be placed immediately.
	Find contact.
	Switch between the mobile phones connected to the MMI.
	Switch the audio output during a phone call to the mobile phone, the vehicle speakers (hands-free mode) or the head restraint speakers.
	Send tone sequences (DTMF) during a phone call.
...	Have other call options displayed during a phone call.
	Edit a phone number before dialling it.
	Show the call history.
	Send a message template as a text message.
	Call recommendations

Calling up the telephone settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Telephone** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Telephone** > ⚙.

Calling up the messages menu

You can switch various functions on/off and edit message templates in the **Messages** menu.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Telephone** > ⚙ > **Messages**.

Using the telephone functions

Switching between connected mobile phones

If two mobile phones are connected to the MMI, you can switch between these mobile phones to access the relevant contacts, start calls and select settings.

▸ Select the following: ⊞ > **Telephone** > *Connected telephone 1* or *Connected telephone 2*.
▸ Press on the desired device name.

Starting a call

Depending on the country, the vehicle equipment, the mobile phone used and its operating system, there may be various different ways in which you can start a call.

Starting a call on the MMI

▸ To search for a contact, select: ⊞ > **Telephone** > 🔍.
▸ To enter a number manually, select: ⊞ > **Telephone** > **Keypad**.
▸ To start a call via the call list/favourites list, select: ⊞ > **Telephone** > **Call list/Favourites** > *an entry*.
▸ To start a call via the contact list, select: ⊞ > **Telephone** > **Contact list** > *a contact*. If applicable, select the desired telephone number.

Starting a call in the instrument cluster

The call list is displayed in one of the left tabs in the instrument cluster.

▸ To select an entry from the call list, scroll the left thumbwheel.
▸ To confirm an entry, press the left thumbwheel.

Starting a call in the head-up display

Important: The phone must have been switched on as display content in the head-up display ⇨ *page 29*.

▸ To show the call list, press the 📞 button on the multi-function steering wheel.
▸ To select an entry from the call list, scroll the left thumbwheel.

▸ To confirm an entry, press the left thumbwheel.

Starting a call via the Audi assistant

You can start a call via the Audi assistant.

Phone calls

You can accept or decline incoming calls on the MMI and with the multi-function steering wheel.

The Bluetooth connection is severed if you leave the vehicle during a phone call. Depending on the mobile phone used, active calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone.

Depending on the mobile phone and mobile network service provider used, further call options may be available during a call.

Depending on the country, it may be necessary to activate the **Three-way conference service** function in the **Telephone** settings menu ⇨ *page 244* in order to use certain call options.

Declining a call via text message

Important: The mobile phone used must support the function and there must be an incoming call.

▸ Make sure that the function is switched on in the **Messages** menu ⇨ *page 244*.
▸ Press **Ignore: text**. The set message template will be sent.

Putting a call on hold via the instrument cluster

Important: A call must be in progress.

▸ Scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel until **Hold** is selected.
▸ To confirm the selection, press the left thumbwheel.

Answering a second call on the MMI

Important: A call must be in progress and a second call must be incoming.

The call waiting option must be activated on your mobile phone for you to be made aware of incoming calls while a call is already in progress. Depending on your mobile network service provider, one of the following options may be available:

▸ Press **Answer**. The current call will be put on hold. You will then receive the incoming call.
▸ Press **Replace**. The current call will be replaced by the incoming call.

Switching between calls on the MMI

Important: A call must be in progress and a second call must be on hold.

▸ Press on the call which is currently on hold to switch between the calls.

Starting a conference on the MMI

Important: A call must be in progress and a second call must be on hold.

▸ Press ⅄. The phone calls will be merged into a conference.

Up to five active callers can take part in a conference (depending on the mobile network service provider).

Using the contact list

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

All of the contacts stored on your mobile phone are shown in the contact list. If there are too many entries, some contacts may not be displayed on the MMI. The contacts can only be edited on the mobile phone.

In the **Telephone** settings menu, you can set the sort order and download contacts manually ⇨ *page 244*. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, the Bluetooth connection may have to be disconnected and re-established before you can download the contacts. Please note any further notifications on your mobile phone.

When you switch the vehicle on again after switching it off and leaving the car, the MMI system will update the mobile phone's contacts if the phone is within range and Bluetooth is activated both on the phone and on the MMI.

8B1012720AG

Using call recommendations

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI and the call list must be filled.

If the call recommendation function is switched on in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇨ *page 31*, certain contacts from the call list will be recommended based on the situation.

Calling up a business card

The business card shows you a contact's details.

▸ To view a contact's business card, press ⓘ.

Using text message functions

You can send text messages to contacts and display incoming text messages on the MMI or have them read out.

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI.

Applies to iPhone: Make sure that access to your text messages is switched on in your mobile phone's Bluetooth settings. You may need to cancel and re-establish the Bluetooth connection to do this.

Sending text messages

▸ Press and hold on a contact in the call list until the context menu is displayed, or
▸ Call up a contact's business card.
▸ Press 💬.
▸ Select a message template.

Displaying incoming text messages

If the function is switched on in the **Messages** menu ⇨ *page 244*, new messages are displayed in the MMI's notification centre.

Using the phone compartment

Introduction

Depending on the country and vehicle's equipment, you can use the following functions via the phone compartment:
– Making and receiving calls using the vehicle aerial
– Wireless mobile phone charging
– Switch the reminder not to forget your phone on/off

⚠ WARNING

– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident! Only operate the mobile device via the MMI.

System limits of the phone compartment

In some situations, the functions of the phone compartment may be restricted or temporarily unavailable. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:
– More than one mobile phone is in the phone compartment.
– The mobile phone is in a bag or a protective case.
– There are objects between the phone compartment and the mobile phone.

Using the vehicle aerial

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the mobile network coupling aerial connects your mobile phone to the vehicle's external aerial. This reduces the radiation in the vehicle and improves the reception quality.

Important: The vehicle must be switched on. ▸

- Place your mobile phone with the rear side down on the charging symbol on the holder.

Opening the wireless charging menu

You can switch various functions on/off in the **Wireless charging** menu.

- Select: ⊞ > **Telephone** > ⚙ > **Wireless mobile phone charging**.

Charging a mobile phone wirelessly

You can charge your mobile phone wirelessly in the phone compartment. The charging performance depends on the mobile phone.

Important: The vehicle must be switched on and your mobile phone must be Qi compatible.

- Make sure that the function is switched on in the **Wireless charging** menu ⇨ *page 247*.
- Place your mobile phone with the rear side down on the charging symbol on the holder.

Make sure that there are no cards with an NFC chip between the phone compartment and the mobile phone while the phone is charging, as this could cause irreparable damage to such cards.

Notifications for wireless charging

If the function is switched on in the **Wireless charging** menu ⇨ *page 247*, a notification is displayed in the notification centre on the MMI when the mobile phone is being charged wirelessly.

⚠ WARNING

An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Always keep a minimum of 6 cm away from the charging area of the phone compartment. The limits for long-term exposure according to ICNIRP 1998 are kept to at this distance. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) or passive implants (e.g. artificial joints) are therefore very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions. Alternatively, you can switch the phone compartment's wireless charging function on/off. You will still be able to charge your mobile phone using a cable.

Using the reminder not to forget your phone

Important: A Qi compatible mobile phone must be in the phone compartment, or your mobile phone must be connected to the USB port with charging function via a USB adapter with the smartphone interface active, or your iPhone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth and be charging with a USB adapter via the USB port with charging function.

If the reminder not to forget your phone is switched on in the **Wireless charging** menu ⇨ *page 247*, a message will appear to remind you that your mobile phone is still in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle.

Troubleshooting for phones

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment. ▶

Subject	Advice
Connecting the mobile phone to the MMI fails.	Check if the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have been met ⇨ *page 280*, or Check if you have accidentally declined the PIN for setting up the connection on your mobile phone. Repeat the connection procedure if necessary ⇨ *page 280*.
After the mobile phone was connected not all/none of the contacts were loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your mobile phone. Pay attention to any requests on your mobile phone when connecting via Bluetooth.
Some telephone functions are greyed out/not available.	The telephone functions will depend on the mobile network service provider, the mobile phone used and the operating system.
Some telephone functions are greyed out/not available, even though the mobile phone supports them.	Check if the Bluetooth settings on your mobile phone are restricted or if individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case if the mobile phone belongs to a business organisation.
Text messages are not displayed on the MMI.	Check if the requirements for using the text message function have been met.
Your mobile phone cannot be charged wirelessly or the charging procedure is interrupted.	Check that the phone compartment's wireless charging function is switched on. Check that your mobile phone is Qi compatible. Check that your mobile phone is in the correct position with rear side on the charging symbol and that there are no other objects in the phone compartment.

Audi connect

Information on Audi connect

Depending on the country and your vehicle's equipment, Audi connect can connect your vehicle to the internet. The offered apps and services enhance the functions of your vehicle.

Availability, scope, cost and content of the apps, services and technologies depend on the software version installed in your vehicle or on your mobile device. This may also depend on the country, the contract price, the vehicle and the equipment fitted.

The availability of the apps and services depends on the licence period. All apps and services may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.

Some apps and services are provided by third parties or are dependent on third party providers. Audi does not assume any liability for the content and availability.

The availability, scope, provider and price of the apps and services offered can vary, as can the way in which the services are displayed on the screen. These variations depend on your country, model, model year, device and mobile phone contract.

The latest mobile phone standards are not available for use in all countries. For further information, please consult an Audi dealer or your mobile network service provider.

The myAudi app is required for some services. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

WARNING

- Only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please see ⇨ *page 23, Notes on traffic safety*.
- Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇨ *page 78*.

CAUTION

- With a small number of exceptions, the data connection costs for Audi connect services are included in the price of Audi connect during the licence period. Some services require additional data volume. Please note that using these services may incur costs. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, there are various options to purchase additional data volume:
  - You use paid data plans for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
  - You connect your vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot. The Wi-Fi hotspot can be provided by your smartphone, for example, and uses the data volume from your SIM card. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if you are using the system abroad. We strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For more information, contact your service provider.
- If you connect your mobile device to your vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot to establish an internet connection, your mobile device's SIM card may be used in certain cases as a substitute. This depends on the configuration of your mobile device and operating system. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if you are using the system abroad. We strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile device.
- Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used, for example, to connect to the internet via the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot. ▶

8B1012720AG

– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.

Using the internet in the vehicle

Establishing an internet connection in the vehicle using an eSIM card

An internet connection is required to use Audi connect services or apps in the vehicle. An eSIM card is installed in vehicles equipped with Audi connect. You can immediately use the internet via the eSIM card. Follow any instructions given by the system. Some services require additional data volume.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Information on additional data volume

Some services require additional data volume. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, there are various options to purchase additional data volume:
– Using data plans
– Connecting vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

Using data plans

Some services require additional data volume. In some countries, a data plan is offered for this.

Important: In some countries, your myAudi user ID must be registered as the key user in the vehicle.

You can purchase data plans via my.audi.com.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Connecting the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

Important: The vehicle must be switched on.

- If necessary, activate the “Wi-Fi hotspot (tethering)” or “personal hotspot” function on your mobile phone.
- Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Wi-Fi**.
- Switch the **Wi-Fi** function on.
- Press on the desired Wi-Fi hotspot in the list of available networks.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

The vehicle is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Audi connect services

Setting up Audi connect services and apps

You require a myAudi account to use Audi connect services and apps.

- Install the myAudi app on your mobile device.
- Register in the myAudi app to create a myAudi account.
- Specify a key user.
- Follow the instructions given by the myAudi app.

A myAudi user must be logged in to use some of the Audi connect services. ▶

Some Audi connect services must be activated via my.audi.com.

Information on Audi connect services

Audi connect services enhance the functions of your vehicle.

You can generally use available Audi connect services directly on the MMI.

Before you use certain Audi connect infotainment services for the first time, it is necessary to configure them via your personal myAudi account at my.audi.com.

Information on the services and the corresponding app were correct at the time of publication. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

WARNING

– Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.
– Driver messages, notifications and warning and indicator lamps that are lit up in the vehicle always take precedent over the information from Audi connect services. Do not let the information from Audi connect services tempt you into taking any risks when driving. This could lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Information on vehicle control services

You can use the Audi connect vehicle control services, for example, to view data on your vehicle or to control vehicle functions remotely.

You can view and use the services available for your vehicle at my.audi.com or in the myAudi app.

Whether you are able to call up certain types of data or operate functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle's battery. These functions are therefore only available to a limited extent after the vehicle has been switched off.

Information on the services and the corresponding app were correct at the time of publication. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

WARNING

– Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.
– Driver messages, notifications and warning and indicator lamps that are lit up in the vehicle always take precedent over the information from Audi connect services. Do not let the information from Audi connect services tempt you into taking any risks when driving. This could lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle hotspot

You can connect up to eight mobile devices (e.g. smartphones) to the vehicle hotspot via Wi-Fi. If the vehicle is connected to the internet, the connected mobile devices can also use the vehicle's internet connection.

Important: The drive system must be switched on. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Vehicle hotspot**.
▸ Switch the **Vehicle hotspot** function on. The access codes for the vehicle hotspot will be displayed. ▶

- Switch on the Wi-Fi on your mobile device.
- Connect your mobile device to the vehicle's hotspot.

A random initial password is set on the MMI at the factory. Audi recommends you to change the initial password. Follow general guidelines on password security and ensure your password is secure.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Store

Introduction

After delivery, you can add functions or apps to your vehicle via the Audi digital store.

Adding functions and apps

Adding functions in the vehicle

Depending on the country and vehicle's equipment, you can add functions (e.g. functions on demand) via the store in the vehicle or via the myAudi app.

- Select: ⊞ > **Store** > **Audi functions**.
- Follow any instructions given by the system.

It may be necessary to switch the vehicle off and on again prior to using a function for the first time.

Adding apps in the vehicle

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, you can add apps to the vehicle via the store.

- Select: ⊞ > **Store** > **Apps**.
- Follow any instructions given by the system.

Changing the store region

- Select: ⊞ > **Store** > ⚙.

Information on functions and apps

Certain functions (e.g. functions on demand) are linked to the vehicle and may be permanently or temporarily available in the vehicle depending on the licence, even after the vehicle has been sold. Apps are linked to the respective myAudi account.

WARNING

– Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.
– Only use the store in the vehicle and on your smartphone when the vehicle is stationary. Do not allow yourself to be distracted from the road – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Displaying the installation history of functions

You can display the installation history.

- Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Functions on demand**.

Displaying installation history and updates

You can display the installation history and updates.

- Select: ⊞ > **Store** > **My applications**.

Emergency call

Emergency call systems

Overview of the emergency call systems

Description of the in-vehicle emergency call system.

An emergency call is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the relevant emergency switchboards using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following functions are available:

The **emergency call** function allows you to organise assistance as quickly as possible in dangerous situations. Use this function whenever you need help ⇨ *page 253*.

– Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call). This eCall system uses third-party emergency switchboards, which may include public emergency switchboards.
– Statutory European emergency call (EU eCall) [1]. This eCall system is based on the 112 SOS number and uses public emergency switchboards.

The **online roadside assistance call** function allows you to request assistance in the event of a breakdown or a minor accident ⇨ *page 255*.

WARNING

– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.
– Applies to EU eCall: Not all public emergency switchboards can receive data transmitted by the vehicle.
– When an emergency call is active, all sources of noise (i.e. warning signals such as those given by the parking aid) may be muted.

Information on using the emergency call systems

The services are provided via a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Provision of these services requires that the mobile network of the SIM card be functioning and ready for use.

The EU eCall emergency call is only available within the mobile network coverage that is required by law.

The TPS emergency call is only available within the mobile network area covered by the network provider selected by Audi.

Information on using the emergency call systems

If EU eCall is installed in the vehicle, the TPS emergency call can be deactivated in the privacy settings in the vehicle's infotainment system. The legally required EU eCall cannot be deactivated in the vehicle's infotainment system.

EU eCall is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.

The availability of the TPS emergency call is time-limited.

The cost of TPS voice calls and data connections is included in the price of the services.

Functions of the emergency call systems

In the event of a serious accident, an eCall system is automatically activated via onboard sensors ⇨ *page 254, Automatic emergency call*. If the vehicle is equipped with the EU eCall and TPS emergency call system, but the TPS emergency call is not available, the EU eCall is triggered automatically. ▶

[1] "EU eCall" in the following description refers also to emergency call systems required by law in non-EU countries, where the technical implementation corresponds to EU eCall.

The EU eCall can also be triggered manually if needed. For instructions on how to activate the system manually, please refer to ⇨ *page 254, Manual emergency call*.

The TPS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically ⇨ *page 254*.

When a TPS emergency call is placed automatically, information required to alert the emergency services may also be transferred to a public switchboard or police station to enable assistance to be provided as quickly as possible.

Making an emergency call

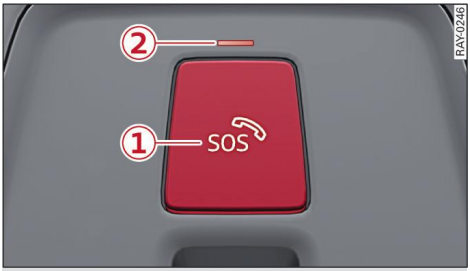


Fig. 132 Front headliner: Cover for emergency call button

Manual emergency call

Important: The vehicle must be switched on.

- Lightly press the cover ① to open it.
- Press the emergency call button until the LED ② flashes. The emergency call will be placed.
- If you press the emergency call button accidentally, press it again immediately until the LED lights up permanently. The emergency call will be cancelled.

Automatic emergency call

In some circumstances, the vehicle's electronics will make an emergency call automatically if, for example, an airbag has been triggered. The LED ② will flash. The emergency call will be placed. The emergency call cannot be cancelled.

If the emergency call is cut off due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

Meaning of LEDs

– **Green** – The emergency call function is available in the vehicle.
– **Red** – A fault has occurred in the emergency call function. Please contact a qualified workshop. Please note the driver messages regarding the availability of the emergency call function ⇨ *page 255*.
– **Off** – The emergency call function is temporarily unavailable, e.g. if there is no network.

Warnings

In the event of a critical emergency call system failure, the vehicle occupants receive a warning; refer to ⇨ *page 254, Meaning of LEDs* and ⇨ *page 255, Driver messages about the emergency call systems*.

Applies to EU eCall: In the event of a critical system failure which would cause the onboard emergency call system to be unavailable, the vehicle occupants receive a warning; refer to ⇨ *page 254, Meaning of LEDs* and ⇨ *page 255, Driver messages about the emergency call systems*.

Sending phone number in an emergency call

In the event of an emergency call, your phone number[1)] can be transferred to a public switchboard or police station to enable assistance to be provided as quickly as possible.

- Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Connection manager** > ⚙.
- Switch the function **Send no. in an emergency call** on.
- To save or change the phone number, press **Save no. for emergency call** or **Change no. for emerg. call**.

▶

[1)] We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all phones/SIM cards. As a result, it may not always be possible to read out the phone number and no indication of the incompatibility will be given.

- Enter the phone number in the international format.

The function must be switched on individually for each connected mobile phone.

Driver messages about the emergency call systems

Emergency call function: fault. Function unavailable. Please contact workshop

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to a qualified workshop as soon as possible and have the fault rectified.

Online roadside assistance

Introduction

An online roadside assistance call [1] can consist of a voice call and data transmission. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the Audi call centre using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Using the online roadside assistance call

Starting an online roadside assistance call

- Press the button at the front of the headliner. The LED in the button will light up in red.
- Follow the system's instructions to start an online roadside assistance call. The online roadside assistance call will be placed.

If the online roadside assistance call is cut off due to a poor connection, the call must be started again.

Cancelling an online roadside assistance call

- Press the button at the front of the headliner.

Audi incident assistance

The vehicle electronics detect if a minor accident has occurred.

- Follow the system instructions to call Audi incident assistance or make an emergency call.

Information on data processing for the European Union

Information on the EU eCall

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and Council and, in particular, must be necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the person affected as set out in Article 6 Paragraph 1 Subparagraph d of Regulation (EU) 2016/679.

The processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling eCall emergency calls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

Data types and their recipients

The EU eCall system may only collect and process the following data: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger car or light goods vehicle), type of vehicle power (petrol/diesel/electric/hydrogen), the last three locations of the vehicle and direction of travel, log file of automatic system activation and its time stamp. Further data: version and ID of log file, number of vehicle occupants, information for estimating severity of collision, location plausibility.

The recipients of data processed in association with the EU eCall are the relevant Public Safety Answering Points (PSAP) designated by the corresponding national authorities, under whose sovereignty they are situated, to answer and process eCalls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

[1] The availability of the services offered depends on your country and is time-limited.

Form of data processing

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data stored in the system memory are not accessible outside the system before an emergency call is placed.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and is not tracked continuously during normal operation.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data are automatically and continuously erased from the internal system memory.

The vehicle location data are continuously overwritten in the internal system memory to ensure that not more than three current locations, which are required for normal system operation, are available.

The activity log of the EU eCall system is stored only for as long as is necessary to fulfil the purpose of handling the eCall emergency call and never more than 13 hours after the time at which the eCall emergency call was placed.

Modalities for exercising data subject's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Regulation (EU) 2016/679. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Regulation, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Contact address for queries about access rights:

AUDI AG
DSGVO-Anfrage
Auto-Union-Straße 1
85057 Ingolstadt
GERMANY

Information on third-party services and other services with added benefit

Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS emergency call ⇨ *page 253*.

Description of the operation and the functionalities of the online roadside assistance call ⇨ *page 255*.

Any processing of personal data through the TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance call systems must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2).

The fulfilment of the contract for the TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance call forms the legal basis for the use of the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance and for the processing of data by the system/services.

The TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance call systems may process personal data only by express consent of the data subject (the vehicle keeper).

The TPS emergency call system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and is not tracked continuously during normal operation.

For information on modalities for data processing through the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance call systems, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data, refer to:

– Modalities ⇨ *page 256*
– You can read information on data protection in the MMI of your vehicle. Select: ⊞ > **Legal**.

The keeper of a vehicle which is equipped with TPS emergency call system in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system instead of the TPS emergency call system. The TPS emergency call can be deactivated in the privacy settings in your vehicle’s infotainment system.

Navigation

Introduction

The navigation system guides you directly to your destination, avoiding traffic obstructions and using alternative routes if desired.

Functions and services depend on the country and vehicle equipment and are not available on all displays.

WARNING

– Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 23*.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation. Always adhere to the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations. If the recommended route is in contradiction with the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations, these always take precedence – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Navigation system limits

The navigation system is subject to system limits. In certain situations, the navigation may be temporarily restricted.

– Snow or other obstructions on the GPS aerial or trees or large buildings could affect the reception of the satellite signals and make positioning difficult. GPS reception can also be adversely affected by deactivation or a malfunction of several satellites.
– Route guidance is subject to constant change, such as new roads, roadworks, road closures, changes to street names and house numbers. Outdated navigation data may result in errors or inaccuracies during route guidance.

Calling up the navigation menu

Calling up the navigation function on the MMI

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Navigation**.

Calling up the navigation function in the instrument cluster

▸ Press the ▭ / ▭ button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until navigation content is displayed.

Calling up the map on the instrument cluster

▸ Press the VIEW button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until the navigation map is displayed.

Overview of navigation symbols

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following symbols may be available on the MMI:

Symbol	Description
🔍	Search for destination and select for route guidance.
⌂ / ▦	Specify/edit home/business address
⏲	Last destinations.
⚑	Destination information (e.g. driving time and distance to destination) or destination marker on the map.
⚑✕	Stop route guidance.
🔈 / 🔇	Switch navigation cues on/off. You can adjust the navigation cues and volume of spoken cues in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*. You can change the volume of a spoken cue while it is being played ⇨ *page 26*.
⊕	Adjusting map orientation: You can switch between a 2D driving position map, 2D north position map and 3D driving position map.
🔍+ / 🔍−	Zoom in/out on map.

Symbol	Description
/ AUTO / M	Set map scale: You can switch between the overview map, automatic zoom and manual zoom.
	Centre map to current vehicle position.
	Current vehicle position.

Calling up the navigation settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Navigation** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Select: > **Navigation** > .

Calling up the map content menu

You can switch content displayed in the map on/off in the **Map content** menu.

▸ Select: > **Navigation** > > **Map content**.

Entering a destination

Finding and selecting a destination on the MMI

The search allows you to search for your desired destination and select it for route guidance. The navigation system always searches for the fastest route.

Calling up the search function

▸ Select: > **Navigation** > .

Search options

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle and the country, as well as the registered user, the following options may be available:

– Search: Search for one or multiple terms in the entry field or using the Audi assistant.
– Internet search: Search for a destination using a search engine. Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.
– Online points of interest: Search for a point of interest, such as filling stations, parking spaces and restaurants. To use other categories, press •••.

Route guidance begins after you have selected the desired destination.

Special destinations

The distances to special destinations are shown as the crow flies from your current location. The actual driving distance between your current position and the special destination is updated automatically. However, the list of special destinations is not sorted again.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Selecting a destination in the instrument cluster

Important: Route guidance must not be active.

Navigation is displayed in one of the left tabs in the instrument cluster.

▸ To select a destination, scroll the left thumbwheel.
▸ To confirm a destination, press the left thumbwheel.

It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Using search filters for POIs

Depending on the point of interest category, you can use filters when searching for a destination.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

▸ Select: > **Navigation** > > *a point of interest category (e.g. parking)* > **Filter**.
▸ Select your desired filters. The corresponding POIs will be displayed on the map.
▸ Select the destination on the map to navigate to a POI.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Setting a destination from the map

You can set a point from the map or location from the map (e.g. POI) as a destination.

▸ Press on a point or location on the map (e.g. 🍴).

The destination details will be displayed. You can select the destination for route guidance.

Show destination details

You can display additional information on a destination. You can view destination details using the following options:

▸ Press on ⓘ in the search.
▸ Press on a point or location on the map (e.g. 🍴).

Depending on the selected destination, the following options may be available in the destination details view:

– Store as favourite/delete favourite
– Start route guidance
– Add as a stopover
– Display nearby points of interest

Selecting contacts as a destination

You can select the address of a contact in your mobile telephone as a destination.

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI. An address must be available for a contact.

▸ Call up a contact's business card.
▸ Press on the stored address to set the address in the search.
▸ Press on the address in the search to start route guidance.

Using myAudi navigation

The MMI's navigation system works seamlessly together with the myAudi app.

Your last destinations and favourites are synchronised via your myAudi account. All the important destinations can be displayed in the vehicle and the myAudi app.

So that the destinations are loaded automatically in the vehicle, Audi recommends logging on in the vehicle with a myAudi account ⇨ *page 34*.

Important: The MMI and your mobile device must be connected to the internet. You must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device. You are logged in to the same myAudi account in the vehicle and the myAudi app.

myAudi navigation functions:

– You can send destinations to the vehicle from the myAudi app.
– Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued on the MMI.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Using functions while route guidance is active

Using destination information

Route guidance begins after you have selected a destination. The destination information 🏁 calculated by the MMI is displayed and contains the driving time and distance to the destination, as well as the arrival time at the destination.

▸ Press on the destination information 🏁 to display route details.

Using the route monitor

The route monitor displays information on things along the route. Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, traffic information, filling ▶

stations, points of interest, alternative routes and country borders can be displayed.

- Press the route monitor bar to show the route monitor in full.
- Press on information in the route monitor to view details.
- Press ⟨ to close the route monitor.

Editing route

You can edit your current route by adding or deleting stopovers, changing the order of the stopovers or changing the destination.

Editing a stopover

The following options are available:

– Enter a destination via the search function.
– Set a destination from the map.
– Add/delete a destination via destination information.
– Add/delete a destination via **Edit route** in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*.

Adding a stopover updates the destination information.

Replacing a destination

You can replace the previous destination by entering a new destination and pressing **Replace destination**. Route guidance will be updated.

Using route criteria

You can set the route criteria in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*.

Using automatic route updates

The MMI can receive traffic information and plan a better route, as well as calculate the time saved compared to the current route.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

If automatic route updates are switched on, the better route is automatically used if it is available. The MMI will not use a better route if the calculated route does not save time compared to the current route guidance.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Using the manoeuvre display

If the manoeuvre display is switched on in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*, upcoming driving manoeuvres (e.g. turning off, changing lanes) are displayed on the map.

- Press on the manoeuvre display to repeat the navigation cue.

Using alternative routes

If alternative routes are switched on in the **Map contents** menu ⇨ *page 258*, two alternative routes will be displayed on the map in addition to the calculated route. The time difference to the currently selected route will be displayed for the alternative routes.

- Press on a route on the map. The corresponding distance to the destinations, as well as the calculated arrival times are displayed in the information window on the respective routes. Toll fees are shown in some countries.
- Select your preferred route and press **Start**. Route guidance will be updated.

Stopping route guidance

- Press 🏁 to stop active route guidance.

Route guidance will be stopped. The destination and any stopovers will be stored individually as last destinations.

Using predictive route guidance

The MMI system can learn destinations that you drive to frequently, such as your place of work, and suggest them for route guidance based on the time and the vehicle's location, regardless of whether you are currently using the navigation system. It also learns regular stopovers and ▶

includes them in the suggested route. The learnt destinations are stored for the specific user.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet. You must be logged in with a myAudi user ID in the vehicle.

You can switch predictive route guidance on/off in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*. Your destinations will no longer be recorded if you switch the function off. Destinations which have already been recorded remain stored.

Even if route guidance is not active, the MMI system can check the traffic situation and show possible traffic disruptions along the route you will probably take.

Setting the suggested destination

Important: Route guidance must not be active. A suggested destination must be shown.

▸ Press 🏁 to confirm the suggested destination. Route guidance will be started.

Deleting recorded destinations

You can delete destinations recorded for the logged-in user in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*.

– **Delete the last 24 hours**: Deletes recorded destinations that are no more than 24 hours old.
– **Delete personal routes & destinations**: Deletes all stored destinations.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Operating the map

Operating the map on the MMI

You can optimise the navigation map view by moving it using your fingers.

– Move map: Swipe in the desired direction with one finger.
– Quickly move map: Swipe in the desired direction with one finger and release the map while doing so.
– Gradually zoom in on map: Double tap the map with your finger.
– Zoom in on map: Place two fingers on the area and move them apart or double-tap on the map with one finger, press and hold your finger on the map and swipe down with your finger.
– Gradually zoom out on map: Double-tap the map with two fingers.
– Zoom out on map: Place two fingers on the area and move them together or double-tap on the map with one finger, press and hold your finger on the map and swipe up with your finger.
– Turn map: Turn the map with two fingers.
– Tilt map: Swipe up/down with two fingers.

Operating the map in the instrument cluster

You can operate the navigation map in the instrument cluster.

Important: The map must be displayed in the instrument cluster.

– To activate the zoom on the map, press and hold the ▭ / ▭ button until no tabs are shown.
– To zoom in/out on the map: Scroll the left thumbwheel.

Using map functions

Setting the map colours

You can set the map colours in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*. If the map colour is set to **Auto**, the colour of the map changes to match the current light conditions (e.g. from day to night when driving through tunnels).

Calling up country information

You can call up country information, such as permitted top speeds on the motorway, in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*.

Using range

If range is switched on in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 258*, your range based on your vehicle's current state of charge is displayed on the map.

Using the satellite map

You can have the navigation map shown with satellite images. For this map display, the system uses data packets received online in the form of satellite pictures and combines these pictures with the road network from the standard map display.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

You can switch the satellite map on/off in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*.

The satellite map is updated at regular intervals when it is called up. This can take a few seconds. Depending on the internet connection, the standard map may also be displayed when the satellite map is activated.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Using traffic information

The MMI system can receive real-time information from the internet regarding traffic congestion, accidents, roadworks and other incidents. The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

If traffic information is available on your route, it is displayed on the map or in the route monitor.

▸ Press on the corresponding traffic information to display details.

Urgent traffic information, such as a car travelling in the wrong direction on the motorway, is displayed automatically as a notification.

Traffic obstructions on your route are displayed using coloured warning symbols. Traffic obstructions that are not on your route are greyed out. All traffic obstructions are highlighted in colour on the map when route guidance is not active.

Showing traffic flow

You can switch flow of traffic on/off in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 258*.

Traffic flow is displayed in colour on the map:

– **Green**: no obstructions
– **Orange**: slow-moving traffic
– **Red**: traffic jams/obstructions

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Performing an online map update

With the online map update function you can update the map material of your navigation system directly in the vehicle.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

When starting the navigation for the first time, a notification is displayed in which you can agree to automatic map updates. You can also switch automatic updates for the navigation database on/off later in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*.

The MMI will automatically perform the online map update in the background as soon as new map material is available.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection ▸

costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Troubleshooting for the navigation

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
The entered destination cannot be found.	If the destination cannot be found, it may not be stored in the navigation database. Check that you have spelt the search term correctly. Use different search options. Search for the destination on the map. Check whether automatic updates are enabled in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 258*.
Last destinations are not shown.	No last destinations are saved if you are not logged into the vehicle or are logged in as a guest user. Log in to the vehicle as a user to save entered destinations and display them in the list of last destinations.

Radio

Introduction

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the radio may support the wavebands FM, AM, DAB (digital radio) and HD radio.

The DAB waveband also supports the transmission standard DAB+, where available.

Functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment and are not available on all displays or for all sources.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ! *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Operating the radio

Calling up the radio on the MMI

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio**.

Calling up the radio on the instrument cluster

▸ Press the ▭ / ▭ button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until radio content is displayed.

Adjusting the radio station on the MMI

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio** > *a station list (e.g. Favourites)* > *a station*.
▸ To set a frequency, enter it in the search.

Selecting a radio station in the instrument cluster

The radio is displayed in one of the left tabs in the instrument cluster.

▸ To select a station, scroll the left thumbwheel.
▸ To confirm a station, press the left thumbwheel.

It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Calling up search

You can search for station names, frequencies[1] or types of programme (e.g. news), for example.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio** > 🔍.

Overview of radio symbols

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following symbols may be available on the MMI:

Symbol	Description
	Open the source menu.
	The system is attempting to receive the station.
	The station cannot be received.
▷ / II	Start/stop playback mode.

Calling up the radio settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Radio** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio** > ⚙.

Using radio functions

Using HD radio

If **HD Radio** is switched on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 265*, FM/AM stations that can be received via digital radio are labelled with the HD radio technology symbol HD and are received as digital radio. If the reception quality drops, the radio automatically switches to the analogue FM/AM station, depending on availability.

Digital HD radio stations may also include multiple additional audio programmes. If you leave the waveband, additional audio programmes which can no longer be received are muted.

[1] This function is not available for the DAB waveband.

8B1012720AG

Using automatic music recognition

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

If automatic music recognition is switched on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 265*, additional information, such as album cover, artist or title can be displayed, depending on availability.

You can change the view in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 265*.

You can call up the provider information in the **Radio** settings menu to view legal information on the used music recognition software ⇨ *page 265*.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Using online station tracking

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

If automatic station tracking is switched on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 265*, the radio tuner may switch to an alternative station on the internet if there is a loss of reception in the FM or DAB waveband.

Displaying in the station list

When automatic station tracking is switched on, stations that provide an alternative internet station are marked with the FM or DAB symbols.

Displaying in the playback view

When automatic station tracking is switched on, the following applies in the playback view: The greyed-out WEB symbol indicates stations which can switch to an alternative internet station. The WEB symbol denotes stations which are currently being received via the internet.

Setting the bit rate

You can adjust the preferred bit rate for online station tracking in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 265*. This enables you to increase playback quality or reduce data usage.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Using online station data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

If online station data is switched on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 265*, station logos will be received and displayed.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Using DAB service following

If service following between related DAB stations is switched on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 265*, the tuner attempts to find an alternative reception option when the reception quality becomes weaker.

Using radio text

Additional information on the programme (e.g. general text messages, artist, composer, track) is shown in the radio text.

Important: The selected radio station must support the radio text function.

Calling up the radio text

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio** > *a station list (e.g. FM)* > *a station* > •••.

Using music streaming functions in the radio

You can use various music streaming service functions for the current song in the radio's playback ▶

view. For example, you can save the song as a favourite or stream other songs from the same album.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet. Automatic music recognition must be switched on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 265*.

Connecting a music streaming service

- Select: ⊞ > **Radio** > *a station list* > *a station* > ⊕.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

Once you have logged in successfully, the symbol for the music streaming service will be shown instead of ⊕ in the playback view.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Using announcements and messages

You can cancel announcements while they are being played by briefly pressing the MMI control dial.

You can switch the announcements and messages on/off in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 265*.

The following functions may be available depending on the country and on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Traffic announcements

If traffic announcements are switched on, traffic announcements from various wavebands are received subject to availability.

DAB announcements

If DAB announcements are switched on, additional information, such as news or weather information, can be received.

Alarm messages

If alarm messages are switched on, alarm messages may be displayed in the notification centre.

Troubleshooting for the radio

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment. ▶

Subject	Advice
No radio playback possible.	Check whether the MMI is muted ⇨ *page 26*. Check whether the radio is in playback mode ⇨ *table on page 265*. Check whether the current station can be received ⇨ *table on page 265*.
Station logos are not shown for favourites.	If the station logo was unavailable when a favourite was stored, the station will be stored with the default logo. To update a favourite, delete the station from the list of favourites and store it again.
The radio always starts with the frequency 88.3 MHz.	The most recently selected radio station is not stored if you are not logged into the vehicle or are logged in as a guest user. Log in to the vehicle as a user so that your radio settings, favourites and most recent stations are stored and displayed.

Media

Introduction

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you have multiple options to play media files and operate them via the MMI.

Functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment and are not available on all displays or for all sources.

WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

– Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.
– Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Information on the use of mobile devices and media

Due to incompatibility, some storage media and media files may not be recognised or cannot be used, or can only be used with limited functionality under certain circumstances.

Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of files and media on storage media.

Use the local media centre on the respective mobile device if playlists are incorrectly displayed on the MMI.

Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which have an integrated cable or which must be connected via a USB adapter to the USB ports; this could cause performance issues.

It cannot be guaranteed that mobile devices that are not compatible with the USB 2.0 specification will function properly.

USB hubs are not supported.

Apple devices with dock connector can only be charged using a suitable USB adapter but cannot transfer data.

Video playback is not available in all countries.

Video playback via the USB ports is not supported by Apple devices or by MTP devices (e.g. smartphones).

For safety reasons, the video picture on the centre display is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.

Audi recommends that your mobile devices use the latest software. Please observe the operating instructions provided by the manufacturer of your mobile device.

Connecting mobile devices and media

Preparing to use media via Bluetooth

▸ Connect your mobile device to the Bluetooth audio player function of the MMI in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 280*.
▸ Make sure that the device is set to be used as a Bluetooth audio player after connecting.

Multiple mobile devices can be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth; however, only one mobile device can be active as a Bluetooth audio player.

Please note the volume control on your mobile device. Audi recommends setting the volume of mobile devices to maximum when they are being used as Bluetooth audio players.

Preparing to use media via the USB interface

▸ Connect your mobile device to the MMI using the USB interface ⭠ in the centre console. ▶

- Follow the instructions given by the system and observe any other notifications on your mobile device.

If you denied access to your files and media when connecting your mobile device for the first time, you can allow access later in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 280*.

Operating media

Calling up media on the MMI

- Select: ⊞ > *a connected mobile device*.

Calling up media in the instrument cluster

- Press the ▭ / ▭ button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly until media content is displayed.

Changing the media source on the MMI

You can switch the media source in the media player.

- Press the symbol for the current media source in the tab area. A selection of all sources will be displayed.
- Press on the desired source.

Selecting a media file in the instrument cluster

The media are displayed in one of the left tabs in the instrument cluster.

- To select a media file, scroll the left thumbwheel.
- To confirm a media file, press the left thumbwheel.

It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Calling up the search

- To search for tracks and artists across sources, for example, press 🔍 in the media player.

Calling up a playlist

- To display the playlist, press ▷≡ in the playlist view.

Calling up the media settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Media** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Select: ⊞ > *a connected mobile device* > ⚙.

Using media functions

Using additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

If additional online data is switched on in the **Media** settings menu ⇨ *page 270*, additional information, such as album cover, artist or track, can be displayed, depending on availability.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Setting the picture format

You can set the picture format for video playback in the **Media** settings menu ⇨ *page 270*. If the picture is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus, use a different picture format.

Information on supported media and file formats

Depending on the country, vehicle equipment and software version, media and files with the following properties are supported:

File systems

– USB mass storage devices: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS

Metadata

– Album covers: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px. Depending on availability, the album cover will ▶

be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote.

Playlists

– .m3u; .pls; .wpl

Number of files

– USB mass storage device: max. 50000 files per medium. A maximum of 200 files are displayed per folder.

Audio files up to 48 kHz sampling frequency

– .mp3; .wav; .m4a; .flac; .3gp; .mp4; .aac; .mkv; .ogg; .webm

Video files up to max. 15 Mbit/sec, 1920x1080 px and 30 fps

– .mp4; .3gp; .mkv; .webm

Information on media and file formats

Supported media and file formats can be changed or extended, e.g. through software updates from Audi or a third party.

Audi recommends a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.

The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.

Some MTP player functions, such as the rating of tracks, may be restricted.

Troubleshooting for media

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
The mobile device is not recognised as a source.	On some mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible if the battery charge is very low. First charge the device to a sufficient level.
Error with audio playback from a mobile device connected via USB.	The device is set to be used as a Bluetooth audio player. Switch this function off ⇨ *page 280* if you are not using the mobile device as a Bluetooth audio player.
Audio playback not possible from a mobile device connected via USB.	Make sure that the USB mode *MTP* is selected in your mobile device's settings.
Error in displaying track and audio playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	If an app used for music playback from a third party is open, it may result in problems. Audi recommends that you use the integrated media player on your mobile device (e.g. smartphone).
Long loading times for media files on a mobile device.	The more files/folders/playlists are stored on a mobile device, the longer it will take to load the files. If you want to reduce the time it takes to load the media files, use a mobile device (e.g. USB stick) which only contains media files and create subfolders (e.g. for an artist or album).

Subject	Advice
Additional information and album covers are not displayed.	If no additional information is available on the respective mobile device, switch on additional online data in the **Media** settings menu ⇨ *page 270*. Nevertheless, some additional information may still not be displayed in some cases.
Error when trying to operate mobile devices via the MMI.	Errors on mobile devices can also have an impact on the MMI. In this case, please reset your mobile device.
Search does not work.	The search is not available for all types of source. Use a media source that supports the search function.

Dashcam

Introduction

The dashcam integrated in the vehicle is located under the interior mirror and can be used to take photos and record videos of driving situations in the area in front of the vehicle. Vehicle information such as speed, turn signals and time are also shown. The interior is not filmed and no sound is recorded.

The recording can be started both manually by the user and automatically by the vehicle, depending on the selected setting. Recordings are stored on a memory card and can be viewed directly in the vehicle.

Setting up the dashcam

Information on supported memory cards

A suitable memory card which is not factory-fitted is necessary to ensure that the dashcam functions correctly. Please check that the inserted memory card complies with the recommended specifications to ensure that the dashcam works correctly.

The system supports micro SD cards with a memory of 64 GB to 512 GB and a write speed of at least 30 MB/s.

Inserting the memory card

- Insert the memory card in the slot provided below the interior mirror to use the dashcam's functions.
- Format the memory card in the **Dashcam** settings menu ⇨ *page 273* to permanently delete all existing data.

Activating the dashcam

Important: A suitable memory card must be inserted.

- Select: ⊞ > **Dashcam** > ⚙.
- Activate the dashcam.

Deactivating the dashcam

- Remove the memory card, or
- Select: ⊞ > **Dashcam** > ⚙.
- Deactivate the dashcam.

Calling up the dashcam settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Dashcam** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Select: ⊞ > **Dashcam** > ⚙.

Operating the dashcam

Starting/stopping a video recording

You can start and stop video recordings manually.

- To start/stop a video recording, select: ⊞ > **Dashcam** > ▷□.

Starting an event recording

You can start a recording automatically or manually in hazardous situations or in the event of an accident, depending on the settings. The next 30 seconds are recorded.

- To start an event recording, select: ⊞ > **Dashcam** > ⚠.

Depending on the settings, you can start the event recording by flashing the headlights or using the hazard warning lights.

Taking a photo

You can take individual photos manually.

- To take a photo, select: ⊞ > **Dashcam** > 📷.

Using the dashcam via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: The programmable steering wheel button must be configured with a function of the dashcam.

- Press the ✱ button on the multi-function steering wheel.

8B1012720AG

Using the gallery

Displaying the gallery

You can have all stored photos and videos from the dashcam displayed in the gallery.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Dashcam** > **Gallery**.

Deleting files

▸ To delete a video recording or a photo, swipe the file to the left.

Event recordings due to accidents cannot be deleted individually. To delete all existing data permanently, you can format the memory card in the **Dashcam** settings menu ⇨ *page 273*.

Using dashcam functions

Starting an event recording by flashing the headlights

In the **Dashcam** settings menu ⇨ *page 273*, you can select the option which causes the dashcam to start an event recording automatically when the headlights are flashed.

Starting an event recording using the hazard warning lights

In the **Dashcam** settings menu ⇨ *page 273*, you can select the option which causes the dashcam to start an event recording automatically when the hazard warning lights are switched on.

Using the event review mode

To understand the cause of an accident better, you can select the option in the **Dashcam** settings menu ⇨ *page 273* which causes the last 30 seconds recorded before an event to also be stored.

Interior entertainment

Introduction

The MMI has certain functions that you can use to customise the interior and for entertainment.

Functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment and are not available on all displays.

Using the themes function

This function enables you to use themes to customise the appearance of the infotainment system.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

Using the themes preview

You can view a time-limited preview of a theme.

- Select: ⊞ > **Themes** > **Catalogue** > *a theme*.
- Press **Preview**.

Downloading a theme

To use a theme permanently, you must download the theme.

Important: You must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device. You must have added your vehicle in the myAudi app. You must be logged in with your myAudi user ID in the vehicle.

- Open the myAudi app on your smartphone and download the desired theme.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

Selecting a theme

- To activate a downloaded theme, select: ⊞ > **Themes** > **Themes** > *a theme*.
- To restore the factory appearance, select: ⊞ > **Themes** > **Themes** > **No theme**.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Using the experiences function

Introduction

The experiences function enables you to customise the atmosphere in your vehicle. It uses different vehicle functions, such as the air conditioning and background lighting.

WARNING

The driver must not allow the experiences function to distract their attention from the road – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Using a mood

You can select a scenario to create a specific atmosphere in the vehicle.

- Select: ⊞ > **Experiences** > **Mood** > *a scenario*.

Using entertainment

You can use the function to adapt the atmosphere in the vehicle to the media playback. For example, the colours of the album cover are used for the background lighting.

Using music

- Select: ⊞ > **Experiences** > **Entertainment** > **Music**.
- To change the radio station/media source, open the radio or the connected mobile device.

Using video

- Select: ⊞ > **Experiences** > **Entertainment** > **Video**.
- Select an installed video streaming app. Follow the system's instructions if no app is available.

For safety reasons, the video picture on the centre display is not available while the vehicle is ▶

moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.

Selecting settings for experiences

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the individual settings while an in-car experience is active. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Press ⚙.

If you end the in-car experience, the settings of the vehicle functions used will be restored to their previous settings.

Using a game controller

Introduction

With a compatible game controller, you can operate apps such as games in your vehicle via the centre display and front passenger display. You can connect up to 2 game controllers at the same time.

WARNING

– Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you can only use the game controller safely when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
– Incorrect use can cause injuries or result in an accident – risk of injury and accident!
– Do not use sharp-edged game controllers or attachments and accessories for game controllers – risk of injury and accident!
– As the driver, do not allow the game player to distract your attention from the road – risk of accident!
– As the driver, it is your responsibility to ensure that you and your passengers do not hold any devices connected with the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, game controller) in front of your torsos or heads when sitting in a seat which is protected by an active airbag system ⇨ *page 78*. Please note the safety instructions regarding the seating position and seat belts – risk of injury!

System limits and function limitations of the game controller

System limits

Game controllers are subject to system limits and it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of game controller. Availability depends on a number of factors including:

– the brand and version of the game controller
– whether the game controller supports Bluetooth Low Energy
– the game app used

Function limitations

– Playing with a game controller on the centre display is only possible when the vehicle is stationary.
– If a Bluetooth headset is connected at the same time, the function of the game controller may be restricted.
– If several devices are connected, the function of the game controller may be restricted.

Connecting a game controller wirelessly

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. The **Connection manager** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 280*.

▸ Please ensure that the game controller is in Bluetooth connection mode.
▸ Press **Add new device** to connect the game controller.
▸ Press on the game controller from the list of available Bluetooth devices.
▸ Select the display with which you want to use the game controller.

After the game controller has been connected successfully, it will be shown in the **Connection manager** menu.

Managing a game controller

You can select various settings in the device options; for example, you can switch the game controller between the centre display and front passenger display. ▸

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. The **Connection manager** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 280*.

▸ To manage the game controller, press ⚙.

Smartphone interface

Introduction

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, you can connect your smartphone wirelessly to the MMI or also via cable and the smartphone interface. You can operate certain content and functions of your smartphone in an optimised format via the MMI.

If the smartphone you have connected has a voice control feature, you can control your smartphone using the external voice control system.

WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Connecting a smartphone

System limits of the smartphone interface

The smartphone interface is subject to system limits. We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of smartphone. The availability or the functions you can use depend on a number of factors including:

– The brand of your smartphone
– The operating system version of your smartphone
– The software version of the app in use
– The USB adapter/cable and the correct connection
– Your mobile network/service provider
– The individual settings on your smartphone

Connecting a smartphone by cable

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. Your iPhone 7 or later must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 9.0 or higher.

▸ Connect your smartphone to the smartphone interface using the USB interface ⭠ in the centre console. Use a certified USB-C cable or certified adapter.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system and observe any other notifications on your smartphone.

Connecting a smartphone wirelessly

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. Your iPhone 7 or later must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 11 or higher.

▸ To connect your smartphone wirelessly, switch on the Bluetooth and Wi-Fi functions on your smartphone.
▸ Connect your smartphone to the MMI in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 280*.
▸ Make sure that Apple CarPlay or Android Auto (depending on your smartphone) is set to use the device after connecting.

Using Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

Important: Your smartphone must be connected to the MMI wirelessly or with a cable.

▸ To use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, open the app in the app overview.

If you are using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the Audi navigation system may be displayed as a substitute in rare cases if there is a fault in the navigation display.

Troubleshooting for the smartphone interface

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

Subject	Advice
Smartphone interface cannot be called up.	Check the charge level of your smartphone. Check whether Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country.
	Apple CarPlay: Check that Apple CarPlay is activated on your iPhone.
	Android Auto: Check that the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone and is active. Check in the Android Auto app whether Android Auto allows new cars.
Wired connection between smartphone and MMI fails.	Check that the USB-C cable/USB adapter is not damaged and is correctly connected to your smartphone and the USB interface in the front centre console. Check that Apple CarPlay/Android Auto is set in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 280*.
Wireless connection between smartphone and MMI fails.	**Apple CarPlay**: Open the settings for Bluetooth and Apple CarPlay on your iPhone. Delete your vehicle.
	Android Auto: Open the Android Auto app and Bluetooth settings on your smartphone. Delete your vehicle.
	Open the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 280*. Delete your smartphone from the list of known devices. Repeat the connection procedure. Restart the MMI. Restart your smartphone. Open the Wi-Fi settings on your smartphone. Check whether your smartphone has connected to the vehicle hotspot.

Further settings

Opening the settings menu

You can switch certain functions on/off or adjust the settings in the **Settings** menu. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Settings**.

System settings

Changing the system settings and language

You can adjust the system settings in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 280*.

Date and time

You can adjust the date and time settings, such as the time zone.

Units

You can adjust the units that are used to display technical values such as speed or temperature.

Language and keyboard

You can change the language and the keyboard layout.

Location

You can set access to your vehicle's location.

Sound settings

You can adjust the sound in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 280*.

Depending on the user, the volume when turning on the MMI is set to the last setting or an automatically specified value.

WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Calling up the Bluetooth settings

You can switch the MMI's Bluetooth function on/off and adjust the settings in the **Bluetooth** menu.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connection** > **Bluetooth**.

The *Vehicle name* for the Bluetooth connection and vehicle hotspot is automatically matched if changes are made.

Restoring the factory settings

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. The MMI must be connected to the internet.

If you have set up a main device for managing digital keys, you must disconnect it in order to restore the factory settings.

Disconnecting the main device

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management** > **Main device management**.

Restoring factory settings

You can reset the system to the factory settings in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 280*.

▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

The system will be reset to the factory settings and restarted. This can take some time. Not only settings will be deleted when you do this; saved data may also be erased.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Connection manager

Calling up the connection manager menu

You can connect your mobile devices with the MMI and adjust settings for already known devices in the **Connection manager menu**. ▸

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on.

- Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connection** > **Connection manager**, or
- Open the quick access bar on the centre display and press **Connection manager**.

Connecting a mobile device via Bluetooth

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. The **Connection manager** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 280*. The Bluetooth function on your mobile device is switched on.

- Make sure that the Bluetooth settings are open on your mobile device. Ensure your mobile device is visible.
- Press **Add new device** to connect your mobile device. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- Press on the desired mobile device.
- Follow the instructions given by the system and observe any other notifications on your mobile device.

After the mobile device has been connected successfully, it will be shown in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 280*.

You can also search for the MMI on your mobile device using the Bluetooth device search.

Both the displayed mobile devices, as well as the automatic reconnection are independent from the user logged in to the vehicle.

Bluetooth headsets can only be used via the passenger display. If a mobile device is being used as a Bluetooth audio player, it is not possible to connect a Bluetooth headset at the same time.

Troubleshooting for Bluetooth

Ensure that:

– The Bluetooth menu is open in the foreground on your mobile device during the connection procedure.
– Your mobile device is not connected to any other Bluetooth device.
– Your mobile device is within range of the MMI.
– The connection request PIN on your mobile device is the same as on the MMI and has been confirmed.

Switch the Bluetooth function off, wait for a few seconds and then switch it back on again. If necessary, repeat the connection procedure.

Managing mobile devices

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on. The **Connection manager** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 280*.

Calling up device options

- Press ⚙.

Setting device use

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment and your mobile device, you can adjust the settings for your mobile devices via the symbols in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 280* and the device options.

Software update

Introduction

You can update the software in your vehicle.

The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

– Performing software updates[1)]
– Performing online map updates
– Performing software updates at your Audi dealership. This may lead to additional costs.

Checking the software version in your vehicle

You can check the software version installed in your vehicle in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 280*. ▶

[1)] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

The software version of your vehicle is displayed under **Installed software version**.

Performing a software update[1)]

You can update the software directly in the vehicle via a software update.

Downloading a software update

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet.

Software updates are downloaded automatically without prior notification. If necessary, the download is resumed automatically when the vehicle is switched back on. A notification is shown on the centre display when the download is complete.

Installing a software update

Important: A software update notification must be shown on the centre display. The vehicle must be stationary and switched on.

- Press on the notification, or
- To call up the software update, select: ⊞ > **Settings**.
- Press on the desired software update and follow the instructions given by the system.
- Please note that certain conditions may need to be met before installing a software update. These conditions are shown on the centre display.
- To start the software update, leave the vehicle and lock it.

The MMI will start the installation. The vehicle functions are restricted while the software update is being installed.

A notification is shown on the centre display when the software update is complete. You can have information on the installed software displayed.

A notification is shown on the centre display if the software update fails. Follow the instructions given by the system.

WARNING

– To ensure that the update is carried out correctly, it is not possible to switch the vehicle on while the update is installing.
– In the event of installation errors, please contact a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on Audi connect on page 249*.

Driver messages about the software update

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Software update: incomplete. Warning! Vehicle cannot be driven. See owner's manual

An error occurred while installing the software update. The vehicle is not ready to drive. Contact a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Software update: incomplete. Warning! Vehicle functions limited. See owner's manual

An error occurred while installing the software update. The vehicle is ready to drive, however, certain vehicle functions may not be available. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Legal information

Legal information on software licences

Software licence information can be found online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Legal information on vehicle software

You can display the vehicle's software and version information in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 280*.

1) The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

Legal information on apps

You can display various legal information or software and licence information for apps. The content and availability depend on the respective app.

- To view the legal information on an app, select: ⊞ > *an app* > ⚙.

Legal information on the system

You can display various legal information or software and licence information on the system.

- To call up legal information on the system, select: ⊞ > **Settings**.
- To call up additional legal information, select: ⊞ > **Legal**.

Legal information on the smartphone interface

Important: A smartphone must be connected to the MMI. The **Connection manager** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 280*.

- Press ⚙.
- Press § next to **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto**.

Legal information on the instrument cluster

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and switched on.

- Press and hold the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel until the legal information is displayed.

Legal information on the dashcam

You can have legal information on the dashcam displayed.

- Select: ⊞ > **Dashcam** > ⚙ > **Legal and data protection**.

Checking and topping up fluids

Fuel

Identification of fuels[1)]

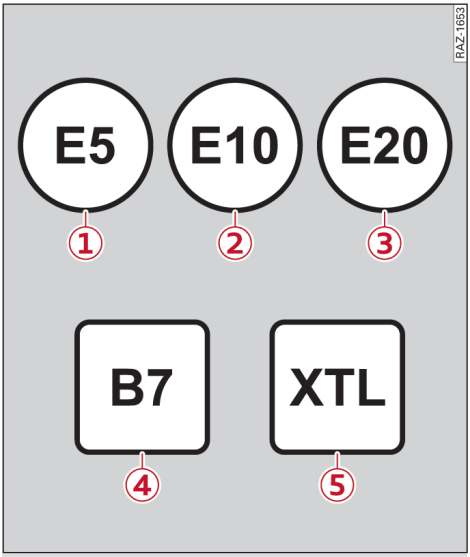


Fig. 133 Fuel tank flap sticker: Identification of fuels (examples)

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The symbols signify different fuels. Depending on the fuel, the individual symbols may be found on the vehicle's fuel tank flap. In some countries, you will also find the information on the fuel pumps. This is intended to help prevent incorrect fuel from being used. Only fill the tank with the fuel types shown on the vehicle's fuel tank flap.

– ① **Petrol** with ethanol: "E" stands for **e**thanol. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, "E5" means that the fuel contains a maximum of 5% ethanol.
– ② **Petrol** with ethanol: "E" stands for **e**thanol. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, "E10" means that the fuel contains a maximum of 10% ethanol.
– ③ **Petrol** with ethanol: "E" stands for **e**thanol. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, "E20" means that the fuel contains a maximum of 20% ethanol.
– ④ **Diesel** with biodiesel: "B" stands for **b**iodiesel. The number refers to the proportion of biodiesel in the diesel. For example, "B7" means that the fuel has a maximum of 7% biodiesel content.
– ⑤ **Diesel**: "XTL" stands for paraffinic diesel.

Fuels with a high renewable content (e.g. HVO100 or e-fuels) can be used if they meet the standards for petrol, diesel or XTL fuel specified below.

Information on petrol

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

Audi models with petrol engines are known as **TFSI** or **e-hybrid** vehicles and can be fuelled with **E5 and E10 fuels** ⇨ *page 284, Fig. 133*.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. Petrol must be **sulphur-free** and must comply with the EN 228 fuel quality standard or equivalent. The petrol grades have different **octane (RON)** or **Anti-Knock Index (AKI)** ratings.

In countries where sulphur-free fuel is not available, you may use low-sulphur fuel instead.

The following headings relate to the sticker on the inside of your vehicle's fuel tank flap (example):

95 RON/ROZ or min. 91 RON/ROZ

The use of premium petrol (95 RON / 91 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, regular petrol (at least 91 RON / 87 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

min. 95 RON/ROZ

Premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) must be used. ▶

[1)] May vary in different countries.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fuel consumption may also increase. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

98 RON/ROZ or min. 95 RON/ROZ

The use of Super Plus petrol (98 RON / 93 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

98 RON/ROZ

The use of Super Plus petrol (98 RON / 93 AKI) is recommended.

If Super Plus petrol is not available, the engine can be run on premium petrol with 95 RON / 91 AKI with a slight loss of performance as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

You must not use normal petrol with 91 RON (87 AKI) – risk of engine damage! ⇨ (!)

Information on petrol grades

You can use higher octane fuel than your engine requires. There is a risk of engine damage if you use fuel with an octane level that is too low! ⇨ (!)

Octane rating for vehicles with petrol engine for Republic of Korea

Vehicles with petrol engine must always be filled with high-grade petrol with an octane rating of at least 94 RON. If no high-grade petrol is available, standard petrol (91 RON / 87 AKI or higher) can be used as an emergency measure only. Using standard petrol (91 RON / 87 AKI or higher octane rating) may reduce the engine performance and increase fuel consumption.

CAUTION

- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-ethanol fuel blends (e.g. E31 – E100). This will damage the fuel system.
- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-methanol fuel blends (e.g. M15 – M100). Damage will occur to the fuel system and the engine.
- Even one tankful of leaded fuel would permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
- Audi recommends that you use only additives approved by Audi. Additives that have not been approved by Audi may cause engine damage. Additives with so-called octane boosters or antiknock additives can contain metallic additives that cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Do not use such additives.
- Metal-based fuels, which can be identified from the marking on the fuel dispenser, must not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additive. Risk of engine damage!
- High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.
- There is a risk of engine damage if you use fuel with an incorrect octane number! If the indicator lamp appears, you may only continue driving at a low engine speed under low engine load – risk of engine damage! Fill up with the correct fuel as soon as possible or drive carefully to a qualified workshop without delay and have the damage repaired.

Information on diesel

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

Audi models with diesel engines are known as **TDI** vehicles and can be fuelled with **B7 and XTL fuels** ⇨ *page 284, Fig. 133*.

The types of diesel available vary in different markets. ▶

Diesel can thicken at very low temperatures, which can result in problems starting the engine or prevent the engine from running smoothly. For this reason, filling stations in some countries offer winter-grade diesel during the cold months so that you can continue to operate your vehicle reliably. Ask at your filling station whether the diesel available there is suitable for the current conditions and for the temperatures which could potentially occur.

Information on diesel with a biofuel component

You can use diesel with a biofuel component of 7 % (B7).

The use of **sulphur-free diesel** complying with the EN 590 standard is recommended.

Information on paraffinic diesel[1)]

Paraffinic diesel is indicated by the "XTL" symbol inside the tank flap.

The use of **sulphur-free paraffinic diesel** complying with the EN 15940 standard is recommended.

Special regulations for vehicles with diesel engine for Republic of Korea

To ensure that the vehicle complies with the emission standards, additives with the specifications stipulated by the manufacturer must be used and added.

CAUTION

- Never use FAME fuels (biodiesel), petrol, heating oil, thinners or any other fuels or additives, as these could cause serious damage to the fuel system and the engine.
- Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the fuel system and the engine. Seek professional assistance.

[1)] This fuel is available in certain countries only.

Filling the tank

Filling the fuel tank

Applies to vehicles with conventional power unit
Fig. 134 Side of vehicle (rear right): Opening tank flap

Fig. 135 Fuel tank flap with tank cap attached

The fuel tank flap is unlocked/locked automatically by the central locking system. The fuel tank flap is not locked when you lock the vehicle from the inside by pressing the central locking switch.

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap. Further information on fuel ⇨ *page 284*.

The required preparations for filling the fuel tank vary depending on the drive system type.

Preparing to fill the fuel tank

Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive systems

- Switch the drive system off.
- Press the left side of the tank flap to open it ⇨ *Fig. 134*.

Preparing to fill the fuel tank

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The fuel tank is bled during the preparations for filling the fuel tank. ▶

- Remain seated in the vehicle to begin with.
- Switch the drive system off and then switch only the vehicle back on.
- Pull the switch on the driver's door.
- Observe the driver message that appears in the instrument cluster display while the tank is being bled automatically. The driver message will disappear once the tank has been bled.
- It may take several minutes to bleed the tank and it may be necessary to operate the switch again to start additional bleeding procedures. Wait at least two minutes before operating the switch again.
- Once the air has been released, the tank flap will open slightly.
- Switch the vehicle off and open the tank flap.
- Please refer to the information on filling the fuel tank ⇨ *page 287, Information on vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive*.

Putting fuel in the fuel tank

- Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise.
- Hook the cap onto the open flap ⇨ *Fig. 135*.
- Insert the filler nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as the stop.
- Start refuelling. The filler nozzle cuts out as soon as the fuel tank is full ⇨ ⚠.
- When the fuel filler pump switches itself off, wait for 5 seconds before pulling out the filler nozzle so that any remaining fuel can flow into the tank opening.
- Screw on the tank cap clockwise until it clicks audibly.
- Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the technical data section in the Owner's Manual. The maximum possible amount of fuel that can be added depends on the amount remaining in the tank.

To prevent fuel and vapours from escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is properly sealed; otherwise the indicator lamp [1] will light up.

Information on vehicles with diesel engine

– Diesel vehicles are equipped with an incorrect fuelling protection system[2]. This system ensures that the tank can only be fuelled from a diesel filler nozzle.
– If the filler nozzle is old, damaged or too small, it may not be able to open the protection mechanism on the fuel tank. In this case, try turning the filler nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different filling pump or seek professional assistance.
– The protection mechanism will not open if you try to add fuel from a spare fuel canister. You can get round this simply by adding the diesel slowly.

Information on vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

– When you insert the filling nozzle, make sure that it does not press against the tank flap release mechanism ① (see label inside tank flap ② ⇨ *Fig. 135*). Otherwise, a valve in the filler neck will close and the refuelling process will be interrupted although the tank is not yet full.
– If you have pressed the tank flap release mechanism unintentionally, you will need to bleed the air from the tank system again. It is not necessary to remove the filling nozzle from the filler neck to do so. To bleed the air from the tank system, pull the button in the driver's door again.
– If the engine has switched itself off due to a lack of fuel, you may need to add up to 15 litres of fuel for the vehicle to detect that it has been refuelled. Otherwise it may not be possible to restart the engine.
– Fuel can age and cause starting problems. Audi recommends refuelling your vehicle within six months.

⚠ WARNING

Improper refuelling and improper handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

[1] Depends on engine and country
[2] Depending on country

– Do not smoke. Keep naked flames away from the vehicle.
– The ignition must be switched off when refuelling.
– Mobile phones and radio equipment must always be switched off when refuelling. Electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks which could start a fire.
– The auxiliary heating must be switched off when refuelling.
– Fuel can escape if you do not insert the filler nozzle all the way into the filler neck. Escaping fuel can ignite and cause a fire.
– Never get into the vehicle while refuelling. If you do have to get into the vehicle in exceptional circumstances, close the door and touch a metal surface before handling the filler nozzle again. This will discharge any static electricity which could generate sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refuelling.
– The filler nozzle cuts out as soon as the fuel tank is full. Do not try to put in more fuel after the nozzle cuts out, as this will fill the expansion chamber in the fuel tank. Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm, potentially at a later point in time. This can cause explosion, fire and serious or fatal injuries.

WARNING

Audi recommends you NOT to carry a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel could escape from the canister and catch fire, particularly in the event of an accident. Fire, explosions and injuries could result.
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following warnings:
  – Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground before filling it. Never fill fuel into the spare fuel canister with the canister placed in or on top of the vehicle. Electrostatic electricity can build up while filling the canister and ignite the fuel vapours.
  – When using metal fuel canisters, always keep the filler nozzle in contact with the canister to prevent the build-up of static electricity.
  – Keep the filler nozzle inserted as far as possible into the filler opening while filling the canister.
  – Observe all relevant local regulations on using, storing and transporting spare fuel canisters.

CAUTION

– If fuel overflows onto the vehicle, remove it completely straight away to prevent damage to the vehicle.
– Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. As a result unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and cause damage to the catalytic converter(s).
– Vehicles with diesel engine: When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry, the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds without starting the engine. When you then start the engine it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) for the engine to start firing. This is because air needs to be bled from the fuel system while starting.

For the sake of the environment

– Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm.
– Never pour fuel down drains or into the ground.

Having the fuel tank flap released manually

▸ If you cannot open the fuel tank flap, seek professional assistance.
▸ Then drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Driver messages about the tank system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Driver messages

If the indicator lamp lights up and a corresponding message appears, you should add fuel to the vehicle's tank.

Tank system malfunction! Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the tank system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Please check tank cap! See owner's manual

The tank cap is not screwed onto the fuel filler neck or is not screwed on fully. Screw the tank cap on correctly.

Vehicle refuelled. Reset km/miles now?

Select **Yes** if you want to reset the trip odometer to zero.

The display of this message depends on the amount of fuel in the tank and the amount of fuel added.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Tank flap: fault. Release tank flap manually. See owner's manual

or

Tank flap: fault. Refuelling not possible. See owner's manual

A malfunction has occurred. The tank flap must be released manually ⇨ *page 288*.

Warning! Limited performance

The fuel tank is almost empty. You should be prepared for a significant loss of performance. Drive to a filling station without delay.

Please refuel and recharge battery. Total range x km

or

Tank system: please refuel immediately and recharge battery. Total range: x km

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, refuel the vehicle without delay; the high-voltage battery is also empty ⇨ *page 131*.

Tank flap open. Please press button again to refuel

When you press the button in the driver's door, you have a certain amount of time to refuel the vehicle. After this time, it is necessary to press the button again before refuelling.

Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF)

Information on selective catalytic reduction

On vehicles with selective catalytic reduction, a urea solution (AdBlue/DEF) is injected into the exhaust system upstream of a NOx catalytic converter in order to reduce nitrogen oxide emissions. The catalytic converter changes nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and water with the help of the urea solution AdBlue/DEF. The urea solution is known as AdBlue or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid). The term AdBlue is used below.

The AdBlue is held in a separate tank in the vehicle. AdBlue consumption is normally between 1.0 ltr. – 2.5 ltr./1000 km. In individual cases, the consumption may be different as a result of how the vehicle is driven along with the operating and ambient temperature.

It is not sufficient to simply have AdBlue refilled when the vehicle is serviced because this may be necessary more often than services are due or between service intervals.

As soon as a message appears in the instrument cluster display reminding you to refill AdBlue, you must refill the AdBlue tank or have this done by a qualified workshop ⇨ *page 291*.

Checking range

The AdBlue consumption depends on the ambient and operating temperature and on how the vehicle is driven. The estimated remaining range can be viewed in the instrument cluster display ▶

⇨ *page 18, Instrument cluster controls* and ①
⇨ *page 18, Fig. 3*.

Legal information

– It is not permitted to make technical changes to the emission control system which have an effect on the exhaust gas treatment using AdBlue.
– Audi has approved this vehicle for use only with AdBlue corresponding to ISO-22241-1, for which the Certificate of Conformity for this type of vehicle has been issued.
– It may be a crime to operate the vehicle without the AdBlue which corresponds to ISO-22241-1.
– If the emission control system is not operated as intended, the exhaust emissions may worsen.
– The use of AdBlue for the operation of this vehicle is required by law.

Information on AdBlue

– The instrument cluster display will tell you how far you can drive before the tank runs dry ⇨ *page 290, Low AdBlue level*. If the AdBlue tank runs dry, the engine cannot be started again after you switch off the ignition. Never run the AdBlue tank completely dry.
– Please note the AdBlue manufacturer's information about storage and use.
– Restrictions may be encountered when refilling in very cold temperatures, because the freezing point of AdBlue is -11 °C.
– The system is heated when the vehicle is running to ensure that the exhaust gas treatment operates even at very low temperatures.

Driver messages about AdBlue/DEF

The display informs you if the AdBlue level is too low or if a system malfunction occurs.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Low AdBlue level

A series of warnings will inform you if the amount of AdBlue in the tank falls below a certain level. You should always fill up with AdBlue when requested to do so on the instrument cluster display.

Please refill at least x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF the next time you refuel. Range x km

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue.

Refill at least x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF. No restart in x km. See owner's manual

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car. You can also call up the remaining distance on the onboard computer.

Refill at least x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF. Engine cannot be restarted. See owner's manual

This message appears when there is no more AdBlue left in the tank. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

When the AdBlue in the tank reaches the minimum level, you must add AdBlue ⇨ *page 291, Before refilling AdBlue*.

Filling the wrong fluid / system fault

If you fill the AdBlue tank with a fluid other than AdBlue and the system detects that the wrong fluid has been added or there is a system fault, a driver message will appear.

Please check AdBlue/DEF. See owner's manual

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

AdBlue/DEF: fault. No restart in x km. See owner's manual

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system ▶

fault and the vehicle can only be driven as far as indicated in the instrument cluster. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car.

AdBlue/DEF: fault. Engine cannot be restarted. See owner's manual

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to the nearest qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. You will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

Before refilling AdBlue

Fig. 136 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Unscrewing the AdBlue cap

The AdBlue filler neck is located immediately beside the diesel filler neck.

The AdBlue tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the technical data section in the Owner's Manual.

When the instrument cluster displays the request to fill up AdBlue, fill up at least the amount of AdBlue displayed. If you do not refill this amount of fluid, the system may not detect that the tank has been refilled and it may not be possible to restart the engine.

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the fuel tank flap ⇨ *page 286*.
- Unscrew the cap on the filler neck anti-clockwise ⇨ *Fig. 136*.
- Refill AdBlue from a filler nozzle ⇨ *page 291*, canister ⇨ *page 292* or bottle ⇨ *page 292*.

WARNING

AdBlue can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water if you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.

CAUTION

- Improper handling of AdBlue can cause damage to the vehicle not covered by the warranty.
- Use only AdBlue that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not mix AdBlue with additives and do not dilute it with water.
- AdBlue must not be added to the diesel tank, and diesel must not be added to the AdBlue tank. Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the tank system and the engine. Seek professional assistance.
- AdBlue attacks surfaces such as paintwork, plastic veneer and carpets. Remove spilt fluid as soon as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of water. If the AdBlue has already solidified, use warm water and a sponge. Residues of AdBlue solidify after a while if they are not removed and can damage the affected surface.
- Do not keep refill bottles or canisters in the vehicle, as AdBlue can leak and damage the vehicle interior.
- Keep AdBlue away from clothing. Wash thoroughly with clean water if you come into contact with this fluid.

Refilling AdBlue from a filler nozzle

You can fill AdBlue from pumps for either light passenger vehicles or heavy goods vehicles.

- Fill up with AdBlue until the first time the filler nozzle cuts off the supply ⇨ (!).
- Put the tank cap back on ⇨ *page 292, After refilling AdBlue*.

CAUTION

– The handle of the filler nozzle must point downwards when filling the tank. Otherwise the filler nozzle will not cut off the supply automatically ⇨ ⓘ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 291*.
– Do not use a damaged filler nozzle in case it does not cut off the supply properly.
– You should stop refilling the first time the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Otherwise the level of AdBlue in the tank may be too high and AdBlue could overflow ⇨ ⓘ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 291*.

Refilling AdBlue from a canister

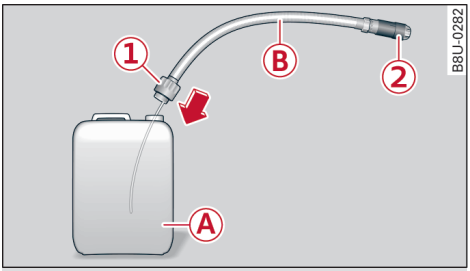


Fig. 137 Canister with screw-on hose

Your qualified workshop can tell you which refill canisters are approved for your vehicle. Approved refill canisters contain about 5 litres of AdBlue.

- Take the cap off the refill canister ⇨ ⚠ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 291*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 291*.
- Screw the end of the hose (1) clockwise onto the opening on the canister (A).
- Remove the cap (2) from the other end of the hose (B).
- Fit the end of the hose (2) onto the filler neck on the vehicle and turn clockwise as far as the stop to secure.
- Lift the canister and then tilt it. Keep it tilted until empty or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
- Turn the hose anti-clockwise to remove it.
- Remove the canister and screw the tank cap back on ⇨ *page 292, After refilling AdBlue*.

CAUTION

Use only refill canisters of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.

Refilling AdBlue from a bottle

Refill bottles are available from qualified workshops. Approved refill bottles contain about 1.9 litres of AdBlue.

- Take the cap off the refill bottle ⇨ ⚠ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 291*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 291*.
- Screw the bottle clockwise onto the filler neck as far as it will go.
- To empty the bottle, lightly press the bottom of the bottle. Keep pressing the bottom of the bottle until the bottle is empty, or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
- Unscrew the bottle anti-clockwise without applying pressure.
- Remove the bottle and screw the tank cap back on ⇨ *page 292, After refilling AdBlue*.

CAUTION

Use only refill bottles of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.

After refilling AdBlue

Closing the filler neck

- Screw the AdBlue cap clockwise onto the filler neck until the AdBlue cap clicks audibly ⇨ ⚠ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 291*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 291*.
- Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

After refilling

It is only necessary in exceptional cases to drive the vehicle so that the system can detect the AdBlue which has been added. This process can take several minutes.

- If the AdBlue tank had run dry and a range of 0 km was shown on the display, switch on the ▶

ignition for approx. 30 seconds before starting the engine.

AdBlue can freeze at very low temperatures. Restrictions may therefore be encountered when refilling. In this case, the system may not detect AdBlue when you refill and will continue to indicate a low AdBlue level. The message will disappear as soon as the tank has thawed.

Emission control system

Safety information on the emission control system

WARNING

The exhaust system is very hot when the vehicle is being driven and after the engine has been switched off.

– Never touch the tailpipes when they are hot – risk of burns!
– Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the exhaust system, do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge) – risk of fire!
– Do not apply any underseal agents in the area around the exhaust system – risk of fire!

Information on the catalytic converter

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 293, Safety information on the emission control system*.

The vehicle must only be used with unleaded petrol, otherwise the catalytic converter will be irreparably damaged.

Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry, as the irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Driver messages about the emission control system

If the indicator lamp lights up or flashes, malfunctions have occurred which are relevant for emissions. These malfunctions may reduce the quality of the exhaust gas and damage the catalytic converter/particulate filter, for example. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

The indicator lamp may also light up if the fuel tank flap has not been closed properly ⇨ *page 286*[1)].

Particulate filter

Information on the particulate filter and performing a regeneration trip

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 293, Safety information on the emission control system*.

The particulate filter can filter out almost all soot particles contained in the exhaust gas. In normal driving conditions the filter is self-cleaning. If the self-cleaning function of the filter is not able to operate, e.g. if the vehicle is continuously used only for short trips, the filter will become obstructed with soot and a driver message will appear. The particulate filter requires cleaning (regeneration). To maximise the service life of the particulate filter, always use suitable engine oil and the correct fuel. You should also avoid driving the vehicle continuously on short trips.

Typical system reactions during a regeneration trip:

– Noises, odours, higher idling speed
– As a result of the high temperatures which occur during the regeneration of the particulate filter, the radiator fan may continue to run after the engine is switched off, even if the engine has not yet reached operating temperature.

1) Depends on engine and country

Cleaning the particulate filter with a regeneration trip

A regeneration trip will trigger the automatic cleaning process for the particulate filter. The type of regeneration trip depends on the vehicle's drive system (petrol/diesel engine and whether the vehicle is a plug-in hybrid).

Regenerating the particulate filter by driving and coasting

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine without plug-in hybrid drive

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving and coasting** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine) ⇨ (!).

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

- Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h ⇨ ⚠.
- Then take your foot off the accelerator completely for a few seconds and let the vehicle coast in gear.
- Repeat this procedure (accelerate to at least 80 km/h and coast again) until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure can take some time.

If the indicator lamp does **not** disappear after a while, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Regenerating the particulate filter by driving at a constant speed

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine or petrol engine with plug-in hybrid drive

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving at a constant speed** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine) ⇨ (!).

The availability of electric driving is limited on vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive.

Applies to vehicles with diesel engine: If the indicator lamp requesting you to refuel the vehicle also appears in the instrument cluster during the regeneration trip, the particulate filter regeneration process may be interrupted. Drive to a filling station and then resume the regeneration trip after refuelling the vehicle.

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

- Drive at a speed of between 50 km/h and 120 km/h ⇨ ⚠. As a result of the increase in temperature, the soot in the filter will be burned off.
- Do not stop the regeneration trip until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure can take some time (approx. 30 minutes).

If the indicator lamp does **not** go out, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

When regenerating the particulate filter, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions – risk of accident! The recommendation must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.

CAUTION

Before starting the regeneration trip, check which method (driving at a constant speed or driving and coasting) is required for your vehicle (based on the engine). If you do not use the correct method, the regeneration trip may have no effect and the particulate filter may be damaged.

Driver messages about the particulate filter

Particulate filter: can be cleaned by driving vehicle. You can continue driving. See owner's manual

Or

Particulate filter: can be cleaned by driving vehicle. You can continue driving. See owner's manual

If this indicator lamp appears, perform a regeneration trip for your vehicle ⇨ *page 294, Cleaning the particulate filter with a regeneration trip*.

Engine compartment

Safety information on the engine compartment

Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the engine compartment.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The engine compartment of any vehicle is a potentially hazardous area.

Explanation of warning symbols:

Symbol	Description
	Observe all warnings – risk of injury!
	Hot components! Rotating parts!
	Hot surfaces. Heat generated during vehicle operation can cause certain components to become very hot. Do not touch components – risk of burns!
	Fan can switch on at any time!
	High voltage! The voltage of these components (such as the high-voltage system or ignition system) is lethal! Touching damaged live high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted.
	High voltage! Switch off the engine before touching any part of ignition system!
	The catalytic converter can be damaged if the engine oil level is too high!
	Hot coolant – risk of scalding!
	Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.

WARNING

A vehicle's engine compartment is a potentially hazardous area and working there can lead to serious injuries.

– Always exercise extreme caution when working in the engine compartment. Always keep to the generally accepted safety procedures and use your common sense. Never put yourself at risk of injury.
– Do not perform any work in the engine compartment if you do not fully understand the procedure or if you do not have suitable information, tools and equipment.
– If you are not sure how to proceed, have the work performed by a qualified workshop. Work which is not performed properly can cause serious injuries.

WARNING

Note the following information when working in the engine compartment:

– Switch the vehicle off.
– Apply the parking brake.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Wait for the engine to cool down.
– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. radiator anti-freeze).
– Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system. Close the positive battery terminal cover, for example, immediately after use.
– Never touch the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and may switch on suddenly even if the ignition is switched off.
– To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
– The cap on the coolant expansion tank must not be opened if the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure.
– Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.

– Never remove the engine cover panel – risk of burns!
– Never touch ignition cables or other components of the electronic high-voltage ignition system while the engine is running or being started – risk of electrocution!
– The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged and the engine is running with the vehicle stationary. The vehicle will otherwise start moving immediately and could cause an accident.
– If any tests or repairs have to be performed with the engine running, there is an additional safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator and radiator fan:
  – First apply the parking brake and select transmission position P (Park).
  – Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewellery, ties, loose items of clothing or long hair can become caught up in rotating engine parts. Before commencing any work, always remove ties and jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight clothing to prevent these from becoming caught up in the engine parts.
– Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  – Do not smoke.
  – Never work near naked flames.
  – Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
– Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
– Do not expose yourself to exhaust gases or chemical substances for any longer than necessary. Chemical substances such as electrolyte can cause skin irritation.

WARNING

The voltage of the high-voltage system is lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted. A warning sticker is attached to the different parts of the high-voltage system. This is intended to warn you of the high voltage.
– Even when the vehicle is switched off, potentially lethal voltages still exist in the high-voltage system.
– Never perform work on the orange-coloured high-voltage cables or the high-voltage components yourself. Work on the high-voltage system may only be performed by authorised workshops that have been approved for this type of work.

CAUTION

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. Failure to do so will cause serious malfunctions or damage.

For the sake of the environment

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected by a qualified workshop.

Opening/closing the bonnet

Fig. 138 Footwell: Release lever

Fig. 139 Unlocked bonnet: Lever

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*.

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise, they could collide with the bonnet when it is opened and damage the paintwork.

Opening the bonnet

▸ Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Switch off the ignition before you release the bonnet; otherwise the combustion engine may start automatically.

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.

▸ With the door open, pull the lever [1] under the dashboard in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇨ *Fig. 138*.
▸ Lift the bonnet slightly ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Press the release lever ⇨ *Fig. 139* in the direction indicated by the arrow. This will release the arrester hooks.
▸ Open the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet

▸ To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the spring pressure.
▸ Then let it drop into the catches; *do not press down*. ⇨ ⚠

WARNING

– To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
– For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it is properly secured. It should not be possible to lift the front edges of the bonnet.
– If you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

Driver messages about the bonnet

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Warning! Bonnet not locked. Stop vehicle and check bonnet lock

The bonnet lock is not correctly engaged. Stop your vehicle without delay and close the bonnet.

WARNING

If you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

[1] Symbol not available in all countries.

Engine compartment layout

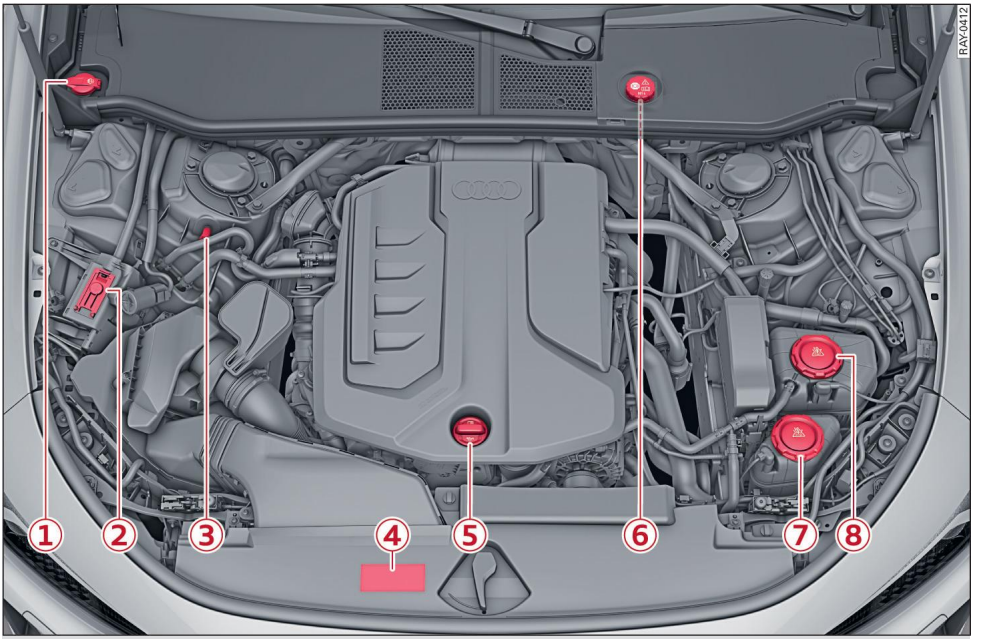


Fig. 140 Engine compartment layout

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*.

Main components for checking and refilling

1. Windscreen washer container ( ) ⇨ *page 311*
2. Jump-start terminal: (+) under a cover ⇨ *page 310, Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*, ⇨ *page 337, Jump-starting*
3. Jump-start terminal: (–) with hexagon head ⇨ *page 310, Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*, ⇨ *page 337, Jump-starting*
4. Sticker for engine oil specification ⇨ *page 298*
5. Engine oil filler cap ( ) ⇨ *page 299, Checking the engine oil level*
6. Brake fluid reservoir ( ) under a cover ⇨ *page 306*
7. Coolant expansion tank for electrical components ( ) ⇨ *page 303*
8. Coolant expansion tank for combustion engine ( ) ⇨ *page 303*

The positions of the brake fluid reservoir and the engine oil filler cap may be different on some engine and country versions.

Engine oil

Information on engine oil

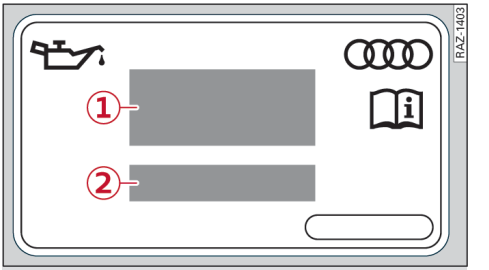


Fig. 141 Engine oil sticker

Engine oil that meets the specified standard

– 1 Engine oil standard ▶

– ② Engine oil viscosity

If you have to top up the engine oil, use one of the oils that meet the engine oil standard specified on the sticker ⇨ *Fig. 141*. The sticker with the specified standard is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 298, Fig. 140*. If you use this oil, you can top up the engine oil level as often as necessary.

Audi recommends engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

Alternative engine oil in an emergency

If the specified engine oil is not available, you can add a maximum of 0.5 litres of oil corresponding to the following standards **once** between oil changes. You should do this **in emergencies only**.

– Applies to petrol engines: Standards: VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API SQ or ILSAC GF-7A. All viscosity classes of these standards are allowed.
– Applies to diesel engines: Standards: VW 507 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4 or API CK-4. All viscosity classes of these standards are allowed.

Information on changing the engine oil

Audi recommends having the oil changed by a qualified workshop.

CAUTION

Audi recommends that you use the types of engine oil that have been formulated to conform to the corresponding VW standard. Using engine oil that does not meet these quality requirements may cause damage to the engine. In an emergency, 0.5 ltr. of engine oil corresponding to the standards specified above may be used as an exception.

Checking the engine oil level

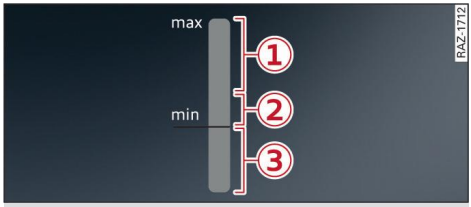


Fig. 142 Centre display: Checking engine oil level

Areas of the oil level display ⇨ *Fig. 142*. Please refer to ⇨ ⓘ.

①	The engine oil level is OK. Do not add engine oil.
②	The engine oil level is OK. However, you may add more engine oil.
③	The engine oil level is too low. Add more engine oil.

The engine oil level should be inside the top permissible area when the vehicle is subject to particularly high loads, such as during long motorway trips in the summer or when driving over mountain passes.

Displaying the engine oil level in the MMI

– To display the engine oil level in the MMI, open the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

If the oil level is not shown, carry out the following steps:

– Park the vehicle on a level surface.
– Switch off the warm engine.
– Switch on the ignition again without starting the engine.
– Wait for about 5 minutes for the engine oil to drain back out of the engine into the sump.
– Open the engine oil level in the **Car** menu again ⇨ *page 28*.
– Read the oil level on the display.
– If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil ⇨ *page 300, Topping up the engine oil*.

The oil level shown on the centre display (MMI) is intended solely for information purposes. The indicator lamp and a driver message are shown in the instrument cluster if the oil level is too ▶

low. Add more engine oil ⇨ *page 300, Topping up the engine oil*.

Information on engine oil consumption

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. The engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling and before a journey.

CAUTION

There is a risk of engine damage if the engine oil level is too low or too high.

– The engine oil level must not be in area ③ ⇨ *Fig. 142* – risk of engine damage!
– The oil level must not be above the "max" level after topping up the engine oil ⇨ *Fig. 142* – risk of engine damage or damage to the catalytic converter! If the indicator lamp lights up and a corresponding message appears, drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the excess oil extracted if necessary. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.
– Applies to vehicles with diesel engine: If the oil level is above the "max" mark ⇨ *Fig. 142*, the indicator lamp lights up and a corresponding message is shown, the engine oil level must not be corrected by extracting oil – risk of engine damage! The engine oil must be changed ⇨ *page 301, Driver messages about the engine oil system*.

Topping up the engine oil

Fig. 143 Engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*.

If you need to top up the engine oil, please note the following:

Adding 0.5 litres of engine oil

▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
▸ Switch off the warm engine.
▸ Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 297*.
▸ Unscrew the cap from the oil filler opening ⇨ *Fig. 143*.
▸ Carefully add 0.5 litres of suitable engine oil ⇨ *page 298, Information on engine oil*.
▸ Screw the oil filler cap back on.

If the engine oil that you are using does not correspond to the specified standard, you must not add any more engine oil ⇨ ! *in Information on engine oil on page 299*. Close the bonnet ⇨ *page 297*.

If the engine oil that you are using corresponds to the specified standard, you may add more engine oil if necessary.

Adding more engine oil

You must only perform the following steps if the engine oil that you are using corresponds to the specified standard ⇨ *page 298, Information on engine oil*.

▸ Close the bonnet ⇨ *page 297*.
▸ Switch the ignition on again after two minutes and read off the current oil level on the MMI ⇨ *page 299, Checking the engine oil level*.
▸ Open the bonnet again.
▸ Unscrew the cap from the oil filler opening ⇨ *Fig. 143*.
▸ If necessary, add more engine oil that corresponds to the specified standard.
▸ Screw the oil filler cap back on.
▸ Close the bonnet ⇨ *page 297*.

WARNING

– Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up: this could cause a fire.

– The oil filler cap must be properly closed to prevent oil from squirting onto the hot engine or exhaust system while the engine is running – risk of fire!
– Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
– Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of the reach of children.
– Store the engine oil safely in the original container.

CAUTION

No additives should be used with engine oil. These could cause engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

– Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
– Always observe local regulations when disposing of empty oil canisters.

Driver messages about the engine oil system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Switch off engine. Oil pressure too low

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 299*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil ⇨ *page 300*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.
– If the engine oil level is OK but the warning lamp still lights up, switch off the engine and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Please add oil immediately

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the oil level ⇨ *page 299* and top it up immediately ⇨ *page 300*.

Please add max. x ltr. oil. You can continue driving

Add the amount of oil shown soon ⇨ *page 300*.

Please reduce oil level

The engine contains too much oil – risk of damage to the catalytic converter and engine. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the engine oil level adjusted if necessary. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

Oil level sensor system: fault. Please contact workshop soon

The sensor for checking the engine oil level has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Oil system: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil pressure or the bonnet lock has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Please warm up engine

It is possible for fuel to enter the engine oil, especially at low outside temperatures. The temperature of the engine oil needs to be high enough so that the fuel in it can evaporate.

Drive in transmission position S.

Run the engine at high rpm speeds but avoid using full throttle.

You should drive for at least 30 minutes; however it is possible that the indicator lamp may not go out during this period. Repeat the procedure at your convenience.

If the indicator lamp does not disappear after several runs, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

When responding to the message **Please warm up engine**, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions – risk of accident! The recommendation must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.

Cooling system

Information on coolant

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*.

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed.

The coolant level is monitored by a warning lamp . However, it is advisable to check it occasionally.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. When topping up, use only the type of coolant additive specified below, in combination with distilled water.

Coolant additive	Specification	Colour
G12evo	**TL 774 L**	purple

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause engine damage.

Climate region	Coolant additive	Frost protection
Hot regions	min. 40 % max. 45 %	min. -25 °C (-13 °F)
Cold regions	min. 50 % max. 55 %	max. -40 °C (-40 °F)

CAUTION

– Have a qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
– Adjustments to the amount of coolant additive to suit colder temperatures must always be carried out by a qualified workshop – risk of severe damage to cooling system components! The vehicle has several coolant circuits that can only be filled by a qualified workshop that has the necessary special tools.
– Do not use a different type of coolant additive if G12evo is not available – risk of severe damage to cooling system components! In this case use only clean, ideally distilled water and have the coolant concentration brought back up to the correct level as soon as possible with the specified additive.
– Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
– Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.
– If the coolant system has been topped up with a coolant additive other than the approved type (G12evo), you can continue driving initially; however you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop without delay and have the coolant changed – risk of severe damage to cooling system components!
– The cooling system must be refilled by a qualified workshop only – risk of severe damage to cooling system components! You can obtain important information about recommended anti-freeze additives from your qualified workshop.

CAUTION

– Auxiliary headlights and other attachments in front of the cooling air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.
– The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause the engine to overheat. Seek professional assistance.

Checking the coolant level

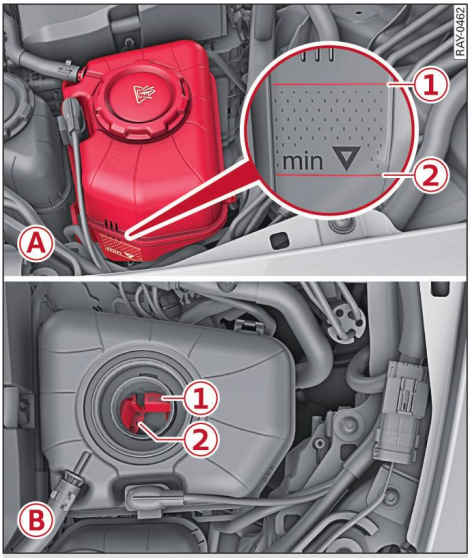


Fig. 144 Engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank for combustion engine. Ⓐ marks on expansion tank, Ⓑ marks inside coolant tank (visible when cap is opened – risk of scalding!)

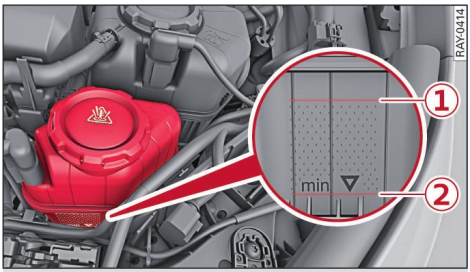


Fig. 145 Engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank for electrical components.

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*.

Your vehicle may have two separate coolant expansion tanks depending on its equipment ⇨ *page 298, Fig. 140*. One expansion tank is for the combustion engine (black cap) ⇨ *Fig. 144* and the other one is for the electrical components (blue cap) ⇨ *Fig. 145*. Please refer to the safety information ⇨ ⚠.

Preparations before checking the coolant level

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Switch the vehicle off. (The ignition must remain switched off throughout the process of checking and topping up the coolant.)
- Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 297*.
- Applies to 4-cylinder petrol engine: Wait for at least 15 minutes after switching off the engine; otherwise the coolant level reading may be incorrect.
- When the coolant is cold, the coolant level for each coolant expansion tank should be between marks ① and ② ⇨ *Fig. 144* or ⇨ *Fig. 145*. The coolant level may initially be slightly above the top mark ① on new vehicles. This may also be the case if the engine is warm.
- You can read the coolant level using the outer or inner markings on the coolant expansion tank.

Checking the coolant level based on marks on the outside

- Read the coolant level on the outside of the expansion tank Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 144* or ⇨ *Fig. 145*.
- Please read the information on ⇨ *page 302, Cooling system* and ⇨ *page 304, Topping up coolant* before topping up the coolant in the coolant expansion tank.

Checking the coolant level based on marks on the inside

Applies to: coolant expansion tank for combustion engine

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*.

- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a large, thick cloth.
- Carefully unscrew the black cap for the affected coolant circuit Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 144* by turning it anticlockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- Read the coolant level on the inside of the expansion tank Ⓑ ⇨ *Fig. 144*.
- If you did not need to top up the coolant, screw the black cap on clockwise until you feel the second point of resistance. ▶

▸ Please read the information on ⇨ *page 302, Cooling system* and ⇨ *page 304, Topping up coolant* before topping up the coolant in the coolant expansion tank.

WARNING

– The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, switch off the vehicle and allow the cooling system to cool down. Please observe the important safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*.
– Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. The cooling system is under pressure. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.
– When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off – risk of injury!
– The coolant and coolant additives can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children – risk of poisoning.

CAUTION

Coolant loss which leads to the coolant expansion tank being empty normally indicates significant leaks in the cooling system which could result in further damage. In this case, do NOT drive on. Seek professional assistance.

– Do **not** add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system – risk of damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Seek professional assistance.
– If there is a visible amount of coolant remaining in the tank, add more coolant. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. If the warning/indicator lamp / comes on again, stop the vehicle and switch off the ignition. Seek professional assistance.
– If too much coolant has been added to the coolant expansion tank, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the coolant level corrected.
– If you use non-distilled water, the chemicals that it contains can cause serious corrosion damage to the engine – risk of engine damage!
– If you have used a large quantity of non-distilled water (more than 0.5 ltr.) in an emergency, drive directly to a qualified workshop and have the coolant changed.
– Applies to vehicles with cooling of electrical components: The caps for the two coolant expansion tanks must not be swapped over – risk of engine damage! Black cap for combustion engine ⇨ *Fig. 144*, blue cap for electrical components ⇨ *Fig. 145*.

Topping up coolant

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*.

Please refer to ⇨ ⚠ *in Checking the coolant level on page 304* and ⇨ ⓘ *in Checking the coolant level on page 304*.

Important: A visible amount of coolant must remain in the coolant expansion tank ⇨ ⓘ *in Checking the coolant level on page 304*.

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of distilled water and the specified coolant additive ⇨ *page 302*. Only use non-distilled water in an emergency. Always use clean water.

Applies to vehicles with cooling of electrical components: The caps for the two coolant expansion tanks (for the combustion engine and for electrical components) must not be swapped over ⇨ ⓘ *in Checking the coolant level on page 304*.

Coolant circuit for combustion engine: black cap ⇨ *page 303, Fig. 144*

Applies to vehicles with cooling of electrical components: Coolant circuit for electrical components: blue cap ⇨ *page 303, Fig. 145*

▸ Wait for the engine to cool down.
▸ First check the coolant level ⇨ *page 303*. ▶

- Cover the cap on the expansion tank you intend to open with a large, thick cloth.
- Carefully unscrew the cap for the affected coolant circuit ⇨ *page 303, Fig. 144* Ⓐ or ⇨ *page 303, Fig. 145* by turning it anti-clockwise ⇨ ⚠ *in Checking the coolant level on page 304*.
- Add coolant in the correct concentration ⇨ *page 302* up to mark ① ⇨ *page 303*.
- You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.
- Screw the cap on clockwise until you feel the second point of resistance.

Driver messages about the cooling system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Switch off power unit and check coolant level. See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 303*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add more coolant ⇨ *page 303*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.

Coolant temperature: too high! Please switch off engine

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Wait approx. 15 minutes and then restart the engine. Do not drive on if the warning lamp does not disappear. Seek professional assistance.

Coolant temperature: high. Please adapt driving style

You can continue driving. The air conditioner output will be restricted. The performance may be restricted. Continue driving in a moderate style or allow the engine to idle until the indicator lamp disappears. If the indicator lamp still does not disappear, do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Cooling system: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a fault in the cooling system. Do not drive on. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 303, Checking the coolant level*. If the indicator lamp disappears after the coolant level has been checked and coolant has been added if necessary, you can continue driving. Do not drive on if the indicator lamp does not disappear. Seek professional assistance.

Brake fluid

Safety information on the brake fluid

WARNING

– If the brake fluid level is under the MIN mark, the effectiveness of the brakes and therefore the safety of the vehicle may be impaired – risk of accident! Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.
– Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if old brake fluid is left in the system. This would seriously impair the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the car – risk of accident!
– The brake fluid in your vehicle must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. If this brake fluid is not available, it is permissible to use an alternative high-quality brake fluid complying with the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6 (ISO 4925).
– If used brake fluid or brake fluid not approved for your vehicle is used, the effectiveness of the brakes will be seriously impaired and the brake system could even fail completely – risk of accident! The vehicle manufacturer will accept no liability for faults or damage which occur as a result. In addition, no warranty claims will be accepted.

CAUTION

– If the brake fluid level is above the MAX mark, brake fluid may escape via the cap on the reservoir in certain circumstances and cause damage to the vehicle.
– Brake fluid must not be allowed to come into contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

Checking the brake fluid and having it changed

Fig. 146 Engine compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

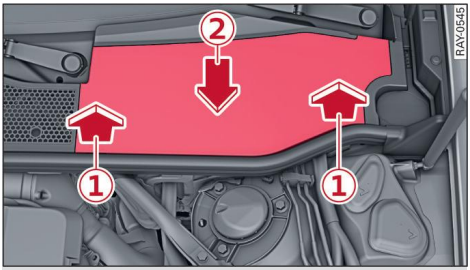


Fig. 147 Engine compartment: Removing cover for brake fluid reservoir

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*.

Checking the brake fluid level

The brake fluid reservoir is located underneath a cover in the engine compartment on the driver's side.

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 297*.
- Remove the cover below the windscreen on the driver's side. To do so, lift the cover slightly at the front (1) and detach it (2) ⇨ *Fig. 147*.
- Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 298*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety information on the brake fluid on page 305*.
- Fit the cover securely again below the windscreen. To do so, press the cover down at the front and rear longitudinal edges until all tabs engage.

The brake fluid level is also automatically monitored.

Having the brake fluid changed

The brake fluid is changed at regular intervals. Have the brake fluid changed by a qualified workshop. The qualified workshop will inform you of these intervals.

Driver messages about the brake system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. Seek professional assistance.

Brakes overheating. Safely stop vehicle and allow to cool down. See owner's manual

Stop the vehicle and select transmission position P. Wait until the message disappears.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety information on the brake fluid on page 305*.

CAUTION

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ (!) *in Safety information on the brake fluid on page 305*.

Electrical system

Driver messages about the electrical system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the warning lamp / lights up, there is a power supply or battery fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

Electrical system: fault. Safely stop vehicle ▶

The steering wheel may also vibrate when the driver message appears. Stop the vehicle safely and do not continue driving. You should also switch off the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. Seek professional assistance.

Electrical system: fault. No restart possible. Please contact workshop

It will not be possible to restart the vehicle once you have switched it off. The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: fault. Please contact workshop

Switch off any electrical equipment which is not required (some equipment may be switched off automatically). The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

– If this message disappears after a while, the vehicle battery will have been sufficiently charged while driving.
– If the message does not disappear again, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

An electrical system fault can cause vehicle functions to fail, thus impairing the vehicle's stability – risk of accident! Switch the vehicle off and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Battery

Safety information on batteries

Explanation of warning symbols:

Symbol	Description
⚠	Observe all warnings – risk of injury!
/	Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.
/	12-volt vehicle battery. High-voltage component. Improper handling can cause short circuits ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on batteries on page 309*.
	With the exception of jump-starting and charging the 12-volt vehicle battery, all work on the 12-volt vehicle battery must be performed by a qualified workshop ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on batteries on page 309* ⇨ ⓘ *in Information on batteries on page 310*.
	High voltage! The voltage of the high-voltage system is lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted.
	Electrolyte is extremely corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and safety glasses. **First aid**: If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay. Neutralise any electrolyte spilt on skin or clothing immediately with soapy water and rinse with plenty of fresh water. If electrolyte is drunk by accident, seek the assistance of a doctor immediately.
	Always wear safety glasses.
	If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.

8B1012720AG

Symbol	Description
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery! Avoid sparks and short-circuits when handling cables and electrical equipment.
	The high-voltage battery is flammable. The high-voltage battery must never be exposed to fire, sparks or naked flames. The high-voltage battery must always be handled with care, in order to prevent damage and fluid leaks.
	Always keep children away from batteries and electrolyte.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge!
	Applies to high-voltage battery: Improper handling of the high-voltage battery can lead to serious or fatal injury. Never dismantle the high-voltage battery and never remove its cover.
	Applies to high-voltage battery: Improper handling of the high-voltage battery can lead to serious or fatal injury. Maintenance work on the high-voltage battery must only be carried out by suitably qualified and trained personnel. Never make modifications to the high-voltage battery. The high-voltage battery must never come into contact with water or other fluids when it is open. Fluids can cause short-circuits, electric shocks and burns. The high-voltage battery must only be replaced by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends that the work be carried out by a registered Audi workshop, which has trained workshop personnel and all the required tools and parts.

WARNING

Any work on the batteries **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

– Any gases escaping from batteries may be toxic or flammable.
– The substances contained in batteries can be corrosive. If the contents of the battery come into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.

CAUTION

Applies to: mild hybrid drive

– To prevent damage, e.g. due to power surges, components must not be connected to the terminals and wires of the 48-volt lithium battery (medium-voltage battery).
– Maintenance work must always be carried out by qualified personnel.
– The 48-volt lithium-ion battery must only be replaced by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends that the work be carried out by a registered Audi workshop, which has trained workshop personnel and all the required tools and parts.
– Never attempt to replace the 48-volt lithium-ion battery yourself. The 48-volt lithium-ion battery in this vehicle must only be replaced with a 48-volt lithium-ion battery from Audi which is supplied explicitly for this vehicle. The use of other 48-volt lithium-ion or lead-acid batteries can cause substantial faults and even the total failure of the electrical system.
– Never make modifications to the lithium-ion battery.
– Never open the 48-volt lithium-ion battery.

Information on batteries

Because of the complexity of the power supply, any battery work, such as disconnection, replacement, etc. **must** be carried out by a qualified workshop ⇨ ⚠.

Several batteries using different technologies are fitted in your vehicle:

– 12-volt vehicle battery (e.g. for basic supply)
⇨ *page 307, Safety information on batteries* ▶

– Applies to vehicles with mild hybrid drive: 48-volt vehicle battery (supply for power electronics) ⇨ *page 307, Safety information on batteries*
– Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: High-voltage battery (e.g. for electric drive, air conditioning) ⇨ *page 127*.

If the vehicle is not used for long periods

The 12-volt battery gradually becomes discharged if the vehicle is left standing for long periods. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you activate the drive system.

Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, this can result in total 12-volt battery discharge. If the vehicle battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction damages the battery irreparably. To avoid this, the battery should be recharged at least once a month ⇨ *page 310*. Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Winter conditions

Cold weather is very hard on the 12-volt vehicle battery. For this reason, you should have the battery checked by a qualified workshop before the start of winter.

Replacing the battery

The following description applies to the 12-volt vehicle battery. Any work on the battery **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

The 12-volt vehicle battery has been developed for use in its installation location and is equipped with safety features. If the 12-volt battery needs to be replaced, this must be done by a suitably qualified workshop. Information on the battery size and the required maintenance, performance and safety specifications can be obtained from a suitably qualified workshop that is required to have the necessary technical documentation and equipment. The gas vent on the 12-volt vehicle battery must always be located on the side of the negative terminal. The gas vent on the side of the positive terminal must always be sealed.

When replacing the 12-volt lead battery, use only maintenance-free 12-volt lead batteries to standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. These standards must be from October 2014 or later.

WARNING

– Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
– Always have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Furthermore, the battery's functional safety parameters were determined using the original battery. Only suitably qualified workshops have the equipment required to perform the calibration correctly. If the correct equipment is not used, safety-related functions may fail – risk of accident!
– Using a 12-volt vehicle battery that does not have the same specifications or dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery can cause short-circuits or fires. Serious or fatal injuries may occur as a result.
– Only maintenance-free 12-volt vehicle batteries that have the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery may be used.
– If a **leak-proof** 12-volt vehicle battery was fitted in the luggage compartment or the vehicle interior at the factory, the replacement battery must also be leak-proof. If a **leak-protected** 12-volt vehicle battery was fitted in a different part of the vehicle at the factory, the replacement battery must also be leak-protected.
– Applies to vehicles with jump-start terminal in engine compartment: Charging cables and jump leads must never be connected directly to the 12-volt battery on your vehicle. ▶

Always use the terminals in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 310*.
– Avoid causing sparks when handling cables and electrical equipment. Avoid causing sparks due to electrostatic discharge.

WARNING

If the gas venting hose is not secured to the 12-volt vehicle battery correctly, the highly explosive mixture of gases that is produced while the vehicle is in use may enter the vehicle interior. This gas may ignite, potentially resulting in severe or fatal injury.
– Always make sure that the vent located on the positive terminal side of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sealed.
– On vehicles in which the 12-volt vehicle battery is located in the vehicle interior or luggage compartment, make sure that the gas venting hose is secured to the 12-volt vehicle battery correctly. The gas venting hose must always be secured on the negative terminal side of the 12-volt vehicle battery.

WARNING

A short circuit or fire may occur if the 12-volt vehicle battery is not secured correctly. Serious or fatal injuries may occur as a result.
– The 12-volt vehicle battery must always be secured at the mounting points in the vehicle provided for this purpose.
– All covers required for the vehicle must be reinstalled on the battery.

CAUTION

– If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the 12-volt vehicle battery from frost. The battery will be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to freeze ⇨ *page 310, Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*.
– Electrical components which can heat up during operation are located behind a trim panel underneath the luggage compartment floor. To prevent these components from overheating, objects such as blankets must not be stored underneath the floor panel. The components will switch off temporarily if they overheat. This will be indicated by a message in the instrument cluster until the temperature has returned to normal.
– Always have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly.
– If a battery is used that does not meet the quality specifications set by Audi, or that has a battery capacity that is too low, the vehicle's certification for use on public roads is void and thus also the vehicle's registration ⇨ ⚠.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 360, Information on waste disposal*.

Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery

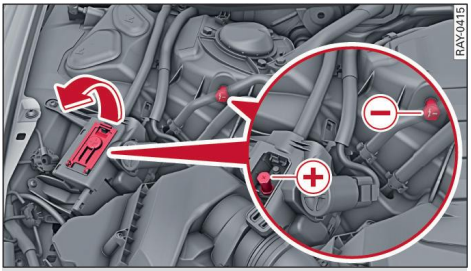


Fig. 148 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

Please read the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Information on batteries on page 309* and ⇨ ⚠.

Information on the 12-volt battery charger

Only use battery chargers with a **maximum charging voltage of 14.8 V**. The battery cables remain connected. ▶

Connecting the charger

The terminals for the charging cables are located in the engine compartment. The earth point ⊖ is always on the vehicle's body. Use only the terminals in the engine compartment to charge the battery.

- Switch off all electrical equipment and the vehicle.
- Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 297*.
- Open the cap on the positive terminal ⇨ *Fig. 148*.
- Carefully and correctly connect the charger cables (according to the manufacturer's instructions for the battery charger) to the positive terminal ⊕ and then to the earth point ⊖ ⇨ *Fig. 148*. Important: Before you charge the battery, make sure you read any instructions for using the battery charger that are provided by the manufacturer.
- Connect the battery charger to the mains and switch it on.
- Keep the bonnet fully open while charging ⇨ ⚠.
- After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
- Now disconnect the charger cables. First from the earth point ⊖ and then the positive terminal ⊕.
- Close the cap on the positive terminal.
- Close the bonnet ⇨ *page 297*.

If the 12-volt vehicle battery can no longer be charged, it has been discharged totally and should be replaced. Please contact a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

– Never use unsuitable charging equipment or charging equipment which is visibly damaged and/or dirty. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
– Charging cables or jump leads for the negative terminal must never be connected directly to the 12-volt battery on your vehicle. Only use the earth point on the vehicle body in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 310*.
– A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge. Only charge the battery in a well ventilated area.
– When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0 °C. You must not use a battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the electrolyte to escape – risk of explosion and chemical burns! Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cables during the charging process – risk of explosion!
– Leave the bonnet open while the 12-volt vehicle battery is charging. Closing the bonnet could cause an electrical short circuit – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

The vehicle battery must only be charged with max. 80 A of charging current via the charging points in the engine compartment. Otherwise, serious damage to electronic components may result.

Windscreen washer system

Filling the windscreen washer system

Fig. 149 Engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer container

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment*.

The windscreen washer container contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen/rear window and the headlight washer system ⇨ *page 298*. ▶

For the container capacity, please refer to ⇨ *page 355*.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets, or ideally, distilled water. Always add washer fluid to the water. In cold weather you should add anti-freeze to the water to prevent it from freezing.

CAUTION

- The anti-freeze concentration must be matched to the climate of the country in which you are driving. If the concentration is too high, damage to the car may result.
- Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
- Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

Driver messages about the windscreen washer system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Please add washer fluid. See owner's manual

With the vehicle switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system ⇨ *page 311* and ⇨ ⓘ *in Filling the windscreen washer system on page 312*.

Service interval display

Information on the service interval display

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.

There are two service interval display levels:

- **Inspection or oil change reminder**: After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on/off. The distance or time remaining will be shown briefly.
- **Inspection or oil change due:** When your vehicle is due for an inspection, oil change or both, the corresponding reminder **Inspection due!**, **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on/off.

Having the display reset

Your qualified workshop resets the service interval display after each service.

WARNING

If you neglect to have the vehicle serviced promptly at the specified intervals, or if the scope of the servicing work is insufficient, this can lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

CAUTION

- Regular servicing of the vehicle not only sustains its service life and preserves its value, but also helps to maintain operational and road safety. Service work should therefore always be carried out according to the Audi guidelines.
- Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.
- Audi is not responsible for damage to the vehicle resulting from insufficient servicing or a lack of availability of parts.

Using the service interval display

You can check the distance and time remaining until the next oil change and next inspection in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

You cannot check the service interval on a new vehicle until it has been driven for 500 km.

Applies to: vehicles with flexible oil change service

Qualified workshops reset the service interval after the oil is changed. Your own personal driving profile is used to calculate the remaining distance. Frequent cold starts or short trips place extra demands on the engine oil with the result that the oil has to be changed more often.

Smart service

Information on smart service

Important for all the following systems: Your myAudi user must be logged in as the vehicle's key user.

Your vehicle will inform you about smart service for the following topics:

– Predictive maintenance: You will be informed about maintenance-related topics for your vehicle.
– Remote vehicle diagnostics: If you report an issue with the vehicle, your qualified workshop or the online roadside assistance call service will be able to receive vehicle-specific information so that they can provide you with targeted support on the phone.
– Remote vehicle repair: After remote vehicle diagnostics, you may receive the option of having a remote repair performed, depending on the type of issue.

In addition to this, the online roadside assistance call function allows you to request assistance in the event of a breakdown or a minor accident ⇨ *page 255*.

Using predictive maintenance

The predictive maintenance function helps to determine the vehicle's condition by monitoring wear parts. The predictive maintenance function calculates when maintenance needs to be performed and informs the Audi dealership that you have selected.

Viewing maintenance needs

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Servicing** > **Status**.

Setting up reminders

You can select which maintenance needs you would like to be reminded about.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Servicing** > **Status**.
▸ Press the desired maintenance need and follow the instructions given by the system.

Viewing requests sent to the Audi dealership

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Servicing** > **Requests**.

Contacting the workshop

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Servicing** > **Status** > **Contacting workshop**.

Using remote vehicle repair

Important: Remote vehicle diagnostics must have been performed. The vehicle must be parked on a level surface, secured to prevent it from rolling away and in a safe place away from traffic.

In many cases, the remote vehicle repair function can remedy software-based issues on the vehicle without a workshop visit being necessary. The measure is restricted to immaterial repairs.

For issues which cannot be remedied by a remote vehicle repair, the workshop can already plan and prepare upcoming repairs.

▸ Follow any instructions given by the online roadside assistance call service or the Audi workshop.

Online Car Care

Using Online Car Care

Applies to: vehicles with Online Car Care

Online Car Care displays service information, predictive messages and field campaigns (service measures or recalls) for your vehicle.

Incoming messages from Online Car Care are displayed on the MMI.

▸ To call up Online Car Care messages, select the following on the MMI: ⊞ > **Audi apps** > **Online Car Care**.

WARNING

– Please always observe the information relating to Audi connect in the Owner's Manual.
– It is essential that recalls from the manufacturer be carried out. Failure to do so may void the vehicle's type approval. If measures are not carried out, the vehicle's functions may be impaired – risk of accident!

CAUTION

– Please always observe the information relating to Audi connect in the Owner's Manual.
– It is essential that recalls from the manufacturer be carried out – risk of damage to the vehicle!

Wheels

Tyres and rims

Introduction

In this Owner's Manual, the term "wheel" refers to the combination of rim and tyre. If only one of the above components is meant, the term tyre or rim is used.

- Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced immediately.
- Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

WARNING

– Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes them to overheat. This can cause a tyre blow-out, which could result in an accident.
– Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.

CAUTION

– Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. Audi recommends that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.
– Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar. This does not apply to rims which are supplied from the factory as complete winter wheels.

Information on tyre designations

The following example explains certain specifications on the tyre's sidewall:

205/60 R 16 92 H

205 Tyre width in mm
60 Height-to-width ratio in %
R Code for tyre type: radial
16 Rim diameter in inches
92 Load index
H Speed rating

Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date may possibly only be indicated on the inner side of the wheel:

DOT ... 2225 ...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2025.

AO RE, or RO

Tyres with the marking "AO", "RE" or "RO" which are specially matched to your Audi are supplied with your vehicle. Provided that they are used properly, these tyres fulfil very high standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information.

Information on new tyres or wheels

Audi recommends having all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they have the necessary special tools and replacement parts in addition to trained personnel. ▶

- New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same dimensions, type, size (rolling circumference) and preferably the same tread pattern.
- Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre ⇨ ⚠.
- If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand ⇨ ⚠. Observe the important information and warnings regarding run-flat tyres ⇨ *page 323*.

The specifications for the rim/tyre combinations approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document [1]). The vehicle documents vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is registered.

Applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive: All four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as the driveline could otherwise be damaged by variations in the wheel speeds.

Energy efficiency information for Republic of Korea

You will find information on energy efficiency and the detailed specifications of the tyres approved for your vehicle on the following website: www.audi.co.kr.

⚠ WARNING

– Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
– For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
– It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.
– Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.
– If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!
– If any of the tyres are incorrectly mounted on the rims, the tyres may be damaged or a blow-out may occur. The tyres must be mounted on the rims by trained personnel – risk of accident!

Information on tyre wear / damage

Fig. 150 Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage. ▶

[1] COC = Certificate of conformity

– The wear on under-inflated or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
– Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. If the vehicle is driven in this way, check the tread depth every 5000 km – 10000 km.
– If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
– Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇨ *Fig. 150* running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

When checking the tread depth, you must check the tread wear indicators across the entire width of all four tyres.

The minimum tread depth[1)] is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Changing wheels round

Wheels should be changed round regularly to ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres. Fit the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice-versa. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall ⇨ *page 337*.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

Information on tyre pressure

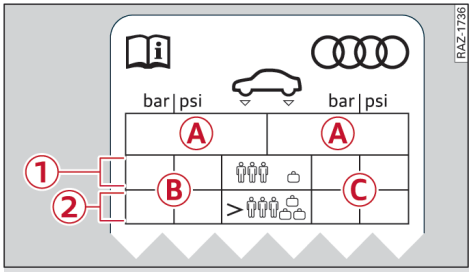


Fig. 151 B-pillar on driver's side: tyre pressure sticker

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory are specified on a sticker. The sticker ⇨ *Fig. 151* is on the B-pillar (driver's side).

Ⓐ Tyre size

Ⓑ Tyre pressure for the front wheels

Ⓒ Tyre pressure for the rear wheels

① Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded

② Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting ①. If you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressures to the specified maximum ② ⇨ ⚠.

Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

▸ Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey. ▶

[1)] Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

- The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
- Refer to the sticker ⇨ *Fig. 151* for the correct tyre pressures.
- If necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.
- Store the new tyre pressures in the centre display ⇨ *page 320* / ⇨ *page 322*.

WARNING

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

– Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Under-inflation, high speeds and heavy loads require the tyres to flex more, which causes them to overheat. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves.

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase the energy consumption.

Information on wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim flange or bolted trim parts consist of several components. A special technique is applied to bolt these components together. Never attempt to repair or dismantle them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened or serviced correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident! For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇨ *page 337, Finishing the tyre change*.

– Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs are always clean and free from grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that are designed to match the rims on your car.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to repair or dismantle rims yourself – risk of accident!

Information on winter tyres

In winter road conditions, winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the ❄ symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

- Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.
- Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle.
- Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 315*. Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
- After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures ⇨ *page 317*.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce energy consumption.

Information on snow chains

Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions (snow and ice).

- Snow chains can be used on the front wheels only.
- Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
- Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

For technical reasons, snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations (depending on model version):

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
7.5Jx17	41 mm	215/55
8Jx18	40 mm	235/45

Only use snow chains with **fine-pitch links**. The links must not protrude more than 9 mm from the tyres (including tensioner).

When driving with snow chains, it may help to restrict the ESC ⇨ *page 125*.

You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle's handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.

WARNING

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.

Information on low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a lower sidewall and provide a wider tread surface and rim diameter than other wheel and tyre combinations. This makes the car's handling more agile. However, the ride may be less comfortable on poor-quality roads and tracks, and rolling noise may be louder.

Low-profile tyres can be damaged more quickly than standard tyres, for example by heavy jolts, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. It is therefore particularly important to ensure that they are inflated to the correct pressure ⇨ *page 317*.

Drive with particular care on poor-quality roads to ensure that you do not damage the rims and tyres.

Make sure to check your wheels regularly (every 3000 km) for damage such as blisters/tears on the tyre sidewalls or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy jolt, or if any damage occurs, you should have the rims and tyres checked and if necessary replaced by a qualified workshop.

Tyre wear occurs more quickly on low-profile tyres than on standard tyres.

Tyre pressure loss indicator

Introduction

Within the system limits, the tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.

The system makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the inflation pressure are detected on one or more tyres, the driver is alerted by an indicator lamp and a message on the instrument cluster. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position. The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to "Audi Genuine Tyres" ⇨ *page 315*. Audi recommends that you use these tyres.

Each time tyre pressures are changed (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa) on your vehicle, or after the tyres are changed, you must store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 320*. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle ▶

are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇨ *page 317, Fig. 151*.

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

– The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
– The tyres have suffered structural damage.
– The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored ⇨ *page 320*.
– Only some of the worn tyres have been replaced.

Please note that the tyre pressure loss indicator may fail if there is an ESC fault. When driving with snow chains, the warning may be triggered erroneously or a system malfunction may occur.

WARNING

– If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
– It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
– Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.

Driver messages about the tyre pressure loss indicator

If the indicator lamp lights up, there is a loss of pressure on one or more tyres ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 320*. Check the tyre(s) and change them if necessary. Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 320*.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. To display the driver messages again, open the notification centre on the centre display.

If a message continues to be displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

The following driver message may also be displayed:

TPMS Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual

If TPMS appears and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the vehicle or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures ⇨ *page 320*. In some cases the indicator lamp may not go out until you have driven the vehicle for a few minutes after storing the pressures. If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Please observe the important information and notes ⇨ *page 319*.

Storing tyre pressures in the tyre pressure loss indicator

When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the centre display.

▸ Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇨ *page 317*.
▸ Switch the vehicle on.
▸ Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **Servicing** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Yes, store now**.

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

How the tyre pressure monitoring system works

The tyre pressure monitoring system uses sensors to measure temperatures and pressures in ▶

the tyres. The sensors transmit the data to the control unit by radio.

The system monitors the tyre pressures on the four wheels while you are driving and displays the current pressures and temperatures on the centre display ⇨ *page 321*. In addition, it compares the current tyre pressures with the stored tyre pressures and warns you via the driver information system if it detects a discrepancy ⇨ *page 321*.

The system cannot check whether the stored tyre pressures correspond to the recommended tyre pressures for your vehicle. You must store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 322*:

– after every adjustment to the tyre pressures, e.g. after changing the laden weight of your vehicle,
– after changing a wheel, or
– when using wheels with new wheel sensors.

The sensors and valves do not have to be detached or replaced when fitting new tyres. Only the valve core needs to be replaced, and if necessary the valve and the electronic components in the wheel. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

After using the tyre repair kit, the tyre pressure monitoring system may malfunction. Have the sensors replaced by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

– The tyre pressure monitoring system helps the driver to monitor the tyre pressures. However, it is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyres are at the correct pressure.
– Never re-adjust the tyre pressure when the tyre is hot. This can cause serious damage to the tyre or even a blow-out, which could result in an accident.
– Under-inflated tyres flex more than they should. This causes them to overheat. This can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out, which could result in an accident.
– The tyre pressure monitoring system cannot warn you of tyre damage or defects that could lead, for example, to a tyre blow-out. Perform a regular visual check of your tyres.

Displaying tyre pressures and temperatures

Important: The vehicle must be moving.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **Servicing** > **Tyre pressure loss indicator** > **Display tyre pressures**.

The current tyre pressures are displayed in green, yellow or red on the MMI:

– **Green:** The tyre pressure is roughly the same as the reference value.
– **Yellow:** The tyre pressure is too low compared with the reference value.
– **Red:** The tyre pressure is much too low compared with the reference value.

The reference value is the last stored tyre pressure value ⇨ *page 322*.

Bear in mind that the tyre inflation pressure is also influenced by the temperature of the tyre. The tyre heats up while the vehicle is being driven and the tyre pressure will rise accordingly.

The tyre pressures and temperatures are not shown in the display when the vehicle is stationary or during the initialisation phase. Horizontal dashes **-.-** will appear instead of the pressure and temperature figures.

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇨ *page 320*.

Driver messages about the tyre pressure monitoring system

If the indicator lamp (!) lights up, the tyre pressure is too low compared with the reference value. Adjust the pressure of the relevant tyre(s) at the next opportunity and store the pressures ⇨ *page 322*.

(!) Flat tyre! Safely stop vehicle. Please check all tyres and store pressures in MMI

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message also appears, the tyre pressure has reached a ▶

critical value compared with the reference value. Avoid unnecessary braking and steering manoeuvres. Adapt your driving style to the prevailing conditions. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyre(s). If it is possible to continue driving, you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop and have the defective tyre(s) replaced immediately.

TPMS Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual

If the indicator lamp TPMS appears after you have switched the vehicle on or while you are driving and the indicator lamp (!) flashes for approximately one minute and then remains lit, there is a fault in the system. This fault can have the following causes:

– If the display appears at the end of the initialisation process, this means that the system cannot detect the wheel sensors required to monitor the pressures. This can happen if one or more of the tyres fitted does not have a sensor or the sensors are incompatible.
– One of the wheel sensors or another component may not be working.
– Snow chains interfere with the signals transmitted by the sensors and can prevent the system from functioning properly.
– The tyre pressure monitoring system may be inoperative due to radio interference.
– Radio systems operating on the same frequency, such as radio headphones or two-way radios inside the vehicle, produce strong electromagnetic fields which cause temporary interference.

The indicator lamp TPMS and the message will disappear as soon as the tyre pressure monitoring system is available again. If the fault persists and the indicator lamp TPMS stays on, you should drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇨ *page 320*.

Storing tyre pressures in the tyre pressure monitoring system

You should always store the tyre pressures if new sensors have been fitted or after changing the pressures, such as when carrying a different load. To enable the tyre pressure monitoring system to work reliably, it is important to store the correct pressure settings.

▸ Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇨ *page 317, Fig. 151*. Only adjust and store the pressure of the tyres when they are at approximately ambient temperature. If the tyre temperatures are higher than the ambient temperature, the pressures should be increased by approx. 0.2 bar above the pressures specified on the tyre pressure sticker.
▸ Switch the vehicle on.
▸ Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **Servicing** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Yes, store now**.
▸ If the new tyre pressures do not appear on the centre display, you will need to drive for about 10 minutes so that the sensor signal from the wheels can be received again.

During this initialisation phase, **-.-** will be shown on the pressure and temperature display and some functions of the tyre pressure monitoring system will not be available. The system will warn you only if one or more tyre pressures are below the minimum reference pressure.

(!) Tyre pressure: wheel change detected. Please check all tyres and store pressures in MMI

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message also appears, the system has detected that the sensor positions have changed because of a wheel change or that new sensors have been fitted. Store the new tyre pressures.

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇨ *page 320*.

Information on run-flat tyres

Run-flat tyres have reinforced sidewalls which protect the tyre in the event of a loss of pressure. They can be identified by the marking “AOE”, “RE0” or “R0E” on the sidewall.

If the tyre pressure loss indicator or the tyre pressure monitoring system shows a loss of pressure in one or more tyres, you can continue driving for at least 30 km if your vehicle is equipped with run-flat tyres. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the damage repaired.

The tyre pressure must be adjusted to the value listed on the tyre pressure sticker ⇨ *page 317, Fig. 151*.

The tyre repair kit ⇨ *page 332* can be used for run-flat tyres.

It is no longer possible to continue driving with run-flat tyres in the following situations:

– If damage to the tyres (e.g. tears in the sidewalls) becomes apparent.
– If severe vibrations occur, or if the tyre starts overheating and gives off smoke.
– If one of the tyres has been severely damaged in an accident, etc. In this case, there is a risk that parts of the tread may be thrown off and cause damage to important vehicle components.
– If the electronic stabilisation control (ESC) is out of operation or is triggered continuously.
– If the tyre pressure loss indicator is out of operation.

If you cannot continue driving, even with run-flat tyres, please seek professional assistance.

WARNING

– The unauthorised use of run-flat tyres can cause an accident or damage your vehicle. Ask your qualified workshop whether, and if so which, run-flat tyres can be used on your vehicle.
– The vehicle must have a suitable suspension system and a factory-fitted tyre pressure loss indicator.
– When using run-flat tyres, it is important that all four wheels have run-flat characteristics. Do not fit normal tyres in combination with run-flat tyres!
– If you cannot avoid driving the vehicle with a deflated tyre or with insufficient tyre pressure, observe the following:
  – Do not drive faster than 80 km/h – higher speeds can cause an accident. Please observe any other applicable laws in the country in which you are travelling.
  – Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering – risk of accident!
  – Vehicle handling could be impaired.
  – If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.
– Have damaged tyres replaced and the rims checked for damage by a qualified workshop.
– The driver remains responsible for the safety of the vehicle and for restoring the correct tyre pressure and having defective parts replaced. For these reasons you should always adjust your driving to suit the circumstances.

8B1012720AG

Care of vehicle and cleaning

Introduction

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The required car care products are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

– Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
– Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children.

Washing the vehicle

The longer residues like insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap or road salt are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, boot lid or bonnet, or the sunroof, tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors or camera lenses. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Plug-in hybrid drive: Do not point the spray jet at the clip wall mount.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows and roof are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Ensure that the car is free to roll while it is being washed in a tunnel car wash. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use a brushless car wash.

Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solvent-free cleaning agents.

Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the matt paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for matt-painted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft micro-fibre cloth.

Rinse the car with plenty of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois.

WARNING

– Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the vehicle when it is switched on – risk of accident!

▶

– To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.
– After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads – risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

CAUTION

– Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors.
– Compare the track width of your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails for the wheels in the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the wheel rims and tyres.
– Compare the height and width of your vehicle with the available height and width when entering and driving through the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the vehicle.
– Please ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance in tunnel car washes. The vehicle could otherwise become lodged on the guide rails – risk of damage!
– Improper use of high-pressure cleaners can cause damage to the vehicle. Never point a water jet at electric/electronic components when cleaning the engine compartment. These could be seriously damaged by the pressure or by exposure to water and could fail as a result.
– Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight – otherwise the paint can be damaged.
– The decals must not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner – risk of damage!
– Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
– Matt-painted vehicle parts:
  – Do not use polish or wax – otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
  – Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
  – Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.

For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

Information on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes ⇨ ⚠.

Cleaning the exterior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Wiper blades	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner
Headlights/ rear lights	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent[a)]
Sensors/ camera lenses	Dirt/deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent
	Snow/ice	Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free cleaning agent
Tailpipes	Road salt	Water; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a]; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Rubber seals	Dirt/deposits	Micro-fibre cloth with mild detergent[a]
	Frost	Protect the seals on the doors/bonnet/boot lid/flaps, etc. against freezing with suitable care products
Paintwork	Fuel overflow	Rinse with water without delay
	Surface rust	Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions
	Corrosion	Have it removed by your qualified workshop
	Water no longer pearls off clean paintwork	Apply wax (at least twice a year)
	Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing	Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent[a] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as painted parts
Decals	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent[a]
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent[a] and a soft cloth
	Fuel overflow	Remove immediately using a soft cloth and then with mild detergent[a] and a soft cloth
Audi e-tron charging system	Dirt/deposits	Soft, dry cloth
Clip wall mount	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent

[a] Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

Further information on cleaning the exterior:

– It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.

– Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.

– The decals undergo an ageing process (e.g. becoming brittle) due to various environmental factors. Excessive exposure to sunlight may cause irregularities in the colouring of the decals.

Cleaning the interior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Windows	Dirt/deposits	Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry
Trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)]
Plastic parts	Dirt/deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)]; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary
Displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed with a soft brush
Controls and displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent[a)]
Seat belts	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)] (allow to dry before retracting)
Fabrics, leatherette, microfibre	Surface dirt	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild detergent[a)]
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply mild detergent[a)], dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent[a)]

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Natural leather	Fresh dirt/stains	Cotton cloth with mild detergent[a)]
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather Dried stains: grease removal spray
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather
	Care of vehicle	Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as plastic parts

a) Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.

WARNING

- Never immerse the Audi e-tron charging system or the connectors in water.
- Only clean the Audi e-tron charging system when the operating unit is fully disconnected from the power grid and from the vehicle.

CAUTION

- **Headlights/rear lights**
  - Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge – risk of damage!
  - Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!
- **Wheels**
  - Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.
  - If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.
- **Camera lenses**
  - Never remove snow and ice from the camera lens using warm or hot water – danger of cracks appearing on the lens.
  - Never clean the camera lens with cleaning agents which are abrasive or contain alcohol – danger of scratches and cracks.
- **Windows and windscreen**
  - Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
  - Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
  - To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.
- **Ornamental trim/mouldings**
  - Do not use chrome cleaning agents.
- **Rubber seals**

  - Do not use solvent-based cleaning products – risk of damage!
- **Paintwork**
  - The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
  - Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
  - Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits – this can damage the paint!
  - Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
- **Decals**
  - Do not clean the decals with a high-pressure cleaner as this could cause them to come loose.
  - Do not use any powder-based or abrasive cleaning products – risk of damage!
  - Do not polish decals – risk of damage!
  - Do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice from windows to which decals have been applied – this could damage the decals.
- **Displays**
  - Before cleaning, ensure that the displays are switched off and cool.
  - The displays/instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth – this can scratch the surfaces!
  - Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!
- **Control consoles**
  - Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!
- **Seat belts**
  - Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
  - Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components – this can damage the belt webbing!
  - If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.
- **Fabrics/leatherette/microfibre**
  - Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/microfibre fabrics.
  - To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
  - Do not use the seat heating to dry the seats.
  - Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
  - Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.
- **Natural leather**
  - Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
  - Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
  - Do not use the seat heating to dry the seats.
  - Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.
- **Clip wall mount**
  - Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or fluids containing alcohol – risk of discolouration!

Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. They can give you advice on the measures necessary, depending on ▶

where and for how long the vehicle is to be kept out of service.

Mobility

Introduction

- If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- Put on your high-visibility vest.
- If applicable, set up the warning device used in your country correctly (e.g. warning triangle, warning light).
- Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

WARNING

Please note the procedure described above. This is for your own safety and that of other road users.

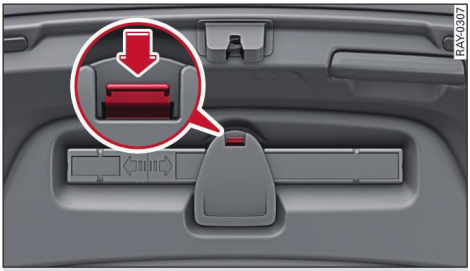
Equipment

High-visibility vest

The factory-supplied high-visibility vests are located in the storage compartment in the front left door.

In some countries, the high-visibility vests may be stowed elsewhere.

Warning triangle



Applies to: Saloon
Fig. 152 Boot lid: Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is attached to the inside of the boot lid.

Applies to: Saloon

- To remove the warning triangle, push the tab in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇨ *Fig. 152* and pull the retainer down.

Applies to: Avant

- Pull the warning triangle out of the retainer.

The retainer on the boot lid is specifically designed to hold the warning triangle supplied as an Audi Genuine Accessory.

WARNING

Always stow the warning triangle safely in the plastic case after use and secure it in the holder. Otherwise it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

Warning light

If supplied with the vehicle, the warning light is stored in the glove box.

First-aid kit

The first-aid kit is located behind the storage net in the luggage compartment. If required, the storage net can be pushed down along the guide rails on the sides.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the first-aid kit may be stowed elsewhere.

Fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is accommodated in the front passenger's footwell.

In some countries, the fire extinguisher may be stowed elsewhere.

Information for the Republic of Korea: The fire extinguisher is stowed in a bag in the luggage compartment. The fire extinguisher must be stowed in the bag again after use, and secured to the fastening rings. ▶

The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.

- Open the strap to remove the fire extinguisher.
- To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the strap.

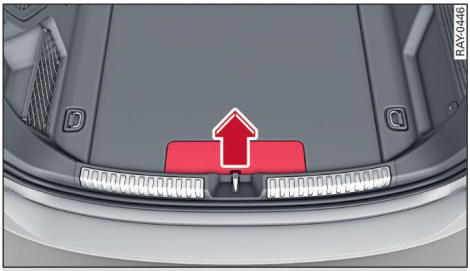
Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be replaced with a new one after use or once it has reached its expiry date.

WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

Vehicle toolkit/tyre repair kit



Applies to: mild hybrid drive or plug-in hybrid drive
Fig. 153 Luggage compartment: Floor panel

Applies to: mild hybrid drive or plug-in hybrid drive
Fig. 154 Left footwell: Storage compartment

The tools and the tyre repair kit are stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the tyre sealant container may be stored behind the left storage net in the luggage compartment.

- Take hold of the handle and fold back the floor panel.
- Applies to mild hybrid drive or plug-in hybrid drive: The tools are stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment. The tyre repair kit is stored in the footwell in front of the left seat. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the tyre sealant container is located behind the left storage net or in the transport bag for the charging cable.
- Applies to mild hybrid drive or plug-in hybrid drive: Remove the floor mat in front of the left seat.
- Applies to mild hybrid drive or plug-in hybrid drive: Open the cover ⇨ *Fig. 154* to take out the tyre repair kit.

WARNING

Always make sure that the floor mat is properly secured – risk of accident!

Tyre repair kit

Preparing to repair a tyre

- Please refer to the important safety information ⇨ *page 331*.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit ⇨ *page 332*.

Using the tyre repair kit

Fig. 155 Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws ▶

and regulations. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to – 20 °C.

The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:

– On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm ① ⇨ *Fig. 155*.
– If the wheel rim has been damaged ②.
– If you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre ③.

In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

Information on the tyre repair kit

If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.

Please note the expiry date on the tyre sealant container. If necessary, have the tyre sealant replaced by a qualified workshop.

Interference to the radio reception may occur when using the compressor.

WARNING

– Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and should only be used as a temporary measure.
– Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
– If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
– Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes.
– If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical assistance immediately.
– Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
– If any allergic reactions should occur, seek medical assistance immediately.
– Keep the sealant away from children.
– After using the tyre sealant, the tyre pressure monitoring system may malfunction or display incorrect values. Therefore, please drive carefully to the next available qualified workshop.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 360, Information on waste disposal*.

Tyre repairs

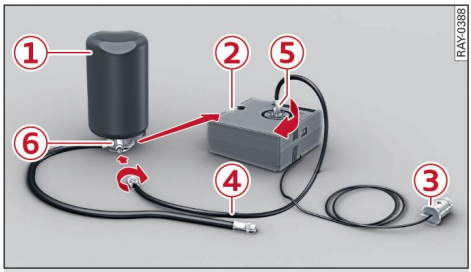


Fig. 156 Components of the tyre repair kit

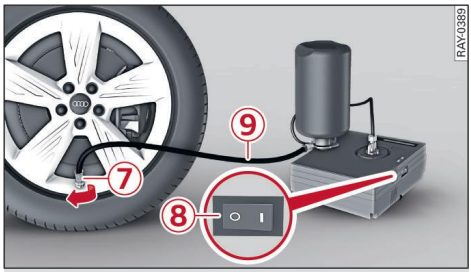


Fig. 157 Connecting the tyre repair kit

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use ⇨ *page 332*.

Setting up the tyre repair kit

▸ Take the connector ③ and the compressor hose ④ out from the bottom of the housing. ▶

- Screw one end of the compressor hose ④ clockwise into the socket ⑤ on the compressor[1]. Screw the other end onto the flange ⑥ of the tyre sealant container ①.
- Place the tyre sealant container (flange facing down) into the opening ② on the compressor.
- Unscrew the dust cap from the valve of the damaged tyre.
- Screw the filler hose ⑨ onto the valve ⑦ ⇨ *Fig. 157*.
- Insert the connector ③ ⇨ *Fig. 156* into a socket in the vehicle.
- Switch on the ignition.

Inflating the tyre

- Move the switch ⑧ ⇨ *Fig. 157* on the compressor to position **I**.
- Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
- Do not use the compressor for longer than 10 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.
- If this tyre pressure cannot be reached, remove the filler hose. Drive 10 metres forward or backward at low speed so the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Please observe the manufacturer's safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant container.
– If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within 10 minutes, this means that the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
– Seek professional assistance if it is not possible to repair a tyre puncture with the sealant.

Completing the tyre repair

- Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is included in the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
- After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant container at a qualified workshop.

WARNING

After repairing a tyre please note the following points:
– Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
– Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
– Vehicle handling could be impaired.
– If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.

For the sake of the environment

A used tyre sealant container can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.

Changing a wheel

Preparing to change wheels

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required. Audi recommends having the wheel changed by a qualified workshop.

Commercially available tools, such as a jack and box spanner, are required for the wheel change. These should be placed within reach before starting the work.

- Please refer to the important safety information ⇨ *page 331*.
- Apply the parking brake.
- If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle. ▶

[1] Even if the compressor in your vehicle looks slightly different, it will be operated in much the same way.

▸ Switch off the ignition.

WARNING

When using a jack, block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of the wheel to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Removing the wheel bolt caps

Fig. 158 Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

▸ Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle toolkit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇨ *Fig. 158*.
▸ Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

Detaching aero trim

Fig. 159 Wheel: Aero trim

Removing

▸ Insert the hook (provided in the vehicle toolkit) in the hole in one of the sections of the aero trim and pull on the section to release the clips ⇨ *Fig. 159*.
▸ Release the remaining sections one at a time.
▸ Then release the centre of the aero trim.
▸ Remove the aero trim.

Installing

▸ Press first one section and then the remaining sections into the mounting.
▸ Press the centre into the mounting.
▸ Check whether the aero trim is flush with the rim.

CAUTION

Make sure that the aero trim is secured properly so that it does not fall off while you are driving.

Removing anti-theft wheel bolts

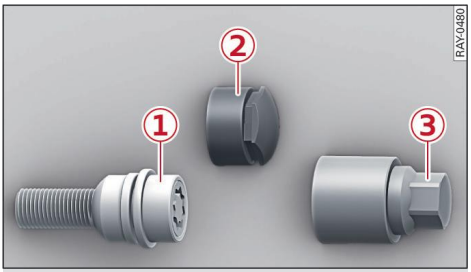


Fig. 160 Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To remove the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle toolkit).

▸ Remove the cap ②.
▸ Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ①.
▸ Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the adapter ③.
▸ Loosen the wheel bolt ⇨ *page 336*.

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

Loosening wheel bolts

Fig. 161 Wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

- Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the wheel bolt[1].
- Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clockwise. To apply the necessary torque, hold the box spanner near the end. If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

WARNING

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack.

Raising the vehicle

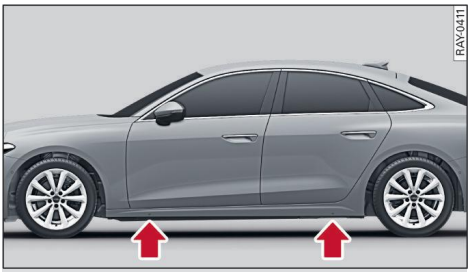


Fig. 162 Sills: markings

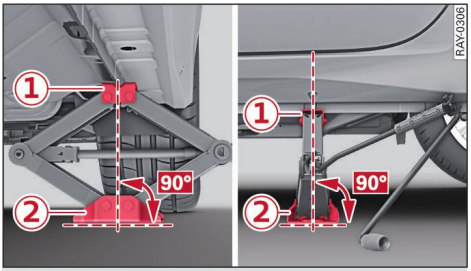


Fig. 163 Door sill: Applying the jack under the door sill

- Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.
- Locate the marking on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇨ *Fig. 162*. The jacking point is located behind the marking on the door sill.
- Raise the vehicle using the jack until the wheel is slightly clear of the ground.

WARNING

– Ensure that no one is in the vehicle before you lift it – risk of injury!
– Make sure the jack is stable. If the ground underneath the jack is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in – risk of injury!
– Apply the jack only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
– Never switch on the power unit when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!
– Do not work under the vehicle when it is on the jack – risk of injury!

CAUTION

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills. Only apply the jack at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

[1] An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts ⇨ *page 335*.

Taking off / putting on a wheel

Taking off the wheel

- Unscrew the slackened wheel bolts using the box spanner and place them on a clean surface.
- Take off the wheel ⇨ (!).

Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to ⇨ *page 337*.

- Ensure that the wheel bolts and threads on the wheel hubs are clean, turn easily and are free of oil and grease.
- Position the wheel on the hub.
- Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly.
- Carefully lower the car with the jack.
- Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner.

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes on ⇨ *page 315*.

CAUTION

When removing/fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Using tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

Finishing the tyre change

- Fit the wheel bolt caps back on, as required.
- Put the tools and jack back in their correct storage location.
- Stow the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 90*.
- Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- Adjust the tyre pressures and store them on the centre display ⇨ *page 320* or ⇨ *page 322*.
- The wheel bolts should be tightened to 140 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Jump-starting

Important information on jump-starting

Vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

For technical reasons, the vehicle cannot be jump-started or used to jump-start another vehicle. Depending on the situation, you have various options:

- If the doors can be opened without the manual release function, you can attempt to recharge your vehicle with a charger ⇨ *page 310*. You can restart your vehicle after it has been charged successfully. Otherwise, contact a qualified workshop or have the vehicle towed away.
- If the doors can no longer be opened without the manual release function, contact a qualified workshop or have the vehicle towed away.

CAUTION

The vehicle battery must not be supplied with power via conventional jump leads using the charging points in the engine compartment.

– The vehicle must not be jump-started and must not be used to jump-start other vehicles; otherwise serious damage to electronic components may result.
– Seek professional assistance.

Measures if the vehicle is without electrical power

Please observe the following if the vehicle is locked and without electrical power:

– Releasing the driver's door manually ⇨ *page 44, Unlocking the driver's door manually if the 12-volt vehicle battery is flat*.
– Releasing the boot lid manually ⇨ *page 55, Releasing the boot lid manually*.

Introduction

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.

If the drive system cannot be activated because the 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged, you can use another vehicle to jump-start the 12-volt vehicle battery. Suitable jump leads are required.

Both vehicle batteries must be rated at 12 volts. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current. Refer to the details given by the manufacturer.

Only use jump leads with insulated battery clamps.

Positive cable – usually red.

Negative cable – usually black.

WARNING

– When it is discharged the vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. A frozen vehicle battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads – risk of explosion and chemical burns! After jump-starting the vehicle, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.
– Note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 295*.
– Incorrect handling of the jump leads may result in the vehicle battery exploding (risk of serious injury).

CAUTION

– If the jump leads are not connected correctly this can result in serious damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
– Do **not** use your vehicle to jump-start another vehicle. This would cause serious damage to your vehicle's electrical system.

Jump-starting the vehicle

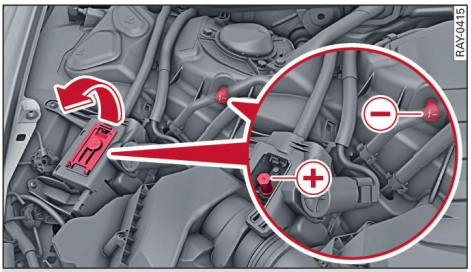


Fig. 164 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

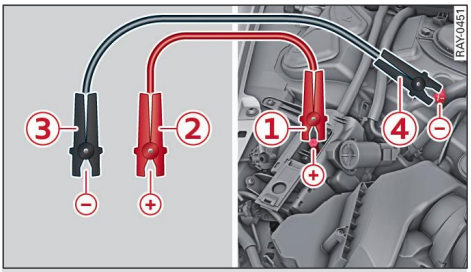


Fig. 165 Connecting jump leads

The terminals for the jump leads are located in the engine compartment.

Please observe the general information on the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 307*.

Preparing a jump-start

▸ Ensure there is sufficient space between the two vehicles as otherwise current could flow as ▶

soon as the positive terminals are connected. This would discharge the boosting battery.
- Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.
- Open the bonnet.
- Connect the two jump leads in the correct sequence.
- Connect the jump leads so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

Connecting the positive terminals with the positive lead (red)

- Open the cap on the positive terminal ⇨ *Fig. 164*.

1. Connect one end of the positive lead (red) to the jump-start connection (1) ⇨ *Fig. 165* on your vehicle.
2. Connect the other end of the positive lead (red) to the positive terminal (2) on the power source.

Connecting the negative terminals with the negative lead (black)

3. Connect one end of the negative lead (black) to the negative terminal (3) on the power source.
4. Connect the other end of the negative lead (black) to the jump-start connection (4) on your vehicle.

Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle providing the electricity and let it run at idling speed.
- Now start the engine of your vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine fails to start: do not operate the starter for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and try again.
- Switch on the rear window heating on your vehicle (this will dissipate any voltage peaks which may occur when you disconnect the jump leads). The headlights must be switched off.
- With the engines running, disconnect the leads in the opposite sequence to how they were connected.
- Close the cap on the positive terminal.
- Contact a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.

Notes on jump starting

If jump starting the vehicle was unsuccessful, seek professional assistance.

WARNING

– Jump leads must never be connected directly to the battery on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the engine compartment.
– The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle: this can cause short circuits.
– The sealing caps on the battery cells must not be opened.
– Keep sparks, flames and lit cigarettes away from vehicle batteries: the gases given off can cause an explosion.
– Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment of the other vehicle.

CAUTION

Please note that the above method of connecting the leads is intended for jump-starting your vehicle.

Towing away

Introduction

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.

Towing requires some experience. Audi recommends contacting a towing service to have the vehicle taken away.

You should only have your broken-down vehicle towed away by another vehicle in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Switch the following assist systems off if the vehicle is being loaded onto a car transporter, train, ferry, etc. or being towed away: ▶

– Active front assist
– Rear turn assist
– Emergency assist
– Speed limiter / predictive speed limiter

This prevents the respective system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.

Information on towing vehicles

– The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.
– The vehicle must not be towed further than 50 km.

Plug-in hybrid drive: The vehicle must be transported with all wheels off the ground by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter.

Additional note on towing by breakdown truck

The vehicle must be transported with all wheels off the ground by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter. Contact a towing service. Do not wrap any kind of chain or rope around the brake lines.

Tow-bar / tow-rope

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing, particularly if a tow-rope is used.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

WARNING

– There is a high risk of accidents when towing, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.
– There must not be anyone in the vehicle if it vehicle is taken away by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter – risk of accident!
– Never secure the tow-bar or tow-rope to any part of the vehicle's axles or suspension as these could be damaged and lead to accidents and severe injuries.

CAUTION

– If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.
– For technical reasons, the vehicle must not be tow-started.

Towing away

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇨ *page 339*.

Preparations

▸ Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇨ *page 341*, ⇨ *page 341*.
▸ Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise unscrew the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
▸ The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on ⇨ *page 62*. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

Towing vehicle (front)

▸ Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you drive off.
▸ Accelerate with particular care.
▸ Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

▸ Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would.
▸ Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 117*. ▶

- Select transmission position N.
- Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

WARNING

– If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle.
– If the power supply should fail while the vehicle is being towed, stop towing immediately and seek professional assistance.

Fitting the front towline anchorage

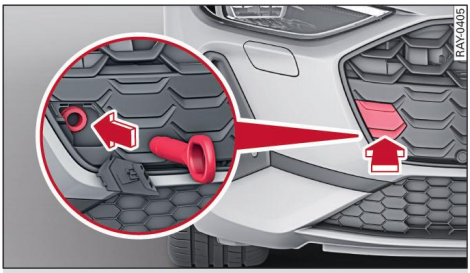


Fig. 166 Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage (version 1)

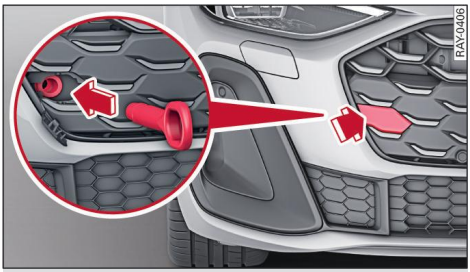


Fig. 167 Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage (version 2)

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located on the right side of the front bumper.

- Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 332*.
- Firmly press the cap inwards ⇨ *Fig. 166*/⇨ *Fig. 167*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle toolkit after use.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

Fitting the rear towline anchorage

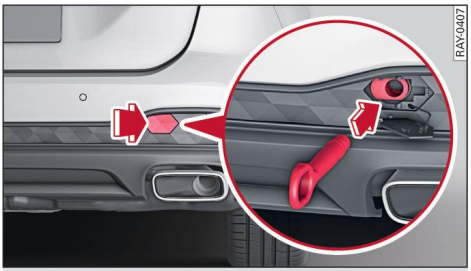


Fig. 168 Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

Vehicles with towline anchorage

Vehicles which do not have a factory-fitted towing bracket have a connection for a towline anchorage on the right side of the rear bumper.

- Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 332*.
- Firmly press the cap inwards briefly ⇨ *Fig. 168*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle toolkit after use.

Vehicles with towing bracket

- Swivel out the towing bracket ⇨ *page 151*.
- Attach the tow-bar or the tow-rope to the towing bracket. ▶

Vehicles which have a factory-fitted towing bracket do **not** have a screw connection at the rear for the towline anchorage.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the towing bracket, only use tow-bars with suitable attachments. If a tow-bar is not available, a tow-rope may be used.

Fuses and bulbs

Changing fuses

Changing a fuse

Procedure

Fuses are located throughout the vehicle, for example in the engine compartment, in the front cabin and in the luggage compartment.

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.

- ▸ Switch off the vehicle and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Refer to the fuse layout tables to identify the fuse for the affected component.
- ▸ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▸ If fitted, pull the coloured plastic frame out of the fuse carrier.
- ▸ Take the clip from inside the respective fuse box.
- ▸ Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- ▸ Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same ampere rating.
- ▸ Attach the plastic frame again if removed earlier.
- ▸ Put the cover back on.

Colour coding for fuses

Colour	Rating in amperes
black	1
grey	2
purple	3
pink	4
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red (narrow)	10
light blue	15
yellow	20
white or transparent	25
light green	30
blue-green	35
orange	40
red (wide)	50

Information on the tables

- The tables show the fuse assignment in each fuse box.
- The tables only include the fuses that you can replace yourself. If any other fuses need to be replaced, please contact a qualified workshop.
- Free fuse locations are not shown in the tables.
- Some of the listed items of equipment are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

WARNING

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a different ampere rating. This could damage the electrical system – risk of fire!

CAUTION

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Fuse layout in the front cabin

Fig. 169 Front cabin (driver's side): Cover and clip on back of cover

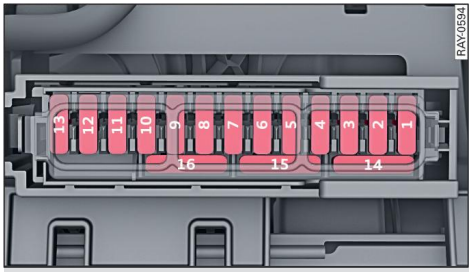


Fig. 170 Front cabin (driver's side): Fuse carrier ▸

The fuse allocation on RHD vehicles is a mirror image.

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Background lighting
2	Chip card reader
3	Interior air sensors
4	Head-up display
7	Steering column lock
8	Passenger display
9	Panoramic display
12	Steering column electronics
15	Steering column adjustment
16	Heating for steering wheel

Fuse layout in the footwell

Fig. 171 Left footwell: cover

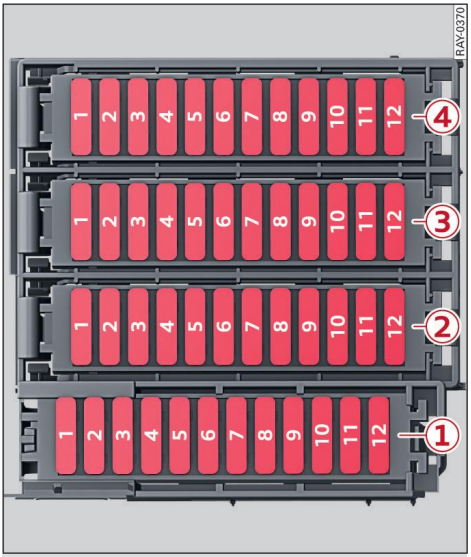


Fig. 172 Right footwell: fuse carrier

Fuse carrier ① (black)	
No.	**Electrical equipment**
1	Thermal management, coolant pump for high-voltage battery
2	Thermal management
3	High-voltage heater, thermal management
4	Thermal management sensors
5	Air conditioner
6	Thermal management
7	Control unit for low-voltage power distribution, starter relay, electric drive
8	Electrical system control unit, diagnostic connection, interior mirror, front seat electronics
9	Rear USB connections

Fuse carrier ② (beige)	
No.	**Electrical equipment**
1	Emergency call and communication control unit
2	High-voltage battery
3	Airbag
4	Left headlight

Fuse carrier ② (beige)	
5	Control unit for drive system and running gear
6	Central control unit for driver assist systems
7	Right headlight
8	Wipers
9	Radar sensors at the front corners of the vehicle
10	Diagnostic connection
11	Door control unit, front left
12	Door control unit, rear left

Fuse carrier ③ (black)	
No.	**Electrical equipment**
1	Automatic gearbox
2	Air conditioning system, thermal management
3	Interior lighting, parking aid
4	Four-wheel drive
5	Gear oil cooler
6	Air conditioner compressor
7	Dash panel
8	Light sensor/rain sensor
9	Control unit for convenience access
10	Drive system control unit
11	Driver assist system sensors
12	Belt tensioners (front passenger's side)

Fuse carrier ④ (white)	
No.	**Electrical equipment**
1	Garage door opener
2	Starter relay, voltage converter
3	Auxiliary heater, electronic toll collection system (ETC)
4	Headlight washer system, seat heating
5	Camera behind the windscreen
6	Central locking system
7	Horn, anti-theft alarm system
8	Phone compartment with inductive charging function
9	Radiator fan

Fuse carrier ④ (white)	
10	Belt tensioners (driver's side)
11	External sound generator
12	Control unit for adaptive cruise control

Fuse layout in the luggage compartment

Fig. 173 Luggage compartment, left side: cover

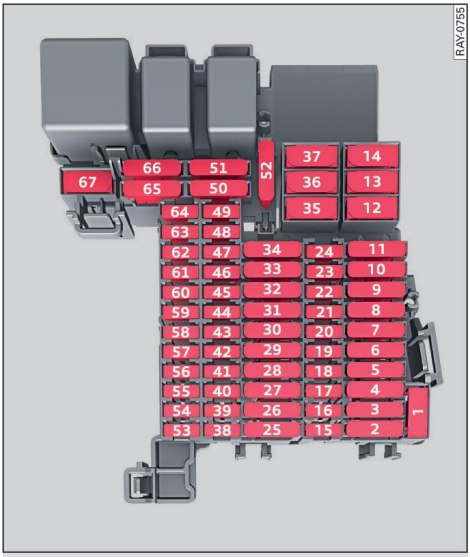


Fig. 174 Luggage compartment, left side: Fuse carrier

On some models, the fuses may be covered by wiring. Push the wiring carefully to the side to change the fuses underneath.

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Rear window heating
5	Central control unit for convenience system
6	Towing bracket (left lights)

No.	Electrical equipment
7	Rear right door control unit
8	Central control unit for convenience system
9	Emergency cut-out connection for high-voltage battery
10	Towing bracket (right lights)
11	Door control unit, front right
12	Anti-lock brake system (ABS), electronic stabilisation control (ESC)
17	Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
18	Door control unit (driver's side)
19	Door control unit (passenger's side)
20	Driver activity sensor
21	Control unit for adaptive cruise control
22	Dashcam
23	Roof electronics
24	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
25	Rear air conditioner control console
26	Emission control system, control console for battery charging
27	Anti-theft alarm system
28	All-wheel drive coupling
29	Electrical socket for towing bracket
30	Control unit for driver assist systems
32	Infotainment system
33	Central control unit for convenience system
34	Central control unit for convenience system, sockets
35	Differential lock
37	Sound system
39	Interior lighting, background lighting
40	Selector lever
41	Boot lid control unit
42	Control unit for access and start authorisation
43	Surround view camera control unit
44	Tyre pressure loss indicator
45	MMI control dial

No.	Electrical equipment
46	Power and control electronics for electric drive
47	Control unit for charging flap and charging socket
51	Engine components
52	USB connections
55	High-voltage battery
57	Powertrain generator
58	Door control unit
59	Control unit for data exchange and telematics
60	Centre console switch module
62	48 V battery, electric drive system
63	Towing bracket release
65	Rear seat heating
66	Sound system

Changing a bulb

Information on changing bulbs

Your vehicle is fitted with maintenance-free headlights and rear lights. Please contact your Audi dealer or qualified workshop if a light source does not work.

Data protection

Information on data protection

Further information can be found online on your regional Audi site or the MMI in your vehicle.

Select: ⊞ > **Legal**.

Image recording

Data protection for detection of vehicle surroundings

Certain assisted vehicle functions require the detection and evaluation of the path travelled by the vehicle and the surrounding area. For this purpose, permanently installed cameras detect objects in the area in which the vehicle is moving (e.g. obstacles, barriers). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the relevant control unit to be processed. The control unit analyses the current image from the camera using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software determines anonymous technical dimensions, such as the distance to objects. This control unit evaluates these technical dimensions and may allow the assist systems to control the vehicle.

If the front assist system, for example, detects certain system events, the camera images of the vehicle surroundings may be stored [1]. The length of the recording is limited to a very short time. The stored data are encrypted and can only be read out by a qualified workshop.

Data protection for the driver availability camera[2]

The driver availability camera's field of view covers the driver's head and evaluates the driver's readiness to drive. It cannot be directed at any other areas in the vehicle (e.g. front passenger's seat).

You can switch the driver availability camera on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 164*.

The images from the camera are not recorded or stored. They are immediately transmitted to the relevant control unit in the vehicle for processing. The control unit analyses the current image from the camera using image evaluation software. The image evaluation software determines technical values for human facial features (e.g. position of the head, nose and ears; direction in which the eyes are looking) and uses them to evaluate the driver's readiness to drive based on factors such as the detected vitality, activity and level of visual distraction. The image detection software may be able to detect whether the driver is unconscious or asleep. The technical values generated by the image evaluation software are abstract and anonymous. They are not assigned to a person's name and cannot be used to reconstruct the driver's face.

To enable detection of driver availability to be reactivated as soon as possible after a break in the journey, the technical values are stored in a small section of the memory in the responsible control unit. Once the memory of the responsible control unit is full, the older technical values are overwritten by the most recent values.

Memory

Information on vehicle control units

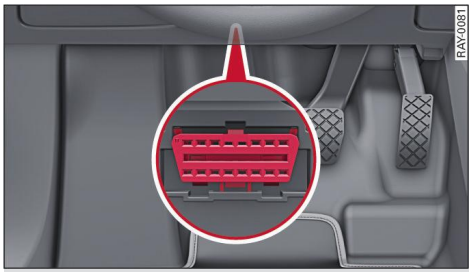


Fig. 175 Driver footwell: connection socket for the on-board diagnostic system

[1] May not be available depending on the country.

[2] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

Vehicle control units

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control units for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. During normal driving, these vehicle control units store data which workshops require for diagnosis and repairs. Data in the vehicle can be recorded and stored for a certain period. No sounds, conversations or images from the vehicle are stored.

The data may be related e.g. to the vehicle's speed, direction of travel and brake system, or to the behaviour of the restraint systems in the event of an accident. Reading out and downloading the stored data requires special devices that must be connected directly to the vehicle.

Diagnostic system

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out various control units and the event memory located in the driver's footwell. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

– Improper use of the connection socket for the diagnostic system can lead to malfunctions which could result in accidents and serious injuries.
– Only have the data read out by a qualified workshop.

Information on the event data recorder

Event data recorder

Your vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of the EDR is to make it possible to reconstruct how the systems in the vehicle behave in accident situations. To this end, the EDR stores relevant data (e.g. seat belt status, speed, airbag parameters, time of accident etc.) pertaining to a period of a few seconds before an accident. This only occurs in accident or near-accident situations.

These data can help to better understand the circumstances in which accidents and injury occur.

Please note that data from your vehicle will only be stored in the event of an accident or a near-accident situation. No data will be stored in normal driving conditions. Furthermore, no personal data on the occupants or the accident location will be stored. It is possible, however, that third parties, e.g. law enforcement agencies, may correlate the stored data with personal data as part of an accident investigation.

Reading out data from the EDR memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the EDR. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Audi will not access the recorder remotely.

Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an assist system monitor (ASM). The ASM records data that are not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main purpose of the ASM is to make it possible to reconstruct the role and behaviour of driver assist systems in accident situations. In addition to the data stored by the EDR, the ASM stores data related to the driver assist systems from a period of a few seconds before an accident or near-accident situation. The data recorded by the ASM will depend on the vehicle's equipment and may comprise information such as: status information from the driver assist systems (e.g. switched on/off, system events), regulating input (e.g. from ESC, ABS) and driver assist system settings (e.g. speed settings).

Reading out data from the ASM memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the ASM. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the ASM.

Use of data

Audi can read out or provide third parties with the information stored in the data recorders or other similar data in the following circumstances in particular: ▶

– If the vehicle keeper or lessee gives their permission; or
– If the police have made an official request; or
– If ordered to do so by a court of law or government agency.

Audi may, insofar as this is legally permitted, also use the data for analysis with respect to vehicle operation and safety performance, or may provide the data to third parties for research purposes.

Memory for automated driving[1)]

Data are stored in a memory in the vehicle while driving and parking functions are in use. The data are encrypted and are continuously overwritten by more recent data every few seconds. The data are deleted when the vehicle is switched off.

In certain situations, for instance if an airbag has been deployed or a parking manoeuvre has been completed, the corresponding technical data are stored in the memory for automated driving. This memory is a read-only memory with limited storage capacity. When the memory is full, the oldest data are overwritten by the most recent data.

Exporting data

You can retrieve the data from the memory for automated driving and export the data to a USB stick. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, the specified functions must not be active and the vehicle must be switched on. A USB stick must be connected to the USB input.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **More** > **Data management** > **Export automated driving data**.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the MMI.

The export will be aborted if, for instance, you switch to a different menu.

Recorded data

Depending on the country, the following data may be recorded and encrypted:

– Driver interaction (e.g. driver applies brakes)
– Vehicle dynamics (e.g. road speed)
– System status
– Control requests
– Relevant measurements from detection of surroundings
– Image data from surround view cameras
– System status, time stamp and vehicle position when each of the functions were activated/deactivated

Further information can be found online in the data protection section of your regional Audi site or on the MMI:

– Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **More** > **Data management** > **Data protection notes**.

Further information

– The processing and storage of the data is performed locally in the vehicle. There is no automatic transmission of data to Audi or other third parties (e.g. cloud-based). Data ownership remains with the holder or driver of the vehicle. Audi cannot access the data.
– For further information and evaluation of the data, please contact Audi customer support.

Privacy settings

Introduction

When using online services, data from your vehicle is transmitted to Audi. Data can be transmitted to service providers if this is necessary for the respective online service. Only the data necessary for the online services is transmitted.

Online services may process and transmit personal and location data, as well as enable remote vehicle access.

You can manage the privacy settings for online services in the privacy settings. Services ▶

[1)] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

deactivated in the vehicle cannot be activated by remote access.

Managing and checking privacy settings in the vehicle

Important: The vehicle must be switched on.

- To adjust the central privacy settings, select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Privacy** > **Vehicle-related online services**.
- To adjust the settings for vehicle-related online services, select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Privacy** > **Vehicle-related online services** > **Overview of services**.
- To adjust the settings for infotainment services, select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Privacy** > **Vehicle-related online services** > **Overview of services** > **Installed infotainment services**. Press on the corresponding button to display all apps.
- To view detailed information in the menus, press ⓘ or ▷ on the MMI.

Privacy settings are loaded based on the user. Privacy settings are always the driver's responsibility.

Effects of privacy settings

Your vehicle is equipped with the following online services: Vehicle-related online services and infotainment services. These online services can send data from the vehicle to Audi or service providers if this is necessary for the respective online service.

If the **Mobile data** function is switched off, the vehicle-related online services will be deactivated. The infotainment services themselves remain active, but the sending of data from the vehicle is deactivated. This has the following effects:

– Data will continue to be processed locally in your vehicle.
– Local data that has been stored offline can be sent from the vehicle once the **Mobile data** function has been switched on.

You have the following options if you wish to prevent these effects:

– You can set and deactivate individual infotainment services.
– You can select a local user.

Further effects of the mobile data function

When **Mobile data** is switched off in the privacy settings, your vehicle will not receive safety updates or certificates for establishing an encrypted connection, depending on the vehicle equipment. To receive safety updates and certificates, switch the function on at least once a year for at least two minutes. Ensure that your vehicle is connected to the internet.

Effects on certain online services

Changes to the privacy settings do not or only have a small impact on certain online services.

To display the list of these online services, select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Privacy settings** > **Vehicle-related online services** > **Further information**.

Effects on certain data interfaces

Changes to the privacy settings do not impact all data interfaces.

If available, the following wireless interfaces are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi, Near Field Communication (NFC), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC), Integrated Toll Module (ITM), if fitted.

If available, the following wired data transmission options are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: USB, charging communication (high-voltage system), diagnostic system or on-board diagnosis (OBD).

CAUTION

Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used, for example, to connect to the internet via the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.

Information on data collection

Depending on the country, Audi can access the vehicle and collect data for the following purposes, for example:
– Data collection for research and development
– Data collection for statistics, analyses and reporting purposes
– Data collection for personalised assessments

The data collected and sent to Audi for these purposes may include, for example, various data regarding technical functions, environmental data, driving data and usage data. The data are sent from the vehicle at the time they are collected.

Further information on data collection can be found on the MMI. Select: ⊞ > **Legal**.

If you wish to change the data collection settings, please contact an Audi dealer for further information. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to change the data collection settings in the privacy settings.

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Maintenance, repairs and modifications to the vehicle

Please read the safety information ⇨ *page 295, Safety information on the engine compartment* and ⇨ *page 336, Raising the vehicle*.

Introduction

Your vehicle was designed to require as little maintenance as possible. However, a certain amount of regular servicing work is necessary to ensure that your vehicle remains safe, cost-efficient and reliable. Please contact a qualified workshop for precise information on vehicle maintenance.

The increasing complexity of vehicle technology and the applicable safety and environmental regulations mean that your options for performing repairs and making adjustments to your vehicle yourself are very limited.

Proof of servicing may be a condition for a claim within the guarantee/warranty period to remain valid.

Certain servicing work should also be performed between the specified intervals in severe operating conditions, such as extremely low temperatures or in areas with a high dust concentration.

Maintenance and repairs

Special tools, measurement instruments and other workshop equipment available to qualified workshop staff are usually required for servicing work or repairs. These guarantee that your vehicle and all its systems will function properly and be both reliable and safe. If work is not performed correctly, this may affect the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may even invalidate any claims you may wish to make under the guarantee/warranty.

Have work on your vehicle performed by a qualified workshop. This will help ensure that the functions, performance and safety of your vehicle are not impaired.

Risks of technical changes

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components, software, wiring or data transfer in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, systems which are not directly affected may also be impaired by the faults. This can seriously impair your vehicle's safety and lead to excessive wear of its components.

Further information on technical changes

Depending on the country, making technical changes may invalidate the vehicle's type approval. Qualified workshops have full information on the manufacturer-approved repair methods. They can also give advice regarding official regulations for the vehicle.

Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any functions are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual may no longer be relevant for the functions that have been changed. Audi recommends having the reprogramming carried out and approved by a qualified workshop.

Further information on working according to the specifications of the Audi factory

Because of your vehicle's aluminium body concept, all servicing, repairs or other work on the car body must be carried out by an Audi workshop or a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. This ensures that the necessary repairs or servicing are performed properly and that only Audi Genuine Parts are installed on your vehicle. Serious damage (e.g. corrosion damage) can be caused to your vehicle if non-genuine replacement parts or accessories are used or if repairs are not performed properly.

WARNING

– There is a risk of accident if servicing work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle are not performed properly The functioning of the airbags, the driver assist systems and the vehicle may be impaired. Have ▶

work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.
– The is a risk of accident if work on the vehicle is not performed properly. Serious injuries may occur as a result. Have work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.
– Please read the safety information on the engine compartment ⇨ *page 295*.

CAUTION

– If servicing work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle (e.g. installation of additional parts) are not performed properly, this can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. corrosion).
– If emergency repairs have been performed, have your vehicle checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
– Audi cannot assume any liability for damage to the vehicle caused due to these conditions not being adhered to.

For the sake of the environment

– You can play your part in looking after the environment through regular vehicle maintenance.
– Technical modifications to the vehicle can have an adverse effect on energy consumption.

Accessories and replacement parts

Introduction

Take advice from a qualified workshop before purchasing accessories and replacement parts.

Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Parts and Audi accessories. Audi cannot judge the reliability and suitability of products that are not Audi Genuine Parts or assume responsibility for them, even if they have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or by the relevant authorities.

Have all work performed by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends having all work performed by a qualified Audi workshop.

Any **retrofitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the control of the vehicle must bear the approval symbols for the respective countries (e.g. **e** mark in the European Union) and must be approved for use in your vehicle.

Any **additional electrical equipment** which is connected, but which does not serve to control the vehicle itself, must bear the declarations of conformity for the respective countries (e.g. the CE symbol in the European Union). Examples of such equipment include refrigerator boxes, computers or ventilator fans.

Transmitters

An external aerial installed properly is required in order to operate radio transmitters inside the vehicle. If this is not the case, the increased electromagnetic radiation can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Please observe the relevant local regulations and follow the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Qualified workshops will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters.

WARNING

– The use of non-approved accessories or the wrong replacement parts can cause damage to the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Never secure accessories (such as telephone brackets or cup holders) on airbag cover panels or in the areas around the airbags; this could cause injury if the airbag is triggered.
– When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.

Position for a toll device on the windscreen

Commercially available, radio-based equipment (such as toll devices) can be attached to the ▶

inside of the windscreen to the right of the interior mirror base. The surface must be clean and free of dust and grease.

- Applies to vehicles with heat-resistant glass: Attach the sticker approx. 6 cm away from the top edge of the glass and approx. 1 cm to the right of the black dot matrix pattern.
- Applies to vehicles with windscreen heating or insulated glass: Attach the sticker to the window panel provided.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be found at the following locations, depending on your country:

– Select: ⊞ > **Car** > **More** > **Keys and VIN**
– At the front of the vehicle underneath the windscreen
– Stamped on the right side of the engine compartment

Type plate

Vehicles have a type plate in certain countries. The type plate is bonded onto the right door frame.

Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets may vary due to special equipment as well as different country versions and test methods. The details listed in the vehicle's registration documents therefore always have priority.

In cases where technical data are not listed, the figures were not available at time of publication.

Technical data for Republic of Korea

You can view the technical data for the Republic of Korea on the following website: www.audi.co.kr.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	Length (mm)	Width (mm)	Width across mirrors (mm)	Height, unladen (mm)
A5 Avant	4829 – 4835	1860	2099	1424 – 1478
A5 Saloon	4829 – 4835	1860	2099	1410 – 1463
S5 Avant	4829 – 4835	1860	2099	1424 – 1476
S5 Saloon	4829 – 4835	1860	2099	1410 – 1461

Capacities

	Approximate capacities (litres)
Fuel tank[a)]	46 / 56 / 60[b)]
AdBlue tank[c)]	20
Windscreen washer system	4.6 / 4.7[b)]
Windscreen/headlight washer system	4.6 / 4.7[b)]

a) The amount of fuel that can be added is lower than the full capacity due to remaining fuel in the tank.

b) The values depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

c) The capacity may be larger for technical reasons when filling from a canister. The capacity may be smaller for technical reasons in cold ambient conditions.

8B1012720AG

Weights

Roof load

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings

The maximum permissible roof load is 90 kg.

Kerb weight, gross vehicle weight, axle loads

The vehicle's kerb weight including the driver (75 kg) was calculated in accordance with EU regulation 1230/2012. Optional equipment may increase the kerb weight, in which case the permitted loading capacity is reduced accordingly.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
A5 Avant TFSI 110 kW	1785	2315	1195	1220
A5 Avant TFSI 150 kW	1785	2315	1195	1220
A5 Avant TFSI quattro 150 kW	1840	2375	1200	1260
A5 Avant TDI 150 kW	1910	2430	1235	1290
A5 Avant TDI quattro 150 kW	1975	2490	1245	1335
A5 Avant TFSI quattro 200 kW	1925	2460	1240	1320
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	2160	2655	1245	1495
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	2185	2665	1245	1500
A5 Saloon TFSI 110 kW	1770	2295	1195	1200
A5 Saloon TFSI 150 kW	1770	2295	1195	1200
A5 Saloon TFSI quattro 150 kW	1825	2355	1200	1240
A5 Saloon TDI 150 kW	1895	2410	1235	1270
A5 Saloon TDI quattro 150 kW	1960	2470	1245	1315
A5 Saloon TFSI quattro 200 kW	1910	2440	1240	1300
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	2145	2635	1245	1475
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	2170	2645	1245	1485
S5 Avant TFSI	2040	2520	1275	1340
S5 Saloon TFSI	2025	2500	1275	1320

Trailer weight

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed 80 kg.

The values in the tables below are given in kg. ▶

	Maximum rear axle weight when towing	Trailer		
		Without brakes	With brakes on gradient up to 8%	With brakes on gradient up to 12%
A5 Avant TFSI 110 kW	1300	750	1700	1500
A5 Avant TFSI 150 kW	1300	750	1700	1500
A5 Avant TFSI quattro 150 kW	1340	750	1900	1700
A5 Avant TDI 150 kW	1370	750	1900	1700
A5 Avant TDI quattro 150 kW	1415	750	2000	1800
A5 Avant TFSI quattro 200 kW	1400	750	1900	1700
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	1575	750	1900	1700
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	1580	750	1900	1700
A5 Saloon TFSI 110 kW	1280	750	1700	1500
A5 Saloon TFSI 150 kW	1280	750	1700	1500
A5 Saloon TFSI quattro 150 kW	1320	750	1900	1700
A5 Saloon TDI 150 kW	1350	750	1900	1700
A5 Saloon TDI quattro 150 kW	1395	750	2000	1800
A5 Saloon TFSI quattro 200 kW	1380	750	1900	1700
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	1555	750	1900	1700
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	1565	750	1900	1700
S5 Avant TFSI	1420	750	2100	1900
S5 Saloon TFSI	1400	750	2100	1900

Engine data

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (km/h)
A5 Avant TFSI 110 kW	110 / 3900 – 6000	280 / 1400 – 3600	214
A5 Avant TFSI 150 kW	150 / 4300 – 6000	340 / 2000 – 4000	245
A5 Avant TFSI quattro 150 kW	150 / 3900 – 6000	340 / 2000 – 4000	242
A5 Avant TDI 150 kW	150 / 3800 – 4200	400 / 1750 – 3250	240
A5 Avant TDI quattro 150 kW	150 / 3800 – 4200	400 / 1750 – 3250	236
A5 Avant TFSI quattro 200 kW	200 / 5000 – 6500	400 / 1600 – 4500	250

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (km/h)
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	185 / 5000 – 6500 (220[a)])	380 / 1600 – 4500 (450[a)])	250
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	185 / 5000 – 6500 (270[a)])	380 / 1600 – 4500 (500[a)])	250
A5 Saloon TFSI 110 kW	110 / 3900 – 6000	280 / 1400 – 3600	216
A5 Saloon TFSI 150 kW	150 / 4300 – 6000	340 / 2000 – 4000	248
A5 Saloon TFSI quattro 150 kW	150 / 3900 – 6000	340 / 2000 – 4000	245
A5 Saloon TDI 150 kW	150 / 3800 – 4200	400 / 1750 – 3250	242
A5 Saloon TDI quattro 150 kW	150 / 3800 – 4200	400 / 1750 – 3250	241
A5 Saloon TFSI quattro 200 kW	200 / 5000 – 6500	400 / 1600 – 4500	250
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	185 / 5000 – 6500 (220[a)])	380 / 1600 – 4500 (450[a)])	250
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	185 / 5000 – 6500 (270[a)])	380 / 1600 – 4500 (500[a)])	250
S5 Avant TFSI	270 / 5500 – 6300	550 / 1700 – 4000	250
S5 Saloon TFSI	270 / 5500 – 6300	550 / 1700 – 4000	250

[a)] The value in brackets applies to the whole plug-in hybrid drive system.

Position of engine number

The engine number with code letters is located at the following position in the engine compartment:

Engine	Position of engine number
TFSI engine	
110 kW	On the joint between the engine and the gearbox and on a sticker on the timing chain cover
150 kW	
185 kW	
200 kW	
270 kW	On a sticker on the left charge air cooler and on the rear of the cylinder block at the top (engine number only visible with engine cover and heat shield removed)
TDI engine	
150 kW	On joint between engine and gearbox.

Information according to the EU regulation on batteries

Parameters related to electrochemical performance and durability

This information is in accordance with Regulation (EU) 2023/1542. The values given are based on reference conditions and are not guaranteed values. The actual values during vehicle operation may vary depending on various factors, such as the ambient temperature, battery temperature, charge level, vehicle configuration and usage profile. Tips and information on using and charging the vehicle's battery are provided in the Owner's Manual. ▶

	Battery type name	Expected (minimum) battery lifetime[a] [years]	Expected (minimum) battery lifetime[a] [cycles[b]]	Rated capacity[c] [Ah]
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	BATTYPA26	8	1777	70
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	BATTYPA26	8	1777	70
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	BATTYPA26	8	1777	70
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	BATTYPA26	8	1777	70

a) The values specified indicate the expected minimum lifetime of the vehicle's battery under certain reference conditions. The actual lifetime is generally longer and depends on parameters such as those related to electrochemical performance and durability.

b) Cycle = equivalent full cycle. An equivalent full cycle represents the total discharge throughput in relation to the rated capacity.

c) The value specified is the gross capacity of the battery; the actual usable value may be lower.

	Capacity fade[a] [%]	Power [kW]	Power fade[a] [%]	Internal resistance [mΩ]
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	27	165	20	123
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	27	165	20	123
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	27	165	20	123
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	27	165	20	123

a) The value specified is based on the number of cycles/years indicated under the expected (minimum) lifetime.

	Internal resistance increase[a] [%]	Energy round trip efficiency	Energy round trip efficiency fade[b] [%]
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	26	0.91	2
A5 Avant e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	26	0.91	2
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 220 kW	26	0.91	2
A5 Saloon e-hybrid quattro 270 kW	26	0.91	2

a) The value specified is based on the number of cycles/years indicated under the expected (minimum) lifetime.

b) The value specified is the gross capacity of the battery; the actual usable value may be lower.

Other information

Information on brands and licences

This Owner's Manual does not use any symbols to indicate trademarks or registered trademarks, such as ® or ™. However, the absence of such symbols does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any proprietary names.

Apple, iPhone, AirPlay and Apple CarPlay are trademarks of Apple Inc.

All other product and manufacturer names used may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Driving school mode

You can have the vehicle speed and the direction indicated by the turn signals shown on the infotainment display. Note that the value indicated in the speedometer is the relevant speed.

You can switch driving school mode on/off in the **Car** menu ⇨ *page 28*.

The vehicle will leave driving school mode when you switch to a different app.

Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH

On the basis of the European chemicals regulation REACH, Audi provides information on materials which may be present in your vehicle.

The information is available on the following website (varies from country to country):

www.audi.de/reach

Information on Regulation 2023/1542 on batteries

Technical data regarding Regulation 2023/1542 on batteries is available at:

http://www.audi.com/productinfo

Information on waste disposal

Introduction

Please observe the relevant country-specific regulations on waste disposal and the information below. Further information on disposal, return and recycling can be obtained from Audi dealers, qualified workshops or your regional Audi sales centre's website via www.audi.com.

Disposing of batteries

As the end user, it is your responsibility to dispose of batteries correctly. The crossed-out bin indicates your legal obligation to dispose of waste correctly. This means that you are obliged to collect and dispose of batteries separately from normal domestic waste. Special care is required when handling batteries containing lithium (Li). For example these batteries must not be exposed to excessive heat and must not be damaged. Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols for Cd (cadmium), Hg (mercury) and Pb (lead) in cases where these heavy metals are present in concentrations above the respective limits. The battery contains materials which can damage the health of humans and animals and can accumulate in the environment. To prevent this, it is essential to ensure separate collection and proper return.

Depending on the country, batteries may be returned free-of-charge to your Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Commercially available batteries can also be returned to the retailer.

Disposing of electric/electronic equipment

Electric/electronic equipment is identified by the symbol with the crossed-out bin . Electric/electronic equipment with this symbol must be collected and disposed of separately from normal domestic waste, according to the applicable legal regulations. Batteries contained in the equipment and separate rechargeable batteries must be removed first and disposed of separately in the appropriate manner. ▶

Depending on your country, electric/electronic equipment can be returned to local waste disposal agencies or public collection points. In addition, electric/electronic equipment can also be returned to the distributor/retailer via shipping services. The corresponding dealers/retailers can provide you with the exact conditions of return.

It is your own responsibility to delete any personal data stored on the devices.

Disposing of the vehicle

For information on the proper disposal of your vehicle, please visit your national/regional Audi sales organisation via www.audi.com.

All legal requirements must be complied with when scrapping the entire vehicle or specific individual components such as airbag units, batteries for remote controls, and belt tensioners. These components may contain perchlorates. Audi recommends contacting a qualified workshop.

Recycling information for France

Fig. 176 Recycling information for Owner's Manual

Fig. 177 Recycling information for electrical devices: vehicle keys, digital key card, remote control for auxiliary heating/ventilation

Radio equipment

Information on UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017

Simplified UK declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 insofar as this is required by law. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available on the Internet at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo

UK CA

Information on EU Directive 2014/53/EU

Simplified EU declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the Directive 2014/53/EU insofar as this is required by law.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available online at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo CE

Frequency table

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Audi connect key	13.56 MHz	< 42 dBµA/m @ 10m	28, 37
Phone compartment with inductive charging function	LTE/NR FDD band 20: 832 – 862 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 8: 880 – 915 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 3: 1710 – 1785 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 1: 1920 – 1980 MHz	23dBm	37
	NR TDD band 78: 3300 – 3800 MHz	23dBm – only for EU	37
Bluetooth	2400 – 2483.5 MHz	9.1 dBm	12
Connectivity box/cGW/OCU	GSM 900: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	33 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B20: 832 MHz – 862 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B28: 703 MHz – 748 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE TDD B38: 2570 MHz – 2620 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE TDD B40: 2300 MHz – 2400 MHz	23 dBm	12
	5G FDD N1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz	24dBm	12
	5G FDD N3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	24dBm	12
	5G FDD N7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz	24dBm	12
	5G FDD N8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	24dBm	12
	5G FDD N28: 703 MHz – 748 MHz	24 dBm	12
	5G TDD N77: 3300 MHz – 4200 MHz	24dBm	12
	GSM 1800: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	30 dBm	12
	5G TDD N78: 3300 MHz – 3800 MHz	24dBm	12
	UMTS FDD I: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz	24 dBm	12
	UMTS FDD III: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	24 dBm	12
	UMTS FDD VIII: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	24 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz	23 dBm	12
	LTE FDD B8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	23 dBm	12

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Child presence detection (CPD)	57 - 64 GHz	13 dBm	39
Front radar 1	76-77 GHz	30.49 dBm (F5CP42)	46
Front radar 2	76-77 GHz	37.79 dBm (FR5CUEC)	46
Remote control key	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	<10 mW ERP	38
	6 GHz – 8.5 GHz	< -41.3 dBm/MHz (meanPSD)	38
	125 kHz	<29.7 dBµA/m (quasi-peak) @ 10m	38
Garage door opener	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	0.04 mW ERP	11
	868.00 MHz – 868.60 MHz	1.05 mW ERP	11
	868.70 MHz – 869.20 MHz	1.05 mW ERP	11
Anti-theft protection module (RSAD)	6 GHz – 8.5 GHz	< -41.3 dBm/MHz (meanPSD)	38
	2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	< 10 dBm EIRP	38
Tyre pressure monitoring	433.92 MHz	10 mW	14
Radar 1 for surroundings	76-77 GHz	25 dBm (RS5.3)	36
Radar 2 for surroundings	76-77 GHz	30 dBm (RS5.5)	36
Wireless charging	WBT: 125.35 kHz - 129.75 kHz	<55.77 dBµA/m	37
	NFC: 13.56 MHz	<42 dBµA/m	37
Wi-Fi	2400 – 2483.5 MHz	9.8 dBm	12
	5150 MHz– 5250 MHZ	17.5 dBm	12
	5725 MHz– 5875 MHz	13.954 dBm	12
Central control unit	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	<10 mW ERP	38
	125 kHz	<29.7 dBµA/m (quasi-peak) @ 10m	38

Supplier table

Number	Address
11	Gentex Corp. 600 North Centennial Street Zeeland, MI 49464 USA
12	Harman Becker Automotive Systems GmbH Becker-Göring-Str. 16 76307 Karlsbad Germany
14	Huf Baolong Electronics Bretten GmbH Gewerbestr. 40 75015 Bretten-Gölshausen Germany
28	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG Steeger Straße 17 42551 Velbert Germany

▶

Number	Address
36	HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA Rixbecker Straße 75 59552 Lippstadt Germany
37	Molex Technologies GmbH Mizarstraße 3 12529 Schönefeld Germany
38	Continental Automotive Technologies GmbH Siemensstr.12 93055 Regensburg Germany

Number	Address
39	VALEO INTERIOR CONTROLS (SHENZHEN) CO., LTD. CUIGANG INDUSTRIAL PARK SIX, HUAIDE, FUYONG STREET BAO'AN DISTRICT, SHENZHEN CITY 518103, GUANGDONG PROVINCE China
46	Bosch Car Multimedia Rua Max Grundig 35 Lomar 4705-820 Braga Portugal

You can also find additional information e.g. product identifications online at www.audi.com/generalinfo.

Additional customer information

Fig. 178 Additional customer information

① Singapore
② Russia
③ Belarus
④ United Kingdom (applies to products placed on the market from 01/01/2023 onwards)
⑤ Chile
⑥ Thailand
⑦ Republic of Korea
⑧ Taiwan

United Kingdom market

UK Product Safety and Metrology Regulations

This vehicle has various devices installed that are subject to UK product regulations. The following acts as the importer of these devices for the United Kingdom market within the meaning of the Product Safety and Metrology Regulations:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.
Yeomans Drive, Blakelands Milton Keynes, MK14 5AN United Kingdom

Türkiye

TELSİZ EKİPMANLARI YÖNETMELİĞİ (2014/53/AB)

Aracınızda çeşitli telsiz ekipmanları bulunmaktadır. Telsiz Ekipmanları Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB) açısından Türkiye pazarı için telsiz ekipmanı ithalatçısı[1]:

Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş
Şekerpınar Mah. Anadolu Cad., No: 45 D , PK: 41420 Çayırova/Kocaeli

Importer according to Article 12 of Directive 2014/53/EU (RED) on imported radio equipment and electronic devices:

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany

Further information and updates

For some countries, further information and updates about radio equipment or product identifications for certain equipment versions can be found online at www.audi.com/generalinfo.

[1] Bu bilgi sadece resmi temsilcimiz olan Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.'nin ithal ettiği ürünler için geçerlidir.

Additional customer information for Taiwan

RAZ-1655

進口商:台灣福斯股份有限公司
地　址:台北市信義區松高路 1號15樓
電　話: 0809-092-834

Fig. 179 Additional customer information

Information on manufacturing faults for the Republic of Korea

RAZ-1602

자동차제작사 : 폭스바겐그룹코리아 주식회사
주 소 : 서울특별시 종로구 청계천로 41 영풍빌딩 14층 03188
연락처 : 080-767–2834 (고객지원센터)

제작결함안내(제50조 관련)

귀하의 자동차 또는 자동차부품에 잦은 고장 등의 문제로 교통사고를 유발할 수 있는 결함이 있다고 판단되면, 자기 및 다른 사람의 안전을 위하여 즉시 폭스바겐그룹코리아 주식회사와 제작결함조사를 시행하는 한국교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원에 연락하여 주시기 바랍니다.
한국교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원은 소비자 불만사항 등을 접수하여 분석한 후 해당 자동차 또는 자동차부품에 제작결함의 가능성이 있다고 판단되는 경우 제작결함조사를 실시하여 해당 제작사에게 제작결함시정(recall) 등의 조치를 취할것입니다.
한국교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원의 자동차 또는 자동차부품 결함 등 소비자 불만 접수창구는 다음과 같습니다.
한국교통안전공단 자동차안전연구원
전화 : 080-357-2500
인터넷 홈페이지 : 자동차리콜센터((www.car.go.kr)

Fig. 180 Information on manufacturing faults for the Republic of Korea

Information on the event data recorder for the Republic of Korea

사고기록장치 세부 안내문 (제30조의3제1항 관련)

이 자동차에는 사고기록장치가 장착되어 있습니다.

사고기록장치는 자동차의 충돌 등 사고 전후 일정시간 동안 자동차의 운행 정보(주행속도, 제동페달, 가속페달 등의 작동 여부)를 저장하고, 저장된 정보를 확인할 수 있는 기능을 하는 장치를 말합니다.

사고기록정보는 사고 상황을 좀 더 잘 이해하는데 도움이 됩니다.

RAZ-1665

Fig. 181 Event data recorder (Republic of Korea)

Information on emissions and operating noises for the Republic of Korea

This vehicle complies with the emission and noise standards. (The emissions only apply to vehicles with petrol or diesel engine.)

A

ABS
see Anti-lock brake system 124
Accelerator pedal 112
Accessories 353
Active front assist 196
Driver messages 199
Adaptation to right of way
see Predictive cruise control 191, 193
Adaptation to route ahead
see Predictive cruise control 191, 193
Adaptation to speed limits
see Predictive cruise control 191, 193
Adaptive cruise assist 194
Cleaning sensors 325
see also Adaptive cruise control 194
see also Lane guidance 177, 194
Adaptive cruise assist plus
see Adaptive cruise assist 194
Adaptive cruise control 184
Predictive cruise control 191
Adaptive light 61
AdBlue 289
Capacity 355
Checking range 289
Driver messages 290
Information 289
Additional online data 270, 271
Aero trim, detaching 335
Airbag system 78
Deactivating front passenger's airbag 81
Air conditioner 96
Displays 96
Air distribution setting 97
Air recirculation mode 97
Alarm system
see Anti-theft alarm system 40
All-season tyres
see All-weather tyres 318
All-weather lights 59
All-weather tyres 318
Alpine roads 119
Alternative routes 260
Android Auto
see Smartphone interface 278
Anti-dazzle interior mirror 64
Anti-freeze
Coolant 302
Windscreen washer system 311
Anti-lock brake system 125
Anti-theft alarm system 40
Driver messages 41
Anti-theft wheel bolts 335
Apple CarPlay
see Smartphone interface 278
Apply without confirmation (adaptation to speed limits) 192
App overview 24
Apps 252
Legal information 283
Software information 283
App store 252
Ashtray 88
ASR
see Traction control system 124
Assisted lane change 179
Audi assistant 30
Activating 30
Help 30
Using routines 30
Using suggestions 30
Audi connect
Key card 36, 46, 48
Keys 36
Key (safelock mechanism) 40
see also connect 249
Audi connect emergency call & service 253
Audi connect navigation & infotainment (plus) 250
Audi connect remote & control 250
Audi drive select 121
Audi e-tron compact charging system 140
Activating/deactivating PE conductor monitoring 142
Changing/attaching mains cable 147
Hooking in 148
Limiting charging capacity 141
Status and fault indicators 142
AUTO
Air conditioner 97
Automatic headlights 59
Automatic air conditioner
see Air conditioner 96

8B1012720AG

Automatically reset driver assist settings . . . 164
Automatic music recognition 266
Automatic route updates 260
Automatic wash and wipe 66
Auxiliary air conditioner 101
Auxiliary heating/ventilation 100
Average consumption 20
Avoiding motorways 260
Avoiding toll roads 260
Axle loads 356

B

Background lighting 63
Functional background lighting 63
Bandages
see First-aid kit 331
Battery
12-volt vehicle battery 307
Charging (12-volt vehicle battery) 310
Information 308
Safety information 307
Winter conditions (12-volt vehicle battery) .309
Battery (mobile device)
Charging via USB 89
Wireless charging 247
Battery, replacing
12-volt vehicle battery 309
Vehicle keys 47
Bicycle rack (towing bracket) 153
Biodiesel 284, 285
Bioethanol (fuel) 284
Blower 97
Bluetooth 280
Audio player 269
Connecting device 281
Deleting a device 281
Device overview 280
Disconnecting a device 281
Setting device use 281
Setting preferred device 281
Bonnet 297
Driver messages 297
Boost function 19, 112
Boot
see Luggage compartment 90
Boot lid 51
Activating/deactivating foot gesture control .53
Close button 52
General information 51
Opening/closing (power-operated boot lid) . 52
Opening with foot gesture 53
Releasing manually 55
Brake fluid 305
Checking the brake fluid level 306
Driver messages 306
Brakes 115
Brake fluid 306
Emergency braking function 119
Hot 119
New brake pads 116
Brands 360
Brightness, adjusting 64
Bulbs, changing 346
Business address 257
Business card 246

C

Calibration
High-voltage battery 130
Call
Accepting/ending 245
Declining via text message 245
Putting on hold 245
Showing history 244
Starting 244
Switching between calls 245
Cameras
Areas covered 162
Positions 164
Cameras behind the windscreen 162
Capacities 355
AdBlue 289
Caps for wheel bolts, removing 335
Car care
Washing/cleaning 324
Car wash 324
Catalytic converter 293
Central locking switch 38
Central locking system 36
Adjusting 37
Auto Lock 37

Boot lid 52
Convenience key 50
Convenience open/close 56
Driver messages 39
Introduction 36
Remote control key 49, 50
Safety information 36
Sensors 49
Vehicle key 50
Centre armrest 71
Centred (behaviour of lane guidance) 177
Certificate of conformity 364
Certification 361, 364
Cetane number (diesel) 285
Changing bulbs 346
Charging cable for domestic or industrial power outlets
see Audi e-tron compact charging system . 140
Charging cable for public charging stations . 140
Charging clip
see Clip wall mount 148
Charging connector, releasing manually 135
Charging equipment, transporting 139
Charging flap, opening 132
Charging flap, releasing manually 135
Charging indicator 134
Charging location 137
Charging station, finding 258
Charging status 134
Charging system
see Audi e-tron compact charging system . 140
Charging target, setting 136
Charging time 132
Charging window
see Preferred charging time 137
Chassis number
see Vehicle identification number 355
Chemicals 360
Child lock
Driver messages 39
Electric windows 39
Rear doors 39
Child restraint system 82
Attaching with i-Size 85
Attaching with ISOFIX 85
Securing to top tether anchorage 86
Securing with seat belt 86
Child restraint systems
Seats suitable for attachment with i-Size . . 84
Seats suitable for attachment with ISOFIX . . 84
Seats suitable for attachment with seat belt .84
Cigarette lighter 88
Cleaning 324
Cleaning/treating natural leather 328
Cleaning carbon parts 326, 328
Cleaning controls and displays 327
Cleaning fabrics 327
Cleaning leatherette 327
Cleaning microfibre 327
Cleaning plastic parts 327
Cleaning rubber seals 326
Clip wall mount 148
Closing
Bonnet 297
Boot lid 52
Boot lid with foot gesture 53
Convenience closing 56
Power-operated boot lid 52
Windows 55
Coat hooks 88
Cockpit dimming 64
Combustion engine 106
Coming home/leaving home
see Entry/exit lights 61
Communication lights 61
Compartments 88
Compressor 332
Conference 245
connect 249
Audi incident assistance 255
Data plans 250
Emergency call 253
Infotainment services 250
Online roadside assistance 255
Vehicle control services 250
Connection manager 280
see also Bluetooth 280
Connections
see Media 269, 270
Connect key
see Digital key 47

Consumer information 352
Consumption 20
Lowering 113
Contact list 245
Downloading contacts 245
Finding a contact 244
Sort order 245
Controller
see Game controller 276
Convenience key 36
Convenience closing 56
Safelock mechanism 40
see also Vehicle keys 46
Convenience open/close
Windows 56
Coolant additive 302
Cooling mode
A/C cooling mode 97
Cooling mode at maximum 97
ECO cooling mode 97
Cooling system
Anti-freeze 302
Checking coolant level 303
Coolant additive 302, 304
Coolant level 303
Topping up coolant 304
Cornering light 61
Cruise control, predictive
see Predictive cruise control 191, 193
Cup holders 89
Customer information 313
Customer information regarding radio equipment 364

D

DAB service following 266
Dashcam 273
Legal information 283
Data module
Serial number (IMEI) 282
Data plans 250
Data protection 350
Data volume 250
Daytime running lights 59
Deactivating front passenger's airbag 81
Declarations of conformity 361
DEF
see AdBlue 289
Default settings, restoring 280
Demisting (windows) 98
Destination
Adding 260
Deleting 260
Replacing 260
Showing details 259
Destination, finding 258
Finding POI 258
Internet search 258
Setting a destination from the map 259
Using search filters 258
Detection of people in rear cabin
see Occupant detection 41
Diagnostic system 348
Diesel 284
Fuel 285
Paraffinic fuel 285
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)
see AdBlue 289
Digital key
Deleting 48
Disconnecting main device 48
Displaying 48
Key card 48
Keys 47
Setting up 48
Sharing 48
Switching on/off 48
Digital key card 48
Digital key service card 48
Dimensions 355
Dipped headlights 59
Directional tread (tyres) 337
Directory
see Contact list 245
Display
Cleaning 327
Distance warning 167
Distraction warning 172
Displays 172
Doors
Child lock 39
Courtesy lighting 63
Door safelock 40

Driver assist camera
see Cameras behind the windscreen 162
Driver assist menu 164
Driver assist systems
Audi drive select 122
Detection of vehicle surroundings 162
Driver assist menu 164
General driver assist settings 165
General driver messages 165
Safety information 161
System limits 161
System overview 159
Driver availability camera 347
Driver messages
Emission control system 293
Occupant detection 43
Drives
see Media 269, 270
Drive select
see Audi drive select 121
Drive system 115
Audi drive select 122
Drive system status 19
Driving abroad 250
Driving characteristics during assisted driving 189
Driving off 111
Driving program 110, 189
Driving school mode 360
Speed display 360
Turn signal display 360
Driving tips
Driving efficiently 113
Driving through water 120
Hills and gradients 119
DTMF
see Tone sequences, sending 244
Dust filter
see Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 96

E

E10
see Ethanol (fuel) 284
E5, E10, E20
see Ethanol (fuel) 284
Easy entry function 71
see also Easy exit function 71
Easy exit function 71
EDL
see Electronic differential lock 124
EDR
see Event data recorder (EDR) 348
Efficiency assist
Predictive cruise control 191
see also Predictive efficiency messages . . . 202
Electrical socket
see Power sources 89
Electrical system 306
Driver messages 128, 306
Electric motor
Coolant 302
Electric range 262
Electric windows 55
Electromechanical parking brake 117
Electronic differential lock 125
Electronic immobiliser 46
Electronic stabilisation control 124
Elevated entry 71
Embedded SIM card 250
Emergency assist 195
Emergency braking function 119
Emergency call 244, 253
Emergency charging 136
Emergency key 46
Emergency running 113
Emission control system 293
Energy
Lowering consumption 113
Energy flow, displaying 108
Energy management 106
Energy recovery 106
Engine 105
Power output 357
Running in 111
Start/stop system 114
Starting/stopping 105
Switching off in an emergency 105
Switching on/off 105

8B1012720AG

Engine compartment 295
Layout 298
Opening/closing the bonnet 297
Safety information 295
Engine oil
Checking 298
Checking engine oil level via MMI 299
Consumption 298
Temperature display 20
Topping up 298
Type 298
Warning lamp 301
Engine stopping
see Start/stop system 114
Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 96
Entry/exit lights 61
Environmental tips
Filling the tank 286
Leaks 296
ESC
see Electronic stabilisation control 124
eSIM
see Embedded SIM card 250
Ethanol (fuel) 284
EU Directive 2014/53/EU 361
Event data recorder (EDR) 348
EV mode 107
Exit warning system 170
Experiences 275
Exterior lighting 59
Exterior mirrors 64
Folding in (setting) 37
Exterior sound 106
External aerial
see Mobile network coupling aerial 246

F

Factory settings 48
Factory settings, restoring 280
FAME (fuel) 285
Fast charging 131
Fastening rings 94
Fatigue warning 171
Displays 171
File formats (media sources) 270
Filling station, finding 258
Filling the tank 286
Capacity 355
Fuel tank flap 286
Releasing fuel tank flap manually 288
Fire extinguisher 331
First-aid kit 331
Flooded roads, tips for driving 120
Floor mat 69
Floor panel 94
Folding rear seats up/down 92
Foot cooling 99
Foot gesture
see Boot lid 52, 53
Foot heating 98
Forward gear
see Transmission position 109
Four-wheel drive
see quattro 123
Frequency band
see Waveband 265
Fresh air 99
Front cabin (overview) 9
Front passenger's seat adjustment
From rear cabin 71
Front window
see Windscreen 66
Fuel 284
Capacity 355
Lowering consumption 113
Functions on demand 252
Functions requiring a licence
see Store 252
Fuse layout
Footwell 344
Front cabin 343
Luggage compartment 345
Fuses, changing 343

G

Game controller 276
Connecting 276
Gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front 167
Garage door opener 56
Gear shift indicator 20
Gentle (behaviour of lane guidance) 177

Gesture control 22
Calling up the context menu 22
Moving objects 22, 24
Opening/closing a hidden view 22
Glove box 88
Goodbye screen 24
Gradients, driving on 119
Gross vehicle weight 356
Ground clearance 122

H

Handbrake
see Electromechanical parking brake 117
Handsfree system
see Telephone 243
Hazard alerts 205
Hazard warning lights 62
HD radio 265
Head-up display
Adjusting 29
Adjusting brightness 64
Operating 29
Switching on/off 29
Headlight range control 61
Headlights
Headlight range control 61
Washer system 66
Washer system (topping up washer fluid) . 311
Washing 325
Headlight washer system
Capacity 355
Head restraints
Adjusting 74
Removing/installing 74
Heated mirror 98
Heated rear window 98
Heated steering wheel 98
Heating 96
High-visibility vest 331
High-voltage battery
Calibration 130
Charge level 19
Information 130
State of health 130
High-voltage system 127
Audi e-tron compact charging system 140
Charging cable for public charging stations 140
Charging equipment 138
Charging high-voltage battery 131, 132
Charging in a way that preserves the battery 136
Charging indicator on vehicle 133, 134
Charging methods for high-voltage battery 131
Charging sockets on vehicle 131
Charging time for high-voltage battery . . . 132
Closing charging flap 133
Connecting charging cable 132
Driver messages 128
Driver messages when charging 135
Ending charging cycle 133
Fast charging high-voltage battery 131
Hazardous situations 127
Opening charging flap 132
Removing charging cable 133
Setting a charging target 136
Smell of smoke/gas 127
Starting charging cycle 132
Transporting charging equipment 139
Troubleshooting during charging 134
Using a charging location 137
What to do if not using for a long time . . . 130
Hills, driving on 119
HOLD 118
Hold function 118
Home address 257
HomeLink
see Garage door opener 56
Horn 9
Hybrid mode 107
Hybrid radio
see Online station tracking 266

I

i-Size (attaching child restraint systems) 85
Ignition
Switching on/off 104
Immobiliser
see Electronic immobiliser 46

Indicator lamps
see Warning lamps 10
Inflation pressures
Tyre pressure loss indicator 319
Tyre pressure monitoring system 320
Tyres 317
Infotainment
see Dashcam 273
Infotainment services 350
Inspection intervals
see Service interval display 312
Installation history 252
Instrument cluster 18
Audi drive select 122
Changing views 18
Controls 18
Display areas 18
Drive system status 19
Failed 18
Gear shift indicator 20
Legal information 283
Resetting trip recorder 20
Resetting value/memory 18
Service interval display 312
Instrument lighting 64
Interior entertainment 275
Interior lights 63
Interior mirror 64
Interior monitor 40
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 66
Introduction
Central locking system 36
ISOFIX (attaching child restraint systems) . . . 85

J

Jack 336
Jacking points 336
Wheel change mode 334
Jump-starting 337

K

Kerb warning 222
Driver messages 223
Kerb weight 356
Key-operated switch for front passenger's air-bag 81
Key card 48
see also Audi connect 48
Keys 36, 46
Convenience open/close 56
Deactivating function for unlocking with convenience key 37
Digital key 46, 47
Digital key card 46
Emergency key 46
Key card 48
Not detected 104
Replacement keys 46
Replacing battery 47
Safelock mechanism 40
Unlocking/locking 50
Key user 35
Kick-down 112

L

Lane assist
see Lane departure warning 174, 177
see Lane guidance 177, 194
Lane change
Assisted 179
Lane departure button 174
Lane departure warning 174
Cleaning area around camera 325
Lane guidance 177
Lane guidance button 177
see also Lane departure warning 174, 177
Lap timer
Introduction 209
Lap statistics 210
Operation 209
Last destinations 257
Launch control 112
Leather, cleaning/treating 328
LED on vehicle charging socket
see Charging indicator 134
Left-hand traffic 62
Legal information 282
Apps 283
Dashcam 283
Data module serial number (IMEI) 282
Head-up display 283
Instrument cluster 283

Smartphone interface 283
Software information 282
Software licences 282
System 283
Version information 282
Lights 59
Driving on right/left 62
Exterior 59
Interior 63
Light sensor/rain sensor
Headlights 59
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 66
Light switch module 59
Local user 34
LTE
see Mobile network coupling aerial 246
Luggage
Boot lid 51
Luggage compartment
Extending 92
Floor panel 94
Power sources 89
Safety information 90
Luggage compartment cover, electric
Removing/installing 91
Retracting 91
Luggage compartment cover, hard
Removing/installing 91
Luggage net 94
Luggage rack
see Roof carrier 95
Lumbar support 70, 71

M

Main beam headlights
Main beam assist 60
Maintenance 352
Maintenance intervals
see Service interval display 312
Maintenance reminders 313
Make-up mirrors 65
Manoeuvre assist 223
Manoeuvre display 260
Manual gear selection 112
Manual operation
Boot lid 53, 55
Manual release
Charging connector 135
Charging flap 135
Map
Calling up country information 261
Operation 261
Performing update 262
Setting a destination 259
Setting map colours 261
Setting map scale 257
Setting orientation 257
MAP
see Message Access Profile 246
Map content menu 258
Massage function 71
Front 71
Matrix LED headlights 60
Matt paintwork, washing 324
Maximum speed 357
Media 269
Additional online data 270
Bluetooth audio player 269
Connecting device 269
Playback 270
Search 270
Selecting source 270
Setting picture format 270
Settings menu 270
Supported formats 270
Media player
see Media 269, 270
Menu: Audi assistant 31
Menu: Car 28
Menu: Central locking system 37
Menu: Connection manager 280
Menu: Digital key 49
Menu: Interior monitor 40
Menu: Messages 244
Menu: Opening/closing boot lid with foot gesture 53
Menu: Parking aid 166
Menu: Rear notification sound 39
Menu: Settings 280
Menu: Wireless charging 247
Message Access Profile 246

8B1012720AG

Messages
see Text messages 246
Message templates, editing 244
Microphone input level 244
Mild hybrid drive 106
Mirror heating 98
Mirrors
Adjusting exterior mirrors 64
Anti-dazzle setting 64
Make-up mirrors 65
MMI
Adjusting the audio and system volume . . . 26
App overview 24
Assigning function to steering wheel button .26
Calling up the overview app 25
Calling up the overview page 25
Changing the brightness 27
Changing the direct access panel 27
Changing the information boxes on the overview page 24, 27
Creating and managing folders 27
Customising 27
Customising the direct access panel 24
Deleting a downloaded app 24, 27
Direct access panel 24
Goodbye screen 24
Overview page 24
Restarting 26
Starting up/shutting down 26
Status bar 24
Storing/deleting favourites 25
Switching the displays on/off 26
Switching the standby design on/off 26
Symbols 25
Tab area 24
User interface 24
MMI control dial 10, 26
MMI passenger display 25
Mobile data 350
Mobile network coupling aerial 246
Mobile phone
see Telephone 243
Mobile phone tray
see Phone compartment 246
Mode 3 charging cable
see Charging cable for public charging stations 140
Modifications 352
Motor braking effect
see Recuperation 106
Motorway light 61
Mountain passes 119
Multi-function steering wheel
Assigning function to button 26
Audi assistant 30
Multi Media Interface
see MMI 23
Mute 26
myAudi 34, 250
myAudi navigation 259
myAudi users 34

N

Navigation 257
Alternative routes 260
Automatic route updates 260
Destination information 259
Editing route 260
Electric range 262
Home/business address 257
Last destinations 257
Manoeuvre display 260
Map content 258
Map update 262
myAudi navigation 259
Predictive route guidance 260
Route monitor 259
Satellite map 262
Setting a destination 259
Setting contacts as destination 259
Settings menu 258
Showing destination details 259
Starting route guidance 258
Stopping route guidance 260
Traffic information 262
Using search filters 258
Net partition 92, 93
Neutral 118
see also Transmission position 109
NOx catalytic converter
see AdBlue 289
Number plate
Securing 353
Number plate holder 353

O

Occupant detection
- Driver messages . . . 43
- Function limitations . . . 42
- How it works . . . 41
- Introduction . . . 41
- Notifications . . . 43
- Settings . . . 43
- Setting the notification sound . . . 43
- System limits . . . 42

Octane rating (petrol) . . . 284
OFF (air conditioner) . . . 98
Oil
- *see* Engine oil . . . 298

Online
- Campaigns . . . 313
- Car Care . . . 313
- Service . . . 313

Online Car Care . . . 313
Online manuals
- *see* Owner's Manual (digital) . . . 8

Online map
- *see* Satellite map . . . 262

Online roadside assistance . . . 255
Online station data . . . 266
Online station tracking . . . 266
- Preferred bit rate . . . 266

Opening . . . 36
- Bonnet . . . 297
- Boot lid . . . 52
- Boot lid with foot gesture . . . 53
- Convenience opening . . . 56
- Fuel tank flap . . . 286
- Power-operated boot lid . . . 52
- Windows . . . 55

Opening/closing
- *see* Unlocking/locking . . . 36

Operating mode . . . 107
Outside temperature display . . . 18
Overtake prevention . . . 190
Overview diagram (front cabin) . . . 9
Owner's Manual (digital)
- Accessing . . . 8
- Accessing digital version . . . 7
- In myAudi . . . 7
- In the infotainment system . . . 8

P

Paddle levers . . . 112
- Switching recuperation on/off . . . 107

Paint damage . . . 326
Panoramic glass roof
- Operating . . . 65

Paraffinic diesel . . . 284
Paraffinic fuel . . . 285
Park assist plus . . . 230
Parking . . . 111
Parking aid menu . . . 166
Parking aids . . . 212
- Adjusting entertainment fader when parking . . . 212
- Adjusting volume . . . 212
- Automatic activation . . . 213
- Cleaning sensors/camera . . . 325
- Park assist plus . . . 230
- Parking space search . . . 227
- Rear cross-traffic assist . . . 220
- Remote-controlled parking . . . 233
- Reversing camera . . . 214
- Surround view cameras . . . 214
- Switching off manoeuvre assist . . . 224
- Trailer view . . . 218

Parking and manoeuvring . . . 212
Parking brake
- *see* Electromechanical parking brake . . . 117

Parking lights . . . 60
Parking lock
- *see* Transmission position . . . 109

Parking service
- *see* Valet mode . . . 33

Parking spaces, finding . . . 258
Particulate filter . . . 293
- Cleaning . . . 294
- Driver messages . . . 294
- Information . . . 293
- Regeneration trip . . . 294

Passenger display
- *see* MMI passenger display . . . 25

Pedals . . . 112
Performance (engine) . . . 357
Performing a reset
- *see* Factory settings, restoring . . . 280

8B1012720AG

Personal profiles
see Users 34
Petrol 284
Petrol grade
see Petrol 284
Phone book
see Contact list 245
Phone compartment 246
Picture format
Video 270
see also Picture format 270
PIN
Protection 34
Playback
Media 270
Radio 265
Playing music
see Media 269, 270
Plug-in hybrid drive 106
Coolant 302
Polishing 326
Pollen filter
see Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 96
Power-operated boot lid 52, 53
Power meter 19
Power sources 89
Power steering
see Steering 122
Predictive control
see Predictive cruise control 191, 193
Predictive cruise control 191
Predictive efficiency messages 202
Predictive maintenance 313
Predictive route guidance 260
Predictive speed limiter 181
Preferred charging time 137
Preferred image 266
Preferred online radio bit rate 266
Privacy settings
see Data protection 350
Proactive occupant protection 206, 207
Driver messages 208
Front 207
Rear 207
Side 207
System limits 207
Progressive steering 123
Purchased apps and digital services 252
Purchased functions (functions on demand) . 252
Purchase history 252
Pyrotechnic components 352

Q

quattro 123
Audi drive select 122
Selective wheel torque control 125
Quick access
Overview of functions 25
Symbols 25
Quick access bar 24

R

Radio 265
Alarm messages 267
Automatic music recognition 266
Calling up source menu 265
Connecting music streaming service 266
DAB announcements 267
DAB service following 266
HD radio 265
Online station data 266
Online station tracking 266
Operating 265
Radio text 266
Search 265
Setting a frequency 265
Setting a station 265
Settings 265
Traffic announcements 267
Waveband 265
Radio announcements 267
Radio equipment 353, 361, 364
Radio Equipment Directive 361
Radio frequency
see Waveband 265
Radio sticker 353
Radio traffic announcements 267
Radio transmitters 353

Rain sensor/light sensor
Headlights 59
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 66
Range (electric) 262
Range, displaying 108
REACH (chemicals regulation) 360
Reading lights 63
Rear cross-traffic assist 220, 221
Rear emergency brake assist 219
Rear fog light 59
Rear lights
Washing 325
Rear notification sound, setting 43
Rear window heating 98
Recall campaigns 313
Recuperation 19, 106
Reminder not to forget phone 247
Reminder signal
see Reminder not to forget phone 247
Remote-controlled parking 233
Remote access rights (key user) 35
Remote control
Garage door opener 56
Remote control key 36, 46
Convenience open/close 56
LED 47
Replacement keys 46
Replacing battery 47
Safelock mechanism 40
Unlocking/locking 49, 50
see also Vehicle keys 46
Remote drive assistant 235
Remote park assist
see Remote-controlled parking 233
Remote vehicle repair 313
Repairs 352
Replacement keys 46
Replacement parts 353
Resetting the system
see Factory settings, restoring 280
Rev counter 19
Reverse gear
see Transmission position 109
Reversing camera 214
Reversing camera cleaning function, activating 219
RFID sticker 353
Right-hand traffic 62
Rims 318
Washing 326
Ring tone 244
Ring tone volume 244
Rolling
Electromechanical parking brake 117, 118
Neutral (N) 110
Rolling away 111
Roof carrier 95
Roof load 356
Route
Alternative routes 260
Editing 260
Route monitor 259
Setting route criteria 260
Route guidance
Starting 258
Stopping 260
Running in
New brake pads 116
New tyres 315

S

Safelock mechanism 40
Driver messages 41
Satellite map 262
Scrappage 352
Search
Media 270
Navigation 258
Radio 265
Seat belts 74
Cleaning 327
Securing child restraint system 86
Seat heating 98
Seats
Adjusting 70
Adjusting front seats 71
Cleaning 327
Folding rear seats up/down 92
Head restraints 73
Massage function 71
Resetting position 71
Seat ventilation 98

8B1012720AG

Selective catalytic reduction
see AdBlue 289
Selector lever 109
Self-help 331
Self-learning navigation
see Predictive route guidance 260
Selling vehicle (factory settings) 280
Sensors
Areas covered 162
Positions 164
Service campaigns 313
Service interval
Predictive maintenance 313
Service interval display 312
Using 312
Service intervals
see Service interval display 312
Settings 280
Announcements and sounds 280
Bluetooth 280
Central locking system 37
Checking software version 281
Connection manager 280
Date and time 280
Digital key 49
Interior monitor 40
Languages and keyboards 280
Location 280
Media 270
Navigation 258
Occupant detection 43
Opening/closing boot lid with foot gesture . 53
Performing software update 282
Radio 265
Rear notification sound 39
Restoring factory settings 280
Software update 281
Sound 280
Telephone 244
Units 280
Valet mode 33
Shift light display 20
Shop
see Store 252
Side assist 168
Cleaning sensors 325
Side blind
Rear doors 66
Side lights 59
SIM card 250
Smartphone
see Telephone 243
Smartphone interface 278
Connecting 278
Legal information 283
Smart service 313
Predictive maintenance 313
Remote vehicle repair 313
SMS
see Text messages 246
Snow chains 319
Software information
see Legal information 282
Software update 281
Software version, checking 281
Sort order 245
Sound profile
Audi drive select 122
Source, selecting
Media 270
Speed limit display
see Traffic sign recognition 203
Speed limiter 181
Displays 182
Operation 183
Speed limiter, predictive
see Predictive speed limiter 181
Speed limits
see Traffic sign recognition 203
Speed regulation systems 181
Speed warning 167
Sport differential 124
Start/stop system 114, 115
Driver messages 115
Switching off/on 114
Starting with jump leads 337
Starting (engine) 115
Status bar 24
Symbols 25
Steering 122
Audi drive select 122
Steering lock 105, 123

Steering wheel
Adjustment 72
Electric adjustment 73
Paddle levers 112
Steering wheel heating 98
Stopping vehicle 111
Storage compartments 88
Store 252
Sun visors 65
Surround view cameras 214
Suspension 122
Audi drive select 122
Suspension control 122
Switching engine off 115
Symbols
Charging equipment 138
Navigation 257
Radio 265
Telephone 244
see also Warning lamps 10
SYNC (air conditioner) 98
System
Legal information 283
Software information 283

T

Tailgate
see Boot lid 52, 53
Tank system
Driver messages 289
Technical data 355
Technical product information 313
Telephone 243
Accepting/ending call 245
Conference 245
Connecting a mobile phone 243
Dialling a number 244
Editing message templates 244
Mobile network coupling aerial 246
Options during a call 244
Phone compartment 246
Playing music 269
Reminder not to forget phone 247
Settings menu 244
Starting a call 244
Switching between mobile phones 244
Text messages 246
Wireless charging 247
Temperature setting 97
Tethering
see Wi-Fi 250
Text messages 246
Text, entering 22
Changing the input language 22
Changing the input method 22
Themes 275
Tightening torque (wheel bolts) 337
Timer
see Lap timer 209
tiptronic
see Manual gear selection 112
Tire Mobility System (tyre repair kit) 332
Toll device 353
Tone sequences, sending 244
Tools 332
Top tether anchorage (securing a child restraint system) 86
Torque
Engine 357
Wheel bolts 337
Tow-away protection 40
Towing 149
Draw bar weight 149
Rear carrier systems 153
Swivelling towing bracket 151
Trailer stabilisation 153
Trailer weight 149, 356
Towing away 339
Towline anchorage 341
TPMS
Tyre pressure loss indicator 319
Tyre pressure monitoring system 320
Track/station, changing 26
Traction control system 125
Traffic information 262
Free flow of traffic 262
Traffic light information 208
Displays 208
Traffic sign recognition 203
Trailer assist 155
Trailer view 218
Transmission position 109

8B1012720AG

Trip recorder 20
Troubleshooting
During charging 134
Releasing charging flap/charging connector manually 135
Turning light 61
Turn signals 60
Type plate 355
Tyre pressure sticker 317
Tyres 315
Changing 334
Directional tread 337
Lettering 315
Load index 315
Low-profile tyres 319
Manufacturing date 315
Repair kit 332
Service life 316
Speed rating 315
Tyre pressure 317
Tyre pressure loss indicator 319
Tyre pressure monitoring system 320
Tyre pressure (towing a trailer) 149
Wear indicator 316

U

Unlocking/locking 36
Automatic 50
Via sensors 49
With central locking switch 38
With convenience key 49
With digital key 49
With digital key card 49
Update (software) 281
USB connection 89
Playing music 269
USB stick
Types/formats supported 270
User management 25
Users
Calling up user management 25
Local user 34
myAudi users 34
Using another vehicle to jump-start 337

V

Valet mode 33
Setting a timer 33
Settings menu 33
Vehicle
Dimensions 355
Identification data 355
Raising 336
Securing 111
Starting 104
Stopping 111
Taking out of service 329
Unlocking/locking 50
Vehicle-related online services 350
Vehicle control services 250
see also Audi connect remote & control . . 251
Vehicle hotspot 251
Vehicle identification number 355
Vehicle keys 36, 46
Vehicle sound 106
Vehicle toolkit 332
Ventilation 96
Vents, adjusting 99
VIN
see Vehicle identification number 355
Voice control function, external 31
Volume of announcements, setting 280
Volume, changing 26

W

Warning lamps 10
Warning light 331
Warning triangle 331
Washing 324
Washing ornamental trim/mouldings . 326, 327
Washing tailpipes 326
Waveband 265
Waxing 326
Weights 356
Wheel bolts 318
Anti-theft 335
Torque 337
Wheel imbalance 316

Wheels 315
Aero trim 335
Changing 334
Tyre pressure loss indicator 319
Tyre pressure monitoring system 320
Washing 326
Wi-Fi 250
Wi-Fi network 250
Windows
Child lock 39
Cleaning/de-icing 327
Convenience open/close 56
Defrosting 98
Electric windows 55
Opening/closing 55
Windscreen
Washing 66
Windscreen washer system 66, 311
Capacity 355
Driver messages 312
Windscreen wipers 66
Winter conditions
12-volt vehicle battery 309
Auxiliary air conditioner 101
Auxiliary heating 100
Cooling system 302
De-icing windows 327
Defrosting windows 98
Diesel 285
Rear window heating 98
Seat heating 98
Snow chains 319
Steering wheel heating 98
Tyres 318
Washing the vehicle 324
Windscreen washer system 311
Winter tyres 318
Wiper blades (front)
Changing 67
Cleaning 67
Wiper blade (rear)
Changing 68
Cleaning 68
Wireless charging 247
Workshop, contacting 313

8B1012720AG